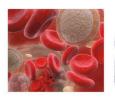


CONCISE HUMAN BODY BOOK

AN ILLUSTRATED GUIDE TO ITS STRUCTURE, FUNCTION, AND DISORDERS

THIS IS AN ABRIDGED VERSION OF THE HUMAN BODY BOOK

CONCISE HUMAN BODY BOOK

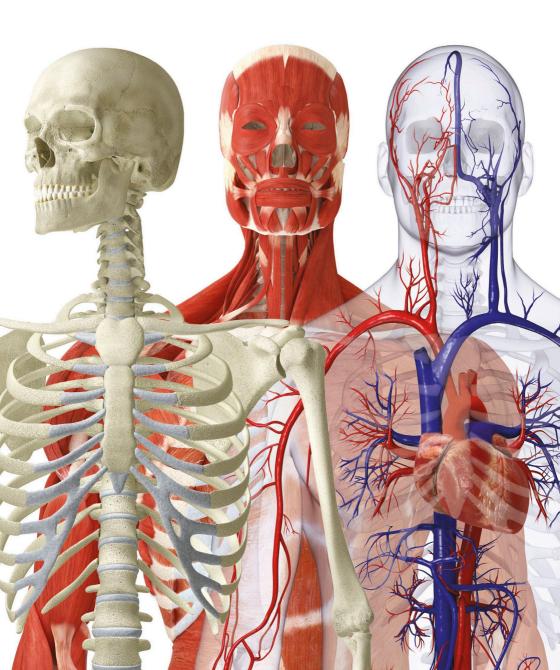














CONCISE HUMAN BOOK



THIS IS AN ABRIDGED VERSION OF THE HUMAN BODY BOOK

STEVE PARKER



PROJECT EDITORS Ann Baggaley, Abhijit Dutta, Philip Morgan, Martyn Page, Mark Silas, Kate Taylor, Megan Douglass PROJECT ART EDITORS Mandy Earey, Rupanki Arora Kaushik, Ted Kinsey SENIOR EDITOR Simon Tuite SENIOR ART EDITOR Vicky Short MANAGING EDITOR Angeles Gavira, Julie Oughton MANAGING ART EDITOR Louise Dick, Michael Duffy ASSOCIATE PUBLISHER Liz Wheeler PUBLISHER Jonathan Metcalf ART DIRECTOR Karen Self, Bryn Walls

JACKET DESIGNER Duncan Turner PRODUCTION EDITORS Joanna Byrne, Maria Elia PRE-PRODUCTION MANAGER Balwant Singh PRODUCTION CONTROLLER Sophie Argyris DTP DESIGNER Bimlesh Tiwari INDEXER Hilary Bird PROOFREADER Katie John

MEDICAL CONSULTANT Dr. Penny Preston, Dr. Kristina Routh

For The Human Body Book: PROJECT EDITOR Rob Houston PROJECT ART EDITOR Maxine Lea EDITORS Ruth O'Rourke, Rebecca Warren, Mary Allen, Kim Bryan, Tarda Davidson-Aitkins, Jane de Burgh, Salima Hirani, Miezan van Zyl DESIGNERS Matt Schofield, Kenny Grant, Francis Wong, Anna Plucinska MANAGING EDITOR Sarah Larter MANAGING ART EDITOR Philip Ormerod PUBLISHING MANAGER Liz Wheeler REFERENCE PUBLISHER Jonathan Metcalf ART DIRECTOR Bryn Walls

PICTURE RESEARCHER Louise Thomas JACKET DESIGNER Lee Ellwood DTP DESIGNER Laragh Kedwell PRODUCTION CONTROLLER Tony Phipps EDITORIAL ASSISTANTS Tamlyn Calitz, Manisha Thakkar INDEXER Hilary Bird PROOFREADER Andrea Bagg

CONTRIBUTORS Mary Allen, Andrea Bagg, Jill Hamilton, Katie John, Janet Fricker, Jane de Burgh, Claire Cross MEDICAL CONSULTANTS Dr. Sue Davidson, Dr. Penny Preston, Dr. Ian Guinan ILLUSTRATORS CREATIVE DIRECTOR Rajeev Doshi 3-D ARTISTS Olaf Louwinger, Gavin Whelan, Monica Taddei

ADDITIONAL ILLUSTRATORS Peter Bull Art Studio, Kevin Jones Associates, Adam Howard

The Concise Human Body Book provides information on a wide range of medical topics, and every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this book is accurate. The book is not a substitute for medical advice, however, and you are advised always to consult a doctor or other health professional on personal health matters

The Concise Human Body Book has been adapted from The Human Body Book, first published in Great Britain in 2007 by Dorling Kindersley Limited

This American edition published in 2019 First American edition published in the United States in 2009 by DK Publishing, 1450 Broadway, Suite 801, New York, NY 10018, USA Copyright © 2009, 2019 DK, a Division of Penguin Random House LLC 19 20 21 22 23 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 001 – 315374 – Jul/2019

All rights reserved. Without limiting the rights under the copyright reserved above, no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the prior written permission of the copyright owner. Published in Great Britain by Dorling Kindersley Limited A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress

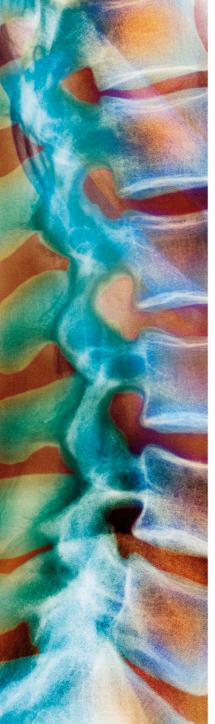
ISBN 978-1-4654-8469-7 DK books are available at special discounts when purchased in bulk for sales promotions, premiums, fund-raising, or educational use. For details, contact: DK Publishing Special Markets, 1450 Broadway, Suite 801, New York, NY 10018, USA or SpecialSales@dk.com

> Color reproduction by GRB Editrice s.r.l. in London, UK Printed and bound in China

A WORLD OF IDEAS: SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW

www.dk.com





CONTENTS

INTEGRATED BODY	8
INTRODUCTION	10
IMAGING THE BODY	12
BODY SYSTEMS	14
SUPPORT AND MOVEMENT	18
INFORMATION PROCESSING	20
THE FLUID BODY	21
EQUILIBRIUM	22
BODY SYSTEMS TO CELLS	24
THE CELL	26
DNA	30
THE GENOME	34
SPECIALIZED CELLS AND TISSUES	36
SKELETAL SYSTEM	38
SKELETON	40
BONE STRUCTURE	42
JOINTS	44
SKULL	48
SPINE	50
RIBS AND PELVIS	52
HANDS AND FEET	54
BONE AND JOINT DISORDERS	56
MUSCULAR SYSTEM	62
MUSCLES OF THE BODY	64
MUSCLES OF THE FACE, HEAD, AND NECK	68
MUSCLES AND TENDONS	70
MUSCLE AND TENDON DISORDERS	74
NERVOUS SYSTEM	76
NERVOUS SYSTEM	78
NERVES AND NEURONS	80
NERVE IMPULSE	84
BRAIN	86
BRAIN STRUCTURES	90
THE PRIMITIVE BRAIN	94
SPINAL CORD	98
PERIPHERAL NERVES	102
AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM	106
MEMORIES, THOUGHTS, AND EMOTIONS	110
SMELL, TASTE, AND TOUCH	112
EARS, HEARING, AND BALANCE	116
EYES AND VISION	120
NERVOUS SYSTEM DISORDERS	124

ENDOCRINE SYSTEM	130	INFLAMMATORY RESPONSE	198
ENDOCRINE ANATOMY	132	FIGHTING INFECTIONS	202
HORMONE PRODUCERS	134	IMMUNE SYSTEM DISORDERS	208
HORMONAL ACTION	138		
ENDOCRINE DISORDERS	140	DIGESTIVE SYSTEM	210
		DIGESTIVE ANATOMY	212
CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM	144	MOUTH AND THROAT	214
CARDIOVASCULAR ANATOMY	146	STOMACH AND SMALL INTESTINE	218
BLOOD AND BLOOD VESSELS	148	LIVER, GALLBLADDER, AND PANCREAS	220
HEART STRUCTURE	150	LARGE INTESTINE	224
HOW THE HEART BEATS	154	DIGESTION	228
CARDIOVASCULAR DISORDERS	156	NUTRIENTS AND METABOLISM	232
		DIGESTIVE TRACT DISORDERS	234
RESPIRATORY SYSTEM	160		
RESPIRATORY ANATOMY	162	URINARY SYSTEM	240
LUNGS	164	URINARY ANATOMY	242
GAS EXCHANGE	166	KIDNEY STRUCTURE	244
BREATHING AND VOCALIZATION	168	URINARY DISORDERS	248
RESPIRATORY DISORDERS	172		
		REPRODUCTION AND LIFE CYCLE	250
SKIN, HAIR, AND NAILS	176	MALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM	252
SKIN, HAIR, AND NAIL STRUCTURE	178	FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM	256
SKIN AND EPITHELIAL TISSUES	182	CONCEPTION TO EMBRYO	260
SKIN DISORDERS	188	FETAL DEVELOPMENT	264
		PREPARING FOR BIRTH	266
LYMPH AND IMMUNITY	190	LABOR	268
LYMPH AND IMMUNE SYSTEMS	192	DELIVERY	270
IMMUNE SYSTEM	194	AFTER THE BIRTH	272
703		GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT	276
19 ALCO		PUBERTY	280
A THE AND		AGING	284

INHERITANCE

CANCER

PATTERNS OF INHERITANCE

INFERTILITY DISORDERS

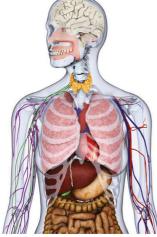
INHERITED DISORDERS

MALE REPRODUCTIVE DISORDERS

FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE DISORDERS

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED INFECTIONS

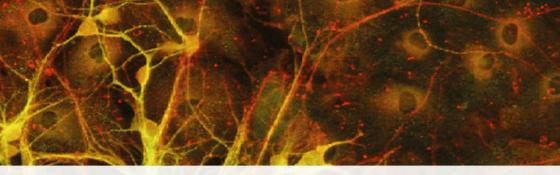
PREGNANCY AND LABOR DISORDERS



GLOSSARY AND INDEX	306	
GLOSSARY	306	
INDEX	312	
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS	320	

THE HUMAN BODY IS THE MOST DEEPLY STUDIED AND FREQUENTLY PORTRAYED OBJECT IN HISTORY. DESPITE ITS FAMILIARITY, IT IS ETERNALLY ABSORBING AND FASCINATING. THE PAGES OF THIS BOOK REVEAL, IN AMAZING VISUAL DETAIL, AND IN BOTH HEALTH AND SICKNESS, THE INTRICATE INNERMOST WORKINGS OF THE BODY'S CELLS, TISSUES, ORGANS, AND SYSTEMS. MUCH OF THE FASCINATION LIES IN THE WAY THESE PARTS INTERACT AND INTEGRATE AS EACH RELIES ON THE OTHERS TO FUNCTION AND SURVIVE.





INTRODUCTION

The number of humans in the world has raced past seven billion (7,000,000,000). More than 250 babies are born every minute, while 150,000 people die daily, with the population increasing by almost three humans per second. Each lives and thinks with, and within, that mostcomplex and marvelous of possessions—a human body.

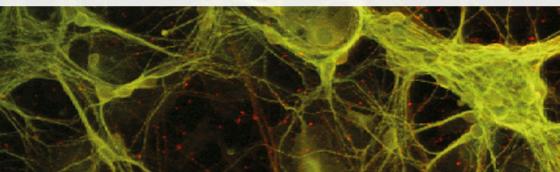
LEVELS OF ORGANIZATION

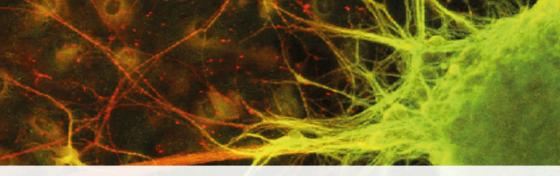
To understand the inner structure and workings of the human body, this book takes the "living machine" approach, borrowed from sciences such as engineering. This views the body as a series of integrated systems. Each system carries out one major task. In the cardiovascular system, for example, the heart pumps blood through vessels, to supply every body part with essential oxygen and nutrients. The systems are, in turn, composed of main parts known as organs. For example, the stomach, intestines, and liver are organs of the digestive system. Moving down through the anatomical hierarchy, organs consist of tissues, and tissues are made up of cells.

Cells are often called the building blocks of the body. Active and dynamic, they continually grow and specialize, function, die, and replenish themselves, by the millions every second. The whole body contains about 100 trillion cells, of at least 200 different kinds. Science is increasingly able to delve deeper than cells, to the organelles within them, and onward, to the ultimate components of ordinary matter—molecules and atoms.

ANATOMY

The study of the body's structure, and how its cells, tissues, and organs are assembled, is known as human anatomy. For clarity, its elements are often shown in isolation because the inside of the body is





a crowded place. Tissues and organs press against one another. Body parts shift continually as we move, breathe, pump blood, and digest food. For example, swallowed food does not simply fall down the gullet into the stomach; it is forced down by waves of muscular contraction.

PHYSIOLOGY

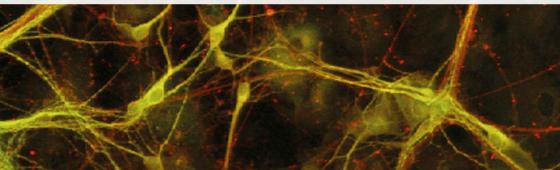
For a rounded understanding of the body, we need to see human anatomy in combination with physiology—the study of how the body functions. Physiology focuses on the dynamic chemical minutiae at atomic, ionic, and molecular levels. It investigates the workings of such processes as enzyme action, hormone stimulation, DNA synthesis, and how the body stores and uses energy from food. As researchers look closer, and unravel more biochemical pathways, more physiological secrets are unlocked. Much of this research is aimed at preventing or treating disease.

HEALTH AND ILLNESS

Medical science amasses mountains of evidence every year for the best ways to stay healthy. At present, an individual's genetic inheritance, which is a matter of chance, is the given starting point for maintaining health and well-being. In coming years, treatments such as preimplantation genetic diagnosis (PGN), which is carried out as part of assisted reproductive techniques such as in-vitro fertilization (IVF), and gene therapy will be able to remove or negate some of these chance elements. Many aspects of upbringing have a major impact on health, including factors such as diet-whether it is too rich or too poor. The body can also be affected by many different types of disorders, such as infection by a virus or bacteria, injury, inherited faulty genes, or exposure to toxins in the environment.

COMMUNICATION NETWORK

This microscopic image of nerve cells (neurons) shows the fibers that connect the cell bodies. Neurons transmit electrical signals around the body; each one links with hundreds of others, forming a dense web.



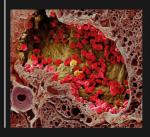
IMAGING THE BODY

IMAGING IS A VITAL PART OF DIAGNOSING ILLNESS, UNDERSTANDING DISEASE, AND EVALUATING TREATMENTS. MODERN TECHNIQUES PROVIDING HIGHLY DETAILED INFORMATION HAVE LARGELY REPLACED SURGERY AS A METHOD OF INVESTIGATION.

The invention of the X-ray made the development of noninvasive medicine possible. Without the ability to see inside the body, many disorders could be found only after major surgery. Computerized imaging now helps doctors make early diagnoses, often greatly increasing the chances of recovery. Computers process and enhance raw data, for example reinterpreting shades of gray from an X-ray or scan into colors. However, sometimes direct observation is essential. Viewing techniques have also become less invasive with the development of instruments such as the endoscope (see opposite). This book makes extensive use of internal images from real bodies.

MICROSCOPY

In light microscopy (LM), light is passed through a section of material and lenses magnify the view up to 2,000 times. Even higher magnifications are possible with scanning electron microscopy (SEM), in which light runs across a specimen coated with gold film. Electrons bounce off the surface, creating a three-dimensional image.



SEM OF TUMOR IN BLOOD SUPPLY

This image, in which the specimen has been frozen and split open, shows a blood vessel with blood cells growing into a melanoma (skin tumor).

ANGIOGRAM In this type of X-ray, a contrast medium (colored red here) has been injected into the arteries of the shoulder, neck, and lower head. Bones show up white.

X-RAY

X-rays are similar to light waves, but of very short wavelength. When passed through the body they create shadow images on photographic film. Dense structures such as bone show up white; soft tissues appear in shades of gray. To show hollow or fluid-filled structures, these are filled with a substance that absorbs X-rays (a contrast medium). Fluoroscopy uses X-rays to gain real-time moving images of body parts, for instance to investigate swallowing.

X-RAY OF THE BREAST

A plain X-ray of the female breast (mammogram) is used as a routine screening test for breast cancer, which may show up as an unusually white area. This mammogram shows a healthy breast.



IMAGING THE BODY

MRI AND CT SCANNING

In computerized tomography (CT), an X-ray scanner is used with a computer to build up cross-sectional images of tissues of different density. In magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), magnets are used to line up atoms in the body, then radio waves throw the atoms out of alignment. As the realign, the atoms emit signals that are used to create an image.

MRI SCAN OF HEAD

A colored MRI scan of the mid-line of the head in side view; visible structures include the brain and spinal cord, the nasal cavity, and the tongue.

NUCLEAR MEDICINE IMAGING

In nuclear medicine imaging, a radioactive substance (radionuclide) is injected and absorbed by the area to be imaged. As the substance decays it emits gamma rays, which a computer forms into an image. This type of imaging can help diagnose disorders such as cancers and heart diseases. Nuclear medicine imaging scans like positron emission tomography (PET) and single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) give data about the function of a tissue rather than detailed anatomy.

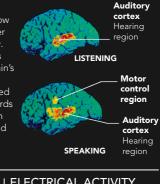
PET SCAN

PET scans show function rather than anatomy. These images reveal the brain's activity as the subject listened to spoken words and then both listened to and repeated the words.



CT SCAN OF THE HEART

A 3-D CT scan of the heart from the right side; showing the large aorta (main artery, center top) and some of the blood vessels of the lungs.



ULTRASOUND

High-frequency sound waves emitted by a device called a transducer pass into the body and echo back as electrical signals. A computer processes the signals to create images.

FETAL ULTRASOUND

Ultrasound is a very safe technique, commonly used to monitor fetal development in the uterus.



ENDOSCOPY

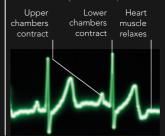
Endoscopes are flexible or rigid tubes inserted into the body to view its interior, perform surgical procedures, or both. They carry a light source and instruments may be passed down them.

TRACHEA

An endoscopic view of the trachea (windpipe) shows the hoops of cartilage that maintain its shape.

ELECTRICAL ACTIVITY

Sensor pads applied to the skin detect electrical activity in muscles and nerves. The signals are displayed as a trace line. This technique includes electrocardiography (ECG) of the heart (see below).



BODY SYSTEMS

THE HUMAN BODY'S SYSTEMS WORK TOGETHER AS A TRUE COOPERATIVE. EACH SYSTEM FULFILLS ITS OWN VITAL FUNCTION, BUT ALL WORK TOGETHER TO MAINTAIN THE HEALTH AND EFFICIENCY OF THE BODY AS A WHOLE.

The exact number and extent of the body's systems is debated—the muscles, bones, and joints are sometimes combined as the musculoskeletal system, for instance. Although these systems can be described as separate entities, each depends on all of the others for physical and physiological

SKELETAL

EXPLORED ON PAGES 38-61

The skeleton is a solid framework that supports the body. Its bones work as levers and anchor plates to allow for movement. Bones also have a role in other body systems-blood cells develop in their fatty inner tissue (red marrow), for example. The body draws from mineral stores in bones during times of shortage, such as when calcium is needed for healthy nerve function.

support. Most systems have some "general" body tissues, such as the connective tissues, which delineate, support, and cushion many organs. All the systems except—somewhat ironically—the reproductive system are essential for our basic survival.

MUSCULAR

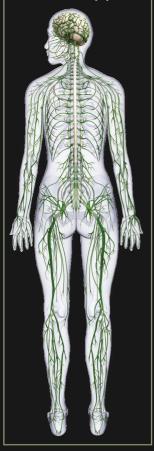
EXPLORED ON PAGES 62-75

Muscles work in conjunction with the skeleton, providing the pulling force for varying degrees of movement, from powerful to finely tuned. Involuntary muscles work largely automatically to control internal processes, such as blood distribution and digestion. Muscles rely on nerves to control them and blood to keep them supplied with oxygen and energy.

NERVOUS

EXPLORED ON PAGES 76-129

The brain is the seat of both consciousness and creativity and, through the spinal cord and nerve branches, it controls all body movements with its motor output. The brain also receives sensory information from outside and within the body. Much of the brain's activity occurs unconsciously as it works with endocrine glands to monitor and maintain other body systems.



ENDOCRINE

EXPLORED ON PAGES 130-143

The glands and cells of the endocrine system produce chemical messengers called hormones, which circulate in blood and other fluids. These maintain an optimal internal environment. Hormones also govern long-term processes such as growth, the changes that take place during puberty, and reproductive activity. The endocrine system has close links to the nervous system.



CARDIOVASCULAR

EXPLORED ON PAGES 144-159

The most basic function of the cardiovascular, or circulatory, system is to pump blood around the body. It supplies all organs and tissues with freshly oxygenated, nutrient-rich blood. Any waste products of cell function are removed with the blood as it leaves. The circulatory system also transports other vital substances, such as nutrients, hormones, and immune cells.



RESPIRATORY

EXPLORED ON PAGES 160-175

The respiratory tract and its movements, powered by breathing muscles, carry air into and out of the lungs. Deep inside the lungs, gases are exchanged. On inhalation, life-giving oxygen is absorbed from air, while carbon dioxide waste is passed into the air, to be expelled from the body on exhalation. A secondary function of the respiratory system is vocalization.

SKIN, HAIR, AND NAILS

EXPLORED ON PAGES 176-189

The skin, hair, and nails form the body's outer protective covering, and are together termed the integumentary system. They repel hazards such as physical injury, microorganisms, and radiation. The skin also regulates body temperature through sweating and hair adjustment. A layer of fat under the skin acts as an insulator, an energy store, and a shock absorber.

ጠነ 1/

LYMPH AND IMMUNITY

EXPLORED ON PAGES 190-209

The immune system's intricate interrelationships of physical, cellular, and chemical defenses provide vital resistance to many threats, including infectious diseases and malfunctions of internal processes. The slowly circulating lymph fluid helps distribute nutrients and collect waste. It also delivers immunity-providing white blood cells when needed.



DIGESTIVE

EXPLORED ON PAGES 210-239

The digestive tract's 30 feet of tubing, which runs from the mouth to the anus, has a complex range of functions. It chops and chews food, stores and then digests it, eliminates waste, and passes the nutrients to the liver, which processes or stores the various digestive products. Healthy digestion depends on the proper functioning of the immune and nervous systems.



URINARY

EXPLORED ON PAGES 240-249

The formation of urine by the kidneys eliminates unwanted substances from the blood, helping maintain the body's correct balance of fluids, salts, and minerals. Urine production is controlled by hormones and influenced by blood flow and pressure, intake of water and nutrients, fluid loss (through sweating, for instance), external temperature, and body cycles such as sleeping and waking.

MALE

REPRODUCTIVE

EXPLORED ON PAGES 250-30

Unlike any other system, the reproductive system differs dramatically between female and male; it functions only for part of the human lifespan and is not vital for maintaining life. The production of sperm in the male is continual while the female production of ripe eggs is cyclical. In the male, both sperm and urine use the urethra as an exit tube, but at different times.



CENTRAL COLUMN

The vertebrae form the "tower" of the spinal column. This is not only the body's central support structure; it also flexes and bends to move the head and torso at different angles.

SUPPORT AND MOVEMENT

THE BODY'S MUSCLES, BONES, AND JOINTS PROVIDE A SUPPORTIVE FRAMEWORK CAPABLE OF AN ENORMOUS RANGE OF MOTION. MUSCLES AND BONES ALSO HAVE NUMEROUS INTERACTIONS WITH OTHER BODY SYSTEMS, ESPECIALLY THE NERVES.

The body's muscular system is never still. Even as the body sleeps, breathing continues, the heart beats, the intestines squirm, and skeletal muscles contract occasionally to shift the body into a new position.

MUSCLE TEAMWORK

Most movements are the result of multiple muscle contractions. A smile, for example, involves 20 facial muscles; writing utilizes more than 60 muscles in the arm, hand, and wrist. Muscles work in pairs: as one contracts to pull on a bone and initiate movement, an opposing muscle relaxes. Body action is a continuing sequence of split-second give-and-take.

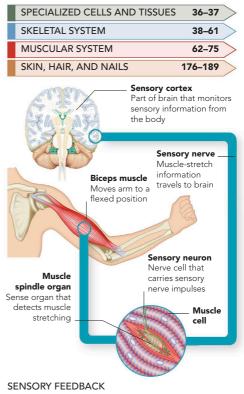
POSTURE AND FEEDBACK

Sensory systems built into muscles provide the brain with information about the posture and position of the body and limbs. This is known as the proprioceptive sense, which allows us to "know," without having to look or feel, that fingers are clenched or a knee is bent. When we are learning a new motor skill, we concentrate on the movement as the brain adjusts muscle control through trial and error. With practice, the motor nerve patterns

STAYING SUPPLE

Our potential for movement, and the health of the skeletal and muscular systems, is maximized by regular exercises for strength, stamina, and suppleness.





Within muscles, nerves end in sense organs (spindle organs). These respond to tension by firing signals along nerve fibers to tell the brain what is happening.

and their proprioceptive feedback become established, and eventually the movement becomes automatic. Sensory feedback also protects the muscular and skeletal systems against injury. If bones or muscles are under excessive stress, nerve messages registering discomfort or pain are sent to the brain. Awareness of the pain stimulates evasive or protective action by the body.

INFORMATION PROCESSING

THE BODY IS A DYNAMIC MECHANISM WHOSE INTERACTING PARTS REQUIRE CONTROL AND COORDINATION. TWO BODY SYSTEMS ARE RESPONSIBLE FOR THESE INFORMATION-PROCESSING FUNCTIONS: THE NERVOUS AND ENDOCRINE SYSTEMS.

Information processing involves inputs, evaluation, and decision-making, followed by outputs. The body receives inputs from the senses. The brain is the central processing unit whose outputs control the physical actions of muscles and chemical responses of glands. Both nerves and hormones are involved in data management.

ELECTRICAL AND CHEMICAL PATHWAYS

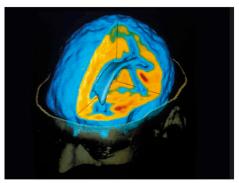
The "language" of the nervous system is tiny electrical impulses. Every second, millions pass through the body's nerve network, conveying information to and from the brain. Information from the senses flows to the brain, where it is analyzed. Decisions are reached, and command messages-also in the form of electrical impulses-travel along motor nerves to the muscles to stimulate and coordinate their contractions. In addition, microreceptors monitor conditions inside the body and feed data about it to the unconscious part of the brain, which automatically evaluates the data and sends out impulses to various parts of the body to keep the internal environment at the optimum for body functioning.



SELECTIVE FOCUS

The nose sends streams of "smell" nerve signals to the brain. We can choose to ignore these or to focus on them, as part of the mind's selective awareness.

NERVOUS SYSTEM	76–129
ENDOCRINE SYSTEM	130–143



BRAIN ACTIVITY

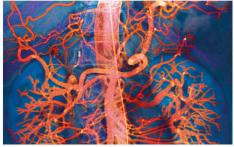
This image is a three-dimensional functional MRI scan showing brain activity during speech. Red indicates areas of high activity, yellow indicates medium activity, and green indicates low activity.

Different information carriers called hormones are secreted by endocrine glands into the bloodstream to stimulate distant tissues to action. More than 50 hormones circulate in the bloodstream. The specific molecular structure of each hormone stimulates only those cells that have suitable receptors on their surface, instructing the cells to carry out certain processes. In general, nerves work quickly— within fractions of a second. Most hormones function over longer time periods-minutes, days, or even months. Long-lasting effects, as in growth hormone for example, occur because the hormone is continuously secreted over a period of many years; an individual dose would last only a few days.

20

THE FLUID BODY

ROUGHLY TWO-THIRDS OF THE BODY IS COMPOSED OF WATER AND THE VARIOUS ESSENTIAL SUBSTANCES DISSOLVED IN IT. THESE FLUIDS ARE FOUND IN CELLS, AROUND THE BODY'S TISSUES, AND, MOST OBVIOUSLY, IN BLOOD AND LYMPH.



CIRCULATORY NETWORK

Blood is the fastest-circulating "fluid" in the body. Its liquid component, plasma, is constantly exchanging fluids with other body systems and structures.

There are about 70 pints (40 liters) of water in the average adult body, and it makes up the major part of most body parts. Tissues are 70–80 percent water; blood plasma is more than 90 percent; bones contain almost 25 percent; and fat is 10–15 percent water.

TYPES AND FUNCTIONS OF FLUIDS

There are two major categories of body fluids—intracellular and extracellular. Intracellular fluid (also called cytoplasm) is found inside cells. Extracellular fluid accounts for all other fluids in the body. Its subcategories are: interstitial fluid in the spaces between cells and tissues; blood plasma and lymph; the fluids in bones, joints, and dense connective tissue; and transcellular fluid, which includes saliva, mucus, sweat, and urine.

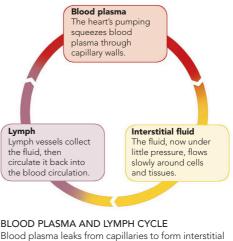
Water is an excellent solvent and the thousands of substances dissolved in it are used in the biochemical reactions that are the very basis of life. Water also

CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM144–159LYMPH AND IMMUNE SYSTEMS190–209

distributes nutrients around the body and collects and delivers wastes. Fluids spread heat from active areas to cooler ones, and act as shock absorbers to cushion sensitive areas such as the brain. Fluids also work as lubricants, so that tissues and organs slip past each other with minimal friction.

BLOOD AND LYMPH

The blood and lymphatic circulatory systems are constantly swapping fluids (see the illustration below). Blood plasma transports red blood cells, white blood cells, platelets, and a wide variety of nutrients and chemicals around the body. Lymph fluid carries white blood cells and other substances such as fats and proteins.



Blood plasma leaks from capillaries to form interstitial fluid. Some of this drains into lymph vessels to become lymph fluid, which then returns to the blood circulation.

AUTO-COOLING This image shows magnified sweat droplets on the skin. Sweating cools the body and helps it maintain its equilibrium.

EQUILIBRIUM

THE BODY'S CELLS AND TISSUES FUNCTION WELL ONLY IF ALL ASPECTS OF THEIR ENVIRONMENT ARE KEPT STABLE AND IN EQUILIBRIUM. SEVERAL BODY SYSTEMS MAINTAIN A BALANCED INTERNAL ENVIRONMENT, A PROCESS CALLED HOMEOSTASIS.

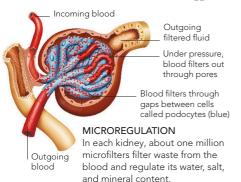
The biochemical reactions in cells are attuned to specific conditions, such as oxygen levels, acidity, water levels, and temperature. These must be maintained within the correct limits or the reactions go awry and the body malfunctions.

HOMEOSTATIC SYSTEMS

Several systems contribute to homeostasis. For example, the respiratory system ensures that oxygen levels are maintained; the digestive system takes in and processes nutrients; and the circulatory system distributes oxygen and nutrients and gathers waste products, which are removed by the urinary and respiratory systems.

CONTROL AND FEEDBACK

The body's major control systems, nerves and hormones, are mainly responsible for coordinating homeostatic mechanisms using feedback loops. For example, if water levels in the tissues fall, body fluids become more concentrated. Sensors detect this and feed back information to the brain, whose homeostatic centers trigger



CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM	144–159
RESPIRATORY SYSTEM	160–175
SKIN, HAIR, AND NAILS	176–189
DIGESTIVE SYSTEM	210-239
URINARY SYSTEM	240-249



BEFORE ACTIVITY In this thermogram, temperature is graded from blue (cooler) to red (warmer).

AFTER ACTIVITY Following exercise, a thermogram shows that most of the exposed skin is now warmer than normal.



regulating actions. Hormonal control of urinary excretion is adjusted to conserve water, and nervous activity produces thirst so that we drink. The sensors detect the changes as fluid concentrations return to normal, then they switch off until needed. again. Thermoregulation—maintaining an approximately constant body temperature—uses the same feedback principles, with mechanisms such as sweating and shivering being used to regulate heat loss, conservation, and generation. In these ways, conditions inside the body are kept relatively stable, and an ongoing equilibrium is maintained.

BODY SYSTEMS TO CELLS

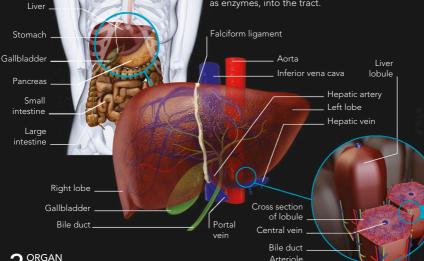
EACH SYSTEM CAN BE SEEN AS A HIERARCHY. THE SYSTEM ITSELF IS AT THE TOP OF THE HIERARCHY; NEXT ARE ITS ORGANS; THEN THE TISSUES THAT MAKE UP THE ORGANS: AND AT THE BOTTOM ARE THE CELLS FROM WHICH TISSUES ARE MADE.

A body system is usually regarded as a collection of organs and parts designed for one important task. The systems are integrated and interdependent, but each

has its own identifiable components. The main parts of a system are its organs and tissues. Most organs are composed of different tissues. The brain, for example, contains nervous, connective, and epithelial (covering or lining) tissues. A tissue is a group of cells that are similar in structure and carry out the same function.

SYSTEM

The digestive system is one of the most clearly defined in the body. It consists of a long passageway-the digestive tract-and associated glands. These include the liver and pancreas, which are connected to the main tract by ducts, and empty their products, such as enzymes, into the tract.



ORGAN

Mouth

Esophagus

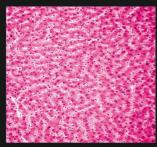
(gullet)

🖌 The liver is the body's largest internal organ, with an average adult weight of 31/3 lb (1.5kg), which is slightly more than the brain. Within the liver is a system of tubes for carrying away its digestive product, bile, which is stored in the small sac under its right end, the gallbladder.

ORGAN SUBSTRUCTURE

Venule

The structural-functional units of the liver are hepatic lobules. The lobules are six-sided and have blood vessels and bile ducts inside and between them



MICRO-SECTION OF LIVER In this magnified section of liver tissue, the cells (pink) and their nuclei (dark purple) are visible. Blood cells lie in the lighter areas between the cells (hepatic sinusoids).

Kupffer cell

Also known as a hepatic macrophage, a type of white blood cell specific to the liver that engulfs and digests old worn-out blood cells and other debris

The unique tissue of the liver consists of branching sheets, or laminae, of liver cells (hepatocytes) arranged at angles. These are permeated by fluids and microscopic branches of two main kinds of tubes: blood vessels and bile ducts.

CELL

• The fundamental living unit of all body tissues, a typical cell is capable of obtaining energy and processing nutrients. The hepatocytes of the liver are examples of body cells, containing most types of the miniature structures known as organelles inside them.

Bile canaliculus Smallest branch of bile duct; snakes between hepatocytes

Sinusoid

Cytoplasm Cell membrane

Nucleus

Mitochondrion

A blood vessel with many pores that allow for the exchange of oxygen and nutrients

Hepatocyte

Bile duct

Collects bile fluid, made by hepatocytes, from canaliculi

Branch of hepatic portal vein

Branch of hepatic artery

Red blood cell

Lymph vessel

Central vein

White blood cell

Fat-storing cell

N 5

Vacuole

A sac that stores and transports ingested materials, wastes, and water

Mitochondrion

Site of fat and sugar digestion in the cell; produces energy

Microtubule

Part of cytoskeleton; aids movement of substances in the cytoplasm

Centriole

Two cylinders of tubules; essential for reproduction

Microvilli

Projections found on some cells; they increase the cell's surface area

Released secretions

Secretions are released by exocytosis; a vesicle merges with the cell membrane and releases its contents

Secretory vesicle

Sac that contains various substances, such as enzymes, that are produced by the cell and secreted at the cell membrane

Golgi complex

Organelle that processes and repackages proteins produced in rough endoplasmic reticulum for release at cell membrane

Nucleolus Central region The ce of the nucleus; center, o

plays a role in

ribosome

production

The cell's control center, containing chromatin and most of the cell's DNA

Nucleus

Nuclear membrane A two-layered membrane with pores through which

substances can pass
Nucleoplasm

The fluid within the nucleus /

Cytoskeleton

Internal framework of the cell, consisting of microfilaments and microtubules

Microfilament Provides support for the cell

Cytoplasm Jellylike fluid that contains organelles

> **Ribosome** Involved in protein assembly

Cell membrane

Encloses cell contents; regulates inflow and outflow of substances

Rough endoplasmic reticulum

Folded membranes studded with ribosomes; help transport materials through cell; site of much protein manufacture

INSIDE A CELL

This illustration shows all the tiny specialized structures (organelles) inside a generalized body cell.

Lysosome

Produces enzymes that aid in digestion of substances and worn-out organelles

Makes enzymes that oxidize some toxic chemicals

Smooth endoplasmic reticulum

Network of tubes and flat, curved sacs that helps transport materials through cell; site of calcium storage; main location of fat metabolism

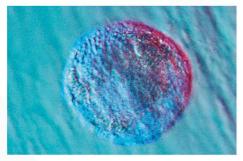
Peroxisome

THE CELL

THE CELL IS THE BASIC UNIT OF THE BODY. IT IS THE SMALLEST PART CAPABLE OF THE PROCESSES THAT DEFINE LIFE, SUCH AS REPRODUCTION, MOVEMENT, RESPIRATION, DIGESTION, AND EXCRETION—ALTHOUGH NOT ALL CELLS HAVE ALL THESE ABILITIES.

CELL ANATOMY

Most cells are microscopic—a typical cell is $20-30\,\mu\text{m}$ in diameter, which means 40 in a row would stretch across a period. Very specialized, long, thin cells include neurons (nerve cells) and muscle fiber



cells (myofibers), which may be more than 12 in (30 cm) long. Most cells have an outer flexible "skin": the cell, or plasma, membrane. Inside are structures known as organelles, each with a characteristic shape, size, and function. These organelles do not float around at random. The cell is highly organized, with interior compartments linked by sheets and membranes and held in place by a flexible, latticelike "skeleton" of even tinier tubules and filaments.

EMBRYONIC STEM CELL

Stem cells are unspecialized "beginner" cells that can develop into specialized cells. Stem cells in the embryo can develop into any of the 200-plus types of specialized cells in the body.

CELL TYPES

Cells come in many shapes and sizes, depending on their specialized functions within tissues. Speed of cell division also varies. It is most rapid in epithelial (covering and lining) cells, which are subjected to

Epithelial cells

These cells form skin, cover most organs, and line hollow cavities such as the intestinal tract.

Photoreceptor cell

A cone cell is a type of light- and color-sensitive cell in the retina of the eye.

Red blood cell

The double-dished (biconcave) red cell (erythrocyte) is a bag of oxygencarrying hemoglobin molecules.

Adipose (fat) cell

The main adipose cells, adipocytes, are bulky and crammed with droplets of fat (lipids), which store energy.









physical abrasion and wear and which must continually replace themselves. It is slow or even nonexistent in some cells that are structurally complex, such as nerve cells (neurons).

Smooth muscle cell

The large, elongated, spindlelike cells of smooth muscle contract by sliding strands of protein inside.

Nerve cell

Each cell has short branches (dendrites) to receive nerve signals, and a long "wire" (axon) to send them.



Each sperm has a head that carries the paternal genetic material, and a whiplike tail for propulsion.

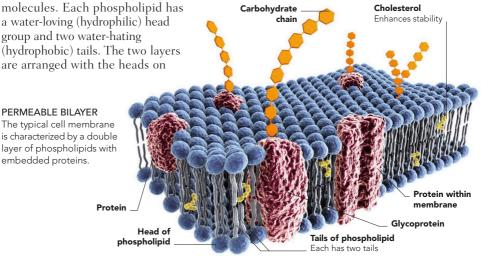
Ovum (egg) cell

These giant cells contain the maternal genetic material, and energy resources for the embryo's first cell divisions.



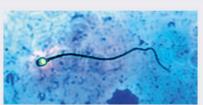
CELL MEMBRANE

Several features allow the membrane to fulfill its dual functions of protecting the cell's contents and permitting movement of materials into and out of the cell. The primary component of this membrane is a double layer of phospholipid molecules. Each phospholipid has a water-loving (hydrophilic) head group and two water-hating (hydrophobic) tails. The two layers are arranged with the heads on the outside and inside of the cell membrane, and the tails in between. The phospholipids are interspersed with protein molecules and carbohydrate chains that allow the cell to be recognized by other body cells.



SURFACE ORGANELLES

Some cells in the body have specialized structures projecting from their surface. Cells lining the small intestine have small, fingerlike projections called microvilli, which increase the surface area for absorption of nutrients. Some cells in the female reproductive tract have small, hairlike cilia that wave to move the ovum along the oviduct: similar ciliated cells in the respiratory tract move small particles out of the airways. The sperm is unique in the human body in having a long, whiplike flagellum, used for propulsion.





SPERM

The thin tail (flagellum) that extends from a human sperm cell is used like a propeller to help the sperm swim up the female genital tract.

CILIATED CELLS

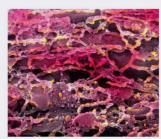
Some of the cells lining the fallopian tubes have hairlike cilia (colored pink in this micrograph) that brush an egg along toward the uterus.

MEMBRANES OF ORGANELLES

Membranes divide the cytoplasm into sections and control the passage of materials between these regions, act as attachment points and storage areas, and shape channels along which substances move.



GOLGI COMPLEX Within the membranous sacs of the Golgi complex, protein from the endoplasmic reticulum is processed.



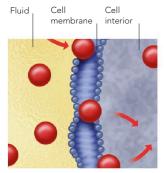
ENDOPLASMIC RETICULUM (ER) A series of highly folded and curved ER membranes usually encloses one continuous labyrinthine space.



MITOCHONDRION The inner membrane is folded to increase the area for releasing energy.

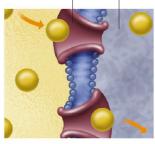
TRANSPORT

The transfer of materials through the cell membrane occurs by one of three processes. Small molecules, such as water, oxygen, and carbon dioxide, cross the membrane by diffusion. Molecules that cannot cross the phospholipid layer



DIFFUSION Many molecules naturally move from an area where they are at high concentration to one in which their concentration is lower.

Carrier protein



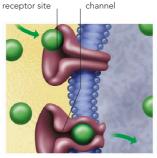
Cell

interior

FACILITATED DIFFUSION A carrier protein binds with a specific molecule outside the cell, then changes shape and ejects the molecule into the cell.

must cross by facilitated diffusion. When substances (such as minerals and nutrients) are at lower concentration on the outside of the cell than on the inside, they can only be conveyed into the cell by active transport, which requires energy.

Molecule at



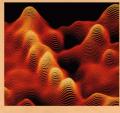
Protein forms

ACTIVE TRANSPORT Molecules bind to a receptor site on the cell membrane, triggering a protein to change into a channel through which molecules travel.

DNA

KNOWN AS THE "MOLECULE OF LIFE," THE CHEMICAL DNA (DEOXYRIBONUCLEIC ACID) CONTAINS THE INSTRUCTIONS, KNOWN AS GENES, FOR THE BODY'S GROWTH, FUNCTION, AND REPAIR.

In nearly all human cells, DNA is packaged into 46 coiled structures called chromosomes, situated in the cell's nucleus. DNA's list of instructions takes the form of long, thin molecules, one per chromosome, each forming a double-helix shape. Each double-helix has two long strands that corkscrew around each other. These are linked by rungs, like a ladder. The rungs are made of pairs of chemicals called bases: adenine (A), guanine (G), thymine (T), and cytosine (C). A always pairs with T, and G with C. The order of the bases contains the chromosome's genetic code, while the way the bases link enables DNA to make copies of itself.



DNA UNDER THE MICROSCOPE

This scanning tunneling micrograph (STM) of DNA, magnified about one million times, shows the twists of the helix as a series of yellow peaks on the left.

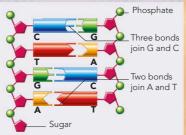
Core unit

Package of 8 proteins (histones) with approximately 2 turns of DNA wound around; also called a nucleosome. DNA and protein together like this is called chromatin

Cytoplasm

BASE PAIRS

The four bases can pair in only two configurations due to their chemical structures. Adenine and thymine each have two positions for forming hydrogen bonds and so fit together, while guanine and cytosine each have three hydrogen-bond locations.



Cell

Nucleus

Acts as control center of cell and contains chromosomes

Chromosome

Structure composed of DNA molecule

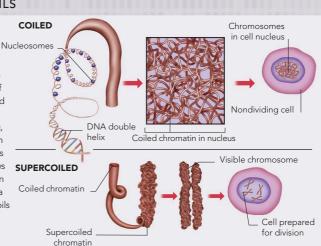
Supercoiled DNA

Coils of DNA double-helix are themselves twisted into a supercoil

30

COILS AND SUPERCOILS

DNA's coiled structure allows an incredible length to be packed into a tiny space. If unwound, the DNA in a chromosome would stretch about 2 in (5 cm). There are 46 chromosomes in the nucleus of each cell (except mature red blood cells, which have no nucleus or DNA). When cells are not dividing, the DNA (wrapped around protein to form what is called chromatin) is relatively loosely coiled. This allows portions to be available for protein assembly and other functions. As a cell prepares to divide, its DNA coils into supercoils, which are shorter and denser, and visible as the typical chromosome "X" shapes.



DNA backbone

Constructed of alternating units of deoxyribose (a form of sugar) and phosphate chemicals

DOUBLE HELIX

A DNA molecule in a chromosome is coiled and supercoiled (see panel, above). The DNA molecule also loops and twists. It is accompanied by various proteins, particularly histones.

Helical repeat

DNA helix twists once for every 10.4 rungs of base pairs

Adenine-

thymine link Adenine always forms a base pair with thymine

Thymine

Cytosine ,

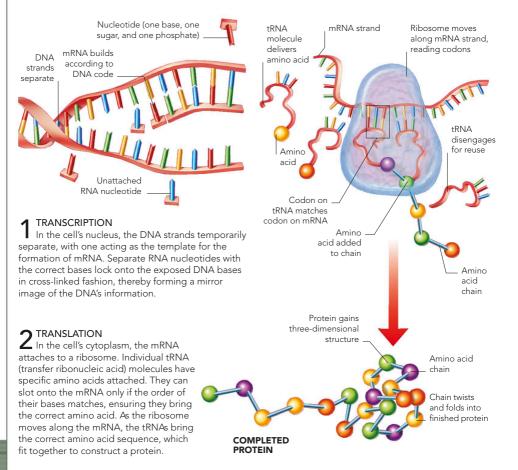
Guaninecytosine link Guanine always forms a pair with cytosine

Guanine

Adenine

HOW DNA WORKS

One of DNA's key functions is to provide the information to build proteins. Some proteins are the body's major structural molecules, while others form enzymes or hormones, which control chemical reactions within the body. Manufacture of proteins occurs in two main phases: transcription and translation. In transcription, information is taken from the DNA and copied to an intermediate type of molecule called mRNA (messenger ribonucleic acid). The mRNA moves out of the cell's nucleus to protein assembly units called ribosomes. In the translation phase, the mRNA acts as a template for the formation of units of protein, known as amino acids. There are about 20 different amino acids. Their order is specified by lengths of mRNA three bases long, called triplet codons. The order of bases in each codon is the code for a particular amino acid (hence the term "genetic code"). The mRNA carries instructions to make a specific protein from a sequence of amino acids.



WHAT ARE GENES?

A gene is generally regarded as a unit of DNA needed to construct one protein. It consists of all the sections of DNA that code for all the amino acids for that protein. Usually one gene is located on one chromosome. However, it may have several sections on different regions of the DNA molecule, each containing the code for one portion of the protein. Typically, lengths of DNA called introns and exons (see below) are both transcribed to form immature mRNA. The parts of mRNA made from the introns are then stripped out by the cell's molecular machinery, leaving mature mRNA for translation. There are also regulatory DNA sequences that code for their own proteins, affecting the rate of gene transcription.

Regulatory sequence



EYE COLOR

Introns

Iris color is affected by at least 15 genes, including OCA2 and HERC2, both sited on chromosome 15.

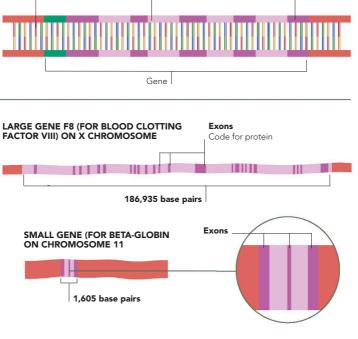
Exons

PARTS OF A GENE

Regions called introns and exons both transcribe to form mRNAs for different portions of a protein. The lengths made from introns are then spliced out chemically, to leave exon-only portions, which go on to make the protein.

RANGE OF GENE SIZE

Genes vary enormously in their size, which is usually measured in numbers of base pairs. Small genes may be just a few hundred base pairs long, while others are measured in millions of base pairs. The gene for beta-globin is one of the smallest. It codes for part of the hemoglobin molecule. It is compared, right, with a larger gene.



ω

THE GENOME

A GENOME IS THE FULL SET OF GENETIC INSTRUCTIONS FOR A LIVING THING. THE HUMAN GENOME CONSISTS OF AN ESTIMATED 20,000 GENES FOR MAKING PROTEINS, CARRIED ON THE DOUBLE SET OF 46 CHROMOSOMES IN MOST BODY CELLS.



KARYOTYPE

A karyotype is a photograph of all chromosomes from a cell arranged in a standard order. This example is from a female (note the two, equal-sized X chromosomes at the bottom right).

CHROMOSOMES AND DNA

The Human Genome Project, a multinational effort to map the human genome, was completed in 2003. It led to the identification of more than 20,000 individual human genes within the 46 human chromosomes that collectively include about 3.2 billion base pairs. Although much of the DNA that makes up the chromosomes does

p22.2

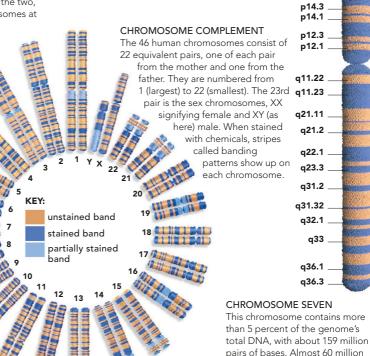
p21.3

p21.1

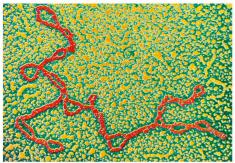
p15.2

are in the short arm, 7p, with the rest in the longer arm, 7g.

not code for proteins, known as noncoding and "junk" DNA, it may still regulate gene function. Junk DNA is different from noncoding DNA in that its structure does not resemble that of genes.



INTEGRATED BODY



TOCHONDRIAL DNA

This electron microscope image shows that mitochondrial DNA forms a closed loop, unlike the DNA in the nucleus of the cell, which is linear.

MITOCHONDRIAL GENES

Mitochondria, the powerhouses of the cell, have their own DNA. Unlike DNA in the nucleus, mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) is circular, not linear. It contains just 37 genes which code for the proteins and RNA the mitochondrion needs for its functions. Mitochondrial DNA is unique in being inherited only from the maternal line, via the mitochondria present in the egg at fertilization. This type of DNA has been used to study genetic relationships and reunite families, as the high rate of mutation of mtDNA means unrelated people have very different mtDNA. Certain rare diseases are associated with changes in the mtDNA.

GENETIC CONTROL OF CELLS

Not all genes are active in all cells. The process by which a gene is able to make its protein is called gene expression. The expression of each gene is controlled according to exposure to chemicals such as growth factors and regulatorsproducts of other genes. Some genes are "switched on" and express themselves in most cells. These are concerned with basic processes such as utilizing glucose for energy. Other genes are "switched off" unless they are needed; these are for making specialized products, such

as hormones. As cells' genes are switched on and off in different circumstances they differentiate, or become different.

PRECURSOR CELL



CELLULAR DIFFERENTIATION

The first cells produced by divisions of a fertilized egg are "generalized" stem cells. As they multiply, preprogrammed instructions begin to act. Intercellular contacts and the chemical environment inform cells in certain parts of an embryo to differentiate into tissues such as nerves, muscle, and skin.

PRECURSOR CELL

This can become any of a variety of cells. Some lines of offspring cells retain the ability to generalize, while others go on to become specialists

SPERM CELL Packed with mitochondria to supply fuel MUSCLE CELL Long, thin cells with contractile proteins

NERVE CELL Extreme specialization in both shape and connections



EPITHELIAL CELL Programmed to multiply rapidly and then die



FAT CELL Stores energy in case

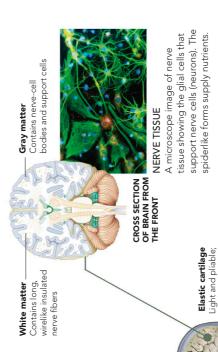
diet does not meet energy requirements

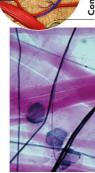
SPECIALIZED CELLS AND TISSUES

FORMS CLOSELY KNIT CONFIGURATIONS, WHICH ARE RECOGNIZABLE AS SPECIFIC TISSUES. MORE THAN 200 TYPES OF SPECIALIZED CELLS POPULATE THE HUMAN BODY. EACH TYPE IN SOME CASES, TISSUES ARE MADE OF SEVERAL TYPES OF CELLS.

TISSUE TYPES

The cells that form tissue all have much the same structure and perform the same function. There are four primary tissue types, derived from specific cell layers in the early embryo: epithelial, connective, muscle, and nerve. Blood, bone, cartilage, tendons, and ligaments are connective tissues. The epidermis and the tissues that line almost every organ are all types of epithelial tissues. Muscle and nerve tissues, of course, form muscles and nerves.





LOOSE CONNECTIVE TISSUE Some connective tissue is made up of cells loosely embedded in fibers. The dark spots seen here are the nuclei of fibroblast cells.

organs

Connective dermal tissue Connects dermis of skin (pictured) to underlying

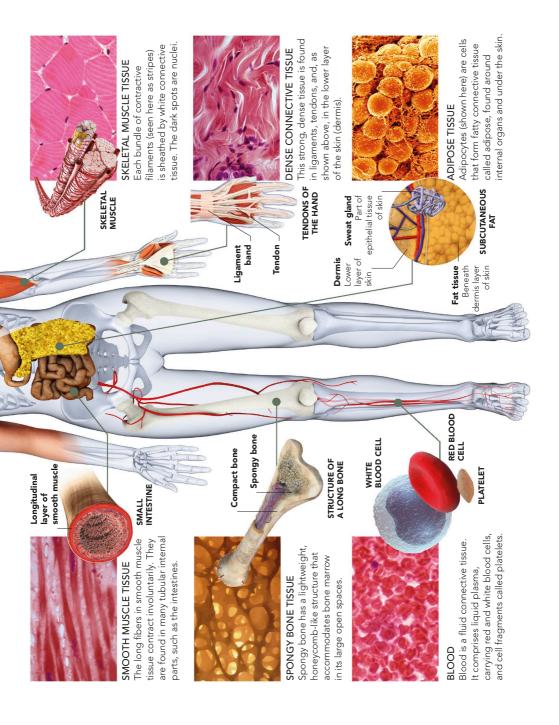
holds the larynx open **Hyaline cartilage** Tough yet flexible; the most common

tvpe of cartilage



A sample of cartilage from the epiglottis reveals round cells (chondrocytes) in fibers of elastin, which make it light and flexible.

ELASTIC CARTILAGE





THE LIVING SKELETON, WITH ITS VARIETY OF SPECIALIZED JOINTS, IS INTIMATELY CONNECTED WITH THE MUSCULAR SYSTEM. IT PROVIDES A FRAMEWORK OF STIFF LEVERS AND STABLE PLATES THAT PERMITS A MULTITUDE OF MOVEMENTS. THE SKELETON ALSO INTEGRATES IN FUNCTION WITH THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM—BONE MARROW CEASELESSLY MANUFACTURES FRESH BLOOD CELLS THAT POUR INTO THE BLOODSTREAM. A HEALTHY DIET AND REGULAR EXERCISE CAN HELP REDUCE THE RISKS OF BONE AND JOINT DISORDERS.



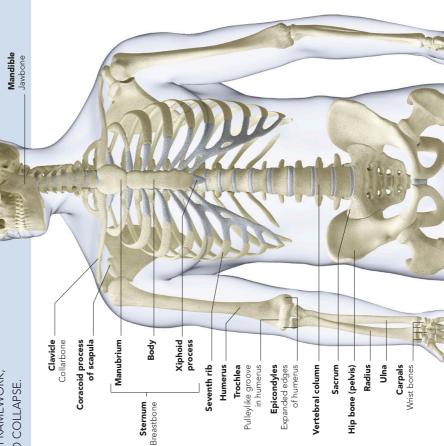


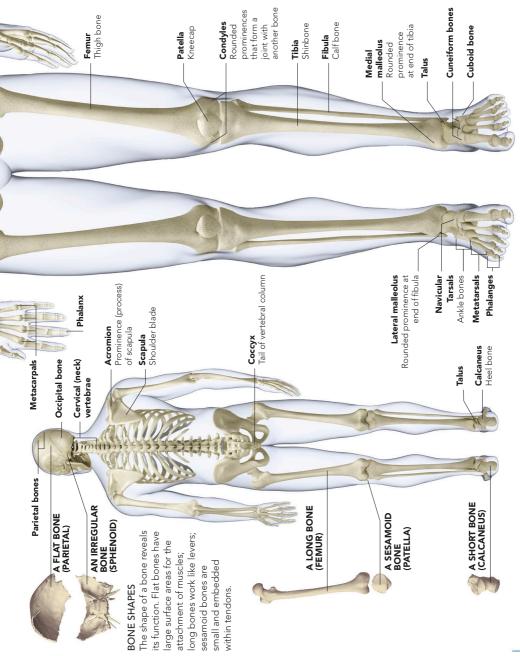
Cranium Skull

SKELETON

THE SKELETON MAKES UP ALMOST ONE-FIFTH OF THE BODY'S WEIGHT. WITHOUT THIS INNER FRAMEWORK, ALL OTHER PARTS AND TISSUES WOULD COLLAPSE.

being able to repair itself if damaged. the axial and appendicular skeletons. skull, vertebral (spinal) column, ribs, The average skeleton has 206 bones. water, it has an extremely strong yet and the hips, legs, ankles, and feet. axial skeleton, with 64 in the upper There are natural variations: about even though it is about 22 percent divisions of the skeleton are called The skeleton has the advantage of skeleton includes the bones of the one individual in 200 has an extra and weight-lifting. The two major lightweight and flexible structure. thicken and strengthen areas that The axial skeleton consists of the experience extra stress, resulting rib. Bone is an active tissue, and Of the 206 bones, 80 are in the It can also remodel its bones to and sternum. The appendicular from activities such as running shoulder, arm, wrist, and hand, lower appendicular skeleton. appendicular and 62 in the



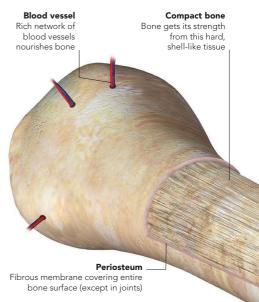


BONE STRUCTURE

BONE IS A TYPE OF CONNECTIVE TISSUE THAT IS AS STRONG AS STEEL BUT AS LIGHT AS ALUMINUM. IT IS MADE OF SPECIALIZED CELLS AND PROTEIN FIBERS. NEITHER IMMOBILE NOR DEAD, BONE CONSTANTLY BREAKS DOWN AND REBUILDS ITSELF.

STRUCTURE OF A BONE

Along the central shaft of a long bone (such as the femur or humerus) is the medullary canal or marrow cavity. This contains red bone marrow, which produces blood cells; yellow marrow, which is mostly fatty tissue; and blood vessels. Surrounding the marrow cavity is a layer of spongy (cancellous) bone, the honeycomb-like cavities of which also contain marrow. Around this is a layer of compact (cortical) bone, which is hard, dense, and strong. Small canals connect the marrow cavity with the periosteuma membrane covering the bone surface. Bone tissue is made of specialized cells and protein fibers, woven into a matrix of water, mineral salts, and other substances. Bone cells include osteoblasts. which calcify bone as it forms; osteocytes, which maintain healthy bone structure; and osteoclasts, which absorb bone tissue where it is degenerating or not needed.



INSIDE A BONE

Long bones, for example those in the leg, comprise several different types of bone tissue.

BONE GROWTH

During development in the womb and infancy, most bones develop from structures made of cartilage. Ossification is the process by which this cartilage is converted into bone tissue by the deposition of mineral salts and crystals. Near each end of a long bone is an area called the growth plate, where lengthening and ossification occur. Cartilage cells (see right) multiply here and form columns toward the bone shaft. As the cartilage cells enlarge and die, the space they occupied is filled by new bone cells.

CARTILAGE TO BONE

Initially, ossification in a long bone occurs between the shaft and the head. Later, ossification also takes place inside the head. Cartilage cells multiply

Cartilage cells form columns Cartilage cells

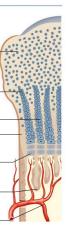
enlarge

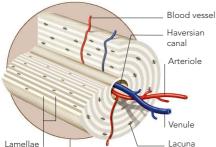
Calcium is deposited in gel-like matrix surrounding cartilage cells

Old cartilage cells die

Osteoblasts (specialized bone cells) attach to the calcified tissue

New blood vessels and bone tissue form





Lamellae

OSTEON

Osteon

This rod-shaped unit is the building block of compact bone. Its central (Haversian) canal, containing blood vessels and nerves, is surrounded by concentric layers of tissue (lamellae). Gaps (lacunae) in the tissue contain osteocytes, which maintain bones.

Vein

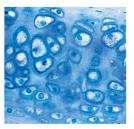
Bone marrow

Tissue filling a bone's central cavity; at first, long bones have red marrow-later this turns into yellow marrow

Arterv

CARTILAGE

Cartilage is a tough, adaptable form of connective tissue. It consists of a gel-like matrix containing many chemicals, such as proteins and carbohydrates. Various types of fibers are embedded in this tissue, as well as chondrocytes cells, which make and maintain the whole tissue. There are several kinds of cartilage, including hyaline cartilage, fibrocartilage, and elastic cartilage, a springy material found at sites such as the outer ear flap and larynx.



Spongy bone

Latticework structure

consisting of bony spikes

(trabeculae), arranged along lines of greatest stress

HYALINE CARTILAGE

Dense collagen fibers make this cartilage extra tough and resistant. It covers bone ends in joints and attaches ribs to the sternum, and is also found in the trachea and nose.

Epiphysis Expanded head of bone containing mainly spongy bone tissue

Bone shaft Mostly compact bone and marrow



FIBROCARTILAGE

This is mostly dense bundles of collagen fibers, with little gel-like matrix. It is found in the jaw, knee joints, and intervertebral disks.

4ω

JOINTS

THE SITE AT WHICH TWO BONES MEET IS CALLED A JOINT OR AN ARTICULATION. JOINTS CAN BE CLASSIFIED ACCORDING TO THEIR STRUCTURE AND BY THE TYPES OF MOVEMENT THEY ALLOW. THE BODY HAS MORE THAN 300 DIFFERENT JOINTS.

SYNOVIAL JOINTS

The body's most numerous, versatile, and freely moving joints are known as synovial joints. They can work well for many decades if kept in good use but not overused. Synovial joints are enclosed by a protective outer covering—the joint capsule. The capsule's inner lining, called the synovial membrane, produces a slippery, viscous synovial fluid that keeps the joint well lubricated so that the joint surfaces slide against each other with minimal friction and wear. There are around 230 synovial joints in the body.

SEMIMOVABLE AND FIXED JOINTS

Not all joints have a wide range of movement. Some allow for growth or for greater stability. The bones in these joints are usually linked by cartilage or tough fibers made of substances such as the protein collagen. In the fixed joints of the skull, once growth is complete, the separate bone plates are securely connected by interlocking fibrous tissue, forming suture joints.



Suture

SEMIMOVABLE JOINT In partly flexible joints, bones are linked by fibrous tissue or cartilage, as in the pubic symphysis.

Pubic symphysis _

FIXED JOINT

The adult skull's suture joints show up as wiggling lines. In infancy, these joints are loosely attached to allow for expansion of the rapidly growing brain.



TYPES OF SYNOVIAL JOINT

A synovial joint's range of movement is determined by the shape of its articular cartilage surfaces (see p.46) and how they fit together.

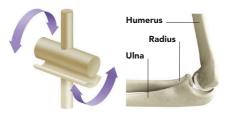
Pivot joint

A peglike projection from one bone turns in a ringshaped socket of another bone; or, conversely, the ring turns around the peg. The pivot joint between the top two neck (cervical) vertebrae enables the skull to rotate on the spinal axis, and to move from side to side.



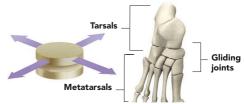
Hinge joint

The convex surface of one bone fits into the concave surface of another bone to allow backward and forward movement, mainly in one plane. The elbow is a modified hinge joint that permits limited rotation of the arm bones.



Gliding joint

The bone surfaces that meet in a gliding joint are almost flat and slide over one another. Movement is limited by ligaments. Some joints between the tarsals of the ankle and between the carpals in the wrist move in this way.







Ball-and-socket joint

The ball-shaped head of one bone fits into the cuplike cavity of another bone. Of all joint structures, a ball-and-socket joint gives the widest range of movement—the shoulder and hip are examples.

Saddle joint

Each bone's joint surface has both concave and convex areas, like a horse saddle, which allow the bones to slide back and forth and from side to side, but with limited rotation. There is a saddle joint at the base of the thumb.



metacarpal of thumb

Radius Scaphoid

Ellipsoidal joint

An ovoid (egg-shaped) bone end nestles in an ellipsoidal cavity, such as where the forearm's radius bone meets the wrist's scaphoid bone. This type of joint can be flexed and moved from side to side, but rotation is limited.

Gliding joint

Pivot joint

Hinge joint

SKELETAL SYSTEM

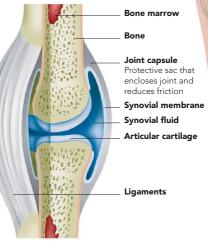
INSIDE A JOINT

The bone ends in a synovial joint are covered by a smooth, slightly compressible tissue called articular cartilage. Surrounding the joint is the joint capsule, which is made of strong connective tissue and is attached to the bone ends. Its delicate inner lining, the synovial membrane, secretes viscous synovial fluid into the synovial cavity to keep the joint well oiled. The fluid also nourishes the cartilage with fats and proteins, and is constantly reabsorbed. Fibrous thickenings of the capsule. called ligaments, are anchored to the bones at each end and prevent unnatural movement of the joint. Muscles around the joint, which are connected to the bones by tendons, provide stability and produce movement.

A show a start proteins, antly reabsorbed. kenings of the capsule, ents, are anchored to the cach end and prevent over the joint. The joint, which are to the bones by tendons, ility and produce movement.

INSIDE A SYNOVIAL JOINT

A mere film of synovial fluid separates bone ends. There are just 3/100-7/100 fl oz (1–2 ml) of this liquid in the knee joint.

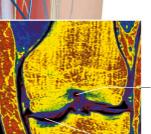


CARTILAGE AS A SHOCK ABSORBER

The articular cartilage that coats the bone ends in a synovial joint is also known as hvaline cartilage (see p.43). If sudden blows or vibrations jolt the joint, this cartilage works as a shock absorber to dissipate the force of the impact and prevent jarring damage to the much more rigid bones. In certain joints, the cartilage has especially tough fibers. Examples include the fibrocartilaginous pads, called intervertebral disks, that act as cushions between the vertebrae of the backbone. Fibrocartilage also occurs in the jaw and wrist joints and the menisci in the knee.

SPINAL CARTILAGE

The fibrocartilage disks (blue) between the vertebrae help stabilize and cushion the spinal column.



INTERIOR OF THE KNEE

The meeting of the femur and tibia forms the body's largest joint (articulation), the knee.

Cruciate ligaments

Form a cross shape from back to front of joint to provide stability

Mevniscus

One of two wedges of cartilage that help distribute weight across the knee joint

Muscle

Nerve

Patellar tendon Crosses over patella, which is embedded in it

Femur

Bone of the upper leg; also called the thigh bone

Synovial membrane Produces synovial fluid

Patella

Protective disk of bone and cartilage, also called the kneecap

Pad of fat

Acts as cushion between patella and knee, especially when kneeling

Articular cartilage

Artery

Ligament

Vein

Attachment of patellar tendon to tibia

Tibia

Also called the shinbone; larger of the two lower leg bones

INSIDE THE KNEE

The knee is stabilized by external ligaments and tendons, and can "lock" straight to save energy and maintain posture while standing. It also has internal cartilages (menisci) and internal ligaments (cruciates).

SKULL

THERE ARE 29 BONES IN THE SKULL—22 BONES FORM THE SKULL ITSELF, WITH 21 OF THEM, EXCLUDING THE LOWER JAW, FUSED TOGETHER. THE OTHER BONES ARE THE HYOID BONE IN THE NECK AND THREE PAIRS OF TINY EAR BONES, CALLED OSSICLES.



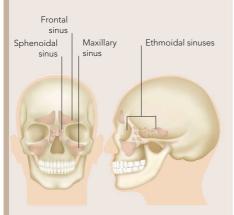
SKULL SUTURES Lines on the skull's surface, highlighted here, are the fused margins of the skull bones.

SKULL

Two groups of bones make up the skull. The upper set of eight bones forms the domelike cranium (cranial skull or cranial vault), which encloses and protects the brain. The other 14 bones make the skeleton of the face. During growth in childhood, 21 of the 22 bones become strongly fused at faint joint lines, known as sutures. The lower jaw, or mandible, remains unfixed and is linked to the rest of the skull at the two jaw, or temporomandibular, joints.

SINUSES

The four pairs of sinuses, known as paranasal sinuses, are air-filled cavities within the skull bones. They are named after the bones in which they are located: maxillary, frontal, sphenoidal, and ethmoidal sinuses. The first three pairs have fairly well-defined shapes. The ethmoidal sinuses are more honeycomb-like and variable.

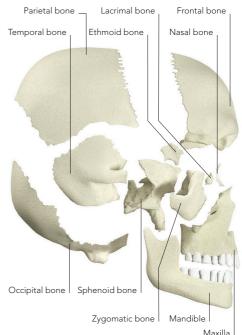


RESONANT WEIGHT-SAVERS

The sinuses help lighten the skull's overall weight, and also act as resonating chambers to give each person's voice an individual character.

SKULL AND HEAD REGIONS

Two sets of bones form the structure of the skull. The eight bones that enclose the brain are called the cranial vault.



Occipital bone Parietal bone Frontal bone Temporal bone Sphenoid bone Zygomatic bone Lacrimal bone Vomer Stapes Ossicles 73 of the Malleus middle ear Incus Palatine bone Inferior nasal concha Ethmoid bone Nasal bones Maxilla SKULL BONES SEPARATED All the skull bones are paired, left and right, apart from the occipital, frontal, ethmoid, vomer, and sphenoid bones, and the mandible. Mandible

SKULL

SPINE

THE SPINE IS ALSO KNOWN AS THE SPINAL OR VERTEBRAL COLUMN, OR SIMPLY "THE BACKBONE." THIS STRONG BUT FLEXIBLE CENTRAL SUPPORT HOLDS THE HEAD AND TORSO UPRIGHT, YET IT ALLOWS THE NECK AND BACK TO BEND AND TWIST.

FLEXIBLE COLUMN

the vertebrae, the

forward than back.

and twist on its axis

Owing to the shape of

spine can bend farther

SPINE FUNCTION

The spine consists of 33 ringlike bones called vertebrae. The bottom nine vertebrae are fused into two larger bones termed the sacrum and the coccyx. The 26 movable components of the spine are linked by a series of mobile joints. Between the bones of each joint is an intervertebral disk—a springy pad of tough, fibrous cartilage that squashes slightly under

pressure to absorb shocks. Ligaments and muscles around the spine provide stability and help control movement. The spinal column also protects the spinal cord (see p.98). A Company of the second s

Springy ligament Ligaments between spinous processes limit movement and store energy for recoil

ATTENTION TOTAL

Facet joint Determines range of movement between vertebrae

Intervertebral disk Composed of tough, flexible fibrocartilage with jellylike core

SPINAL JOINTS

Spinal joints do not have a

wide range of movement,

back, curve forward, and

twist. Two facet joints help prevent slippage and torsion.

but they still allow the spine

great flexibility, letting it arch

HYOID BONE

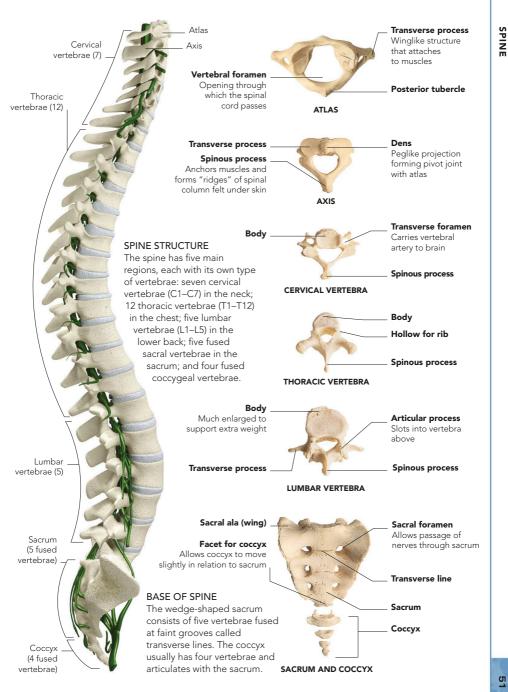
The single U-shaped hyoid bone is located at the root of the tongue, just above the larynx. It is one of the few bones in the body that does not join directly to another bone. It is held in position by muscles and by the strong stylohyoid ligament on each side of the bone, which links to the styloid process of the skull's temporal bone. The hyoid stabilizes several sets of muscles used in swallowing and speech.



LOCATION

The hyoid bone sits within the curve of the lower jaw; it has two pairs of small hornlike projections near the front.

SKELETAL SYSTEM



RIBS AND PELVIS

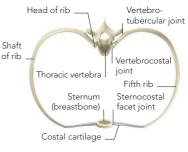
THE RIBS AND HIP BONE (PELVIS) GUARD VITAL CHEST AND ABDOMINAL ORGANS, AND DEMONSTRATE THE SKELETON'S FUNCTIONS OF SUPPORT AND PROTECTION. THE PELVIS PROVIDES SURFACES FOR ANCHORING THE HIP AND THIGH MUSCLES.

RIB CAGE

Most people have 12 pairs of ribs, but about 1 in 200 persons is born with one or more extra pairs. All ribs attach to the spinal column at the rear. The upper seven pairs of "true ribs" link directly to the breastbone (sternum) by their cartilage extensions (costal cartilages). The next two or three pairs of "false ribs" connect to the cartilages of the ribs above. The remaining "floating ribs" do not link to the sternum.

SHIELDING VITAL ORGANS

The ribs, thoracic spine at the rear, and breastbone (sternum) at the front shield vital internal organs such as the heart and lungs in the chest, and the liver and stomach in the upper abdomen.



ENCIRCLING RIB CAGE

Each rib links to its corresponding chest (thoracic) vertebra at two points. Flexible costal cartilage attaches ribs to the sternum, allowing the rib cage to change volume during breathing.

Manubrium

Body Xiphoid

process

Left lung

Stomach

Floating ribs Have no attachment at front

Space for heart Costal cartilage Diaphragm Liver

Sternum

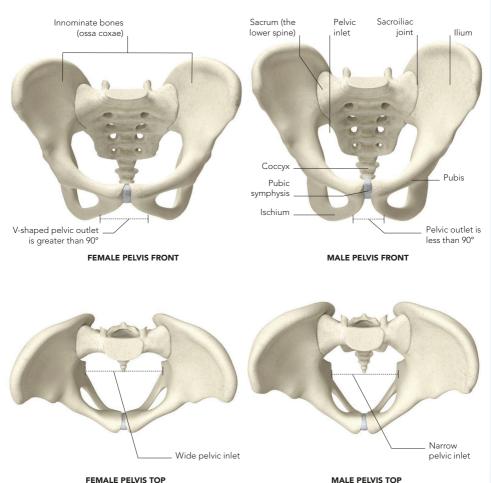
True ribs Attach directly to sternum

False ribs Attach to sternum via costal cartilages above

RIBS AND PELVIS

PELVIS

Often referred to as the hip bone, the pelvis is a bowl-like structure consisting of the left and right innominate bones or ossa coxae, and the wedge-shaped sacrum and coccyx, which make up the "tailbone" at the rear. Each innominate bone has three fused bony elements: the large, flaring ilium at the rear, which forms the hip bone that you feel under the skin; the ischium at the lower front; and the pubis above it. There are paired sacroiliac joints at the rear and the pubic symphysis, a semimovable joint made of fibrocartilage, at the front. The shape of the pelvis is shallower and wider in females than in males, with a larger gap, or pelvic inlet, and a larger pelvic outlet, to allow a baby to pass through at birth.

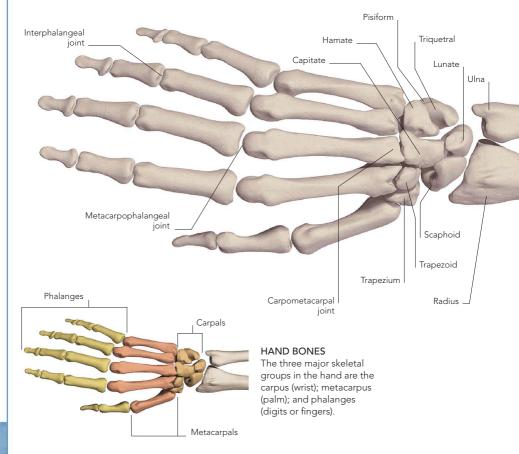


HANDS AND FEET

THE WRISTS, HANDS, ANKLES, AND FEET COLLECTIVELY CONTAIN 106 BONES, WHICH IS MORE THAN HALF OF THE 206 BONES IN THE BODY. TOGETHER WITH THEIR ASSOCIATED MUSCLES, THEY ARE VITAL FOR COORDINATED MOVEMENT.

WRIST AND HAND

The wrist is made up of the eight carpal bones, arranged roughly in two rows of four. They are linked to each other chiefly by plane or gliding joints (see p.44), and to the forearm bones by the radiocarpal joint. The palm of the hand contains five metacarpal bones. Each of these joins at its outer end to a finger bone (phalanx), of which there are two in the thumb (first digit, or pollex) and three each in the other four digits. The entire structure is moved by more than 50 muscles, including some in the forearm, to provide great flexibility and delicate manipulation.



HANDS AND FEET

Tibia

Tibiofibular

ligament

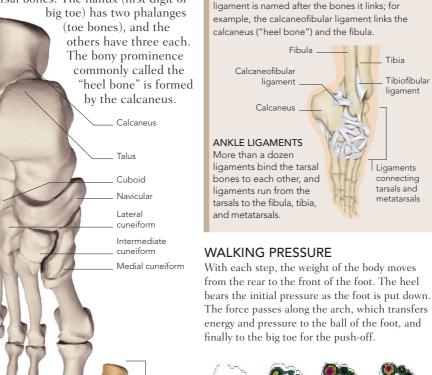
Ligaments

connectina tarsals and

metatarsals

ANKLE AND FOOT

The ankle and foot have a similar bone arrangement to the wrist and hand, except that there are only seven tarsal (ankle) bones. The build of the ankle and foot bones is heavier, for strength and weight-bearing stability. The sole is supported by the five metatarsal bones. The hallux (first digit or



Metatarsals

FOOT BONES

The three main bone groups in the foot are the tarsus (ankle): metatarsus (sole); and phalanges (digits or toes).

Tarsals

Phalanges

LIGAMENTS

Ligaments are strong bands or straps of fibrous

tissue that provide support to the bones and

link bone ends together in and around joints. Ligaments are made of collagen-a tough,

Fibula

Calcaneofibular

ligament

Calcaneus

elastic protein. A large number of ligaments bind

together the complex wrist and ankle joints. Each

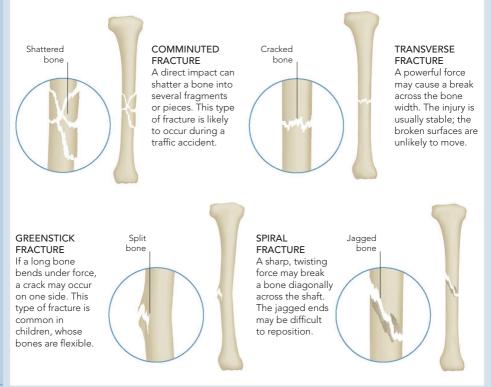
LOAD AREAS ON THE FOOT These footprint impressions show (from left to right) how the body's weight transfers from the heel to the ball to the big toe when walking.

BONE AND JOINT DISORDERS

BONES AND JOINTS ARE VULNERABLE TO INJURIES SUCH AS FRACTURES AND, DUE TO CONSTANT WEAR, TO DISORDERS SUCH AS OSTEOARTHRITIS. BONES MAY BE WEAKENED BY OSTEOPOROSIS, AND JOINTS MAY BE AFFECTED BY INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS SUCH AS RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS.

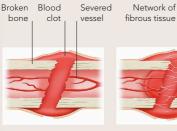
FRACTURE

Fractures may be caused by a sudden impact, by compression, or by repeated stress. A displaced fracture occurs when the broken surfaces of bone are forced from their normal positions. There are various types of displaced fracture, depending on the angle and strength of the blow. A compression fracture occurs when spongy bone, such as in the vertebrae, is crushed. Stress fractures are caused by prolonged or repeated force straining the bone; they occur in long-distance runners and in the elderly, in whom minor stress, such as coughing, may cause a fracture. Nutritional deficiencies or certain chronic diseases such as osteoporosis, which can weaken bone, may increase the likelihood of fractures. If a broken bone remains beneath the skin, the fracture is described as closed or simple, and there is a low risk of infection. If the ends of the fractured bone project out through the skin, the injury is described as open or compound, and there is a danger of dirt entering the bone tissue and causing microbial contamination.



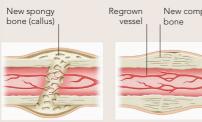
BONE REPAIR

Despite its image as dry, brittle, and even lifeless, bone is an active tissue with an extensive blood supply and its own restorative processes. After a fracture, blood clots as it does elsewhere in the body. Fibrous tissue, and then new bone growth, bridge the break and eventually restore strength. However, medical treatment is often required to ensure that the repair process is effective and the result is not misshapen. If the bones are displaced, manipulation to restore their normal positionknown as reduction-may be performed under anesthesia. The bone will also be immobilized to allow the ends to heal correctly.

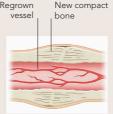


IMMEDIATE RESPONSE Blood leaks from the blood vessels and clots. White blood cells gather at the area to scavenge damaged cells and debris. a plaster cast or splint.

AFTER SEVERAL DAYS Fibroblast cells construct new fibrous tissue across the break. The limb is immobilized, usually in



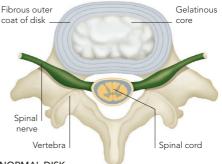
AFTER 1-2 WEEKS Bone-building cells (osteoblasts) multiply and form new bone tissue. callus reshapes while Initially spongy, the new tissue infiltrates the site of the fracture as a callus



AFTER 2-3 MONTHS Blood vessels reconnect across the fracture. The the new bone tissue is "remodeled" into dense, compact bone.

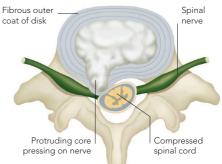
DISK PROLAPSE

The cushionlike cartilage disks that separate adjacent vertebrae have a hard outer covering and a jellylike center. An accident, wear and tear, or excessive pressure when lifting awkwardly, may rupture the outer layer. This forces some of the core material to bulge out, or prolapse. The prolapsed (or herniated) portion may cause pressure on the nearby spinal nerve root. Symptoms of disk prolapse include dull pain, muscle spasm and stiffness in the affected area of the back, and pain, tingling, numbness, or weakness in the body part supplied by the nerve.



NORMAL DISK

The outer casing (capsule) of the intervertebral disk is intact and encloses its gelatinous core. The disk sits between the bodies (centra) of adjacent vertebrae.



PROLAPSED DISK

A weak site in the outer casing allows the gelatinous core to bulge through as the disk is compressed. The resulting pressure on the spinal nerve causes pain.

SKELETAL SYSTEM

OSTEOPOROSIS

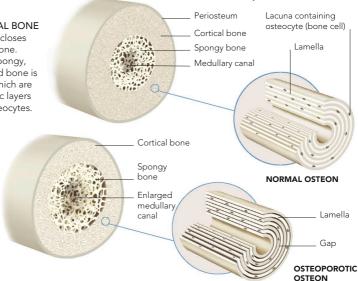
For bones to stay healthy, bone tissue is continually being broken down and replaced. Sex hormones are essential for this process. With the decline in production of sex hormones in both sexes after middle age, bones become thinner and more porous. Estrogen levels fall rapidly in women after menopause, which can lead to severe thinning, or osteoporosis. The decline in testosterone in men is gradual and, in general, males are less prone to osteoporosis. Exercise is essential for maintaining bone health, and a lack of activity is a predisposing factor to developing osteoporosis. Other factors influencing the development of osteoporosis include smoking, corticosteroid treatment, rheumatoid arthritis, an overactive thyroid, and long-term kidney failure. The decreased density of osteoporotic bones makes them more likely to fracture.

STRUCTURE OF NORMAL BONE

The outer periosteum encloses a band of hard cortical bone. Within this is a layer of spongy, or cancellous, bone. Hard bone is composed of osteons, which are tightly packed, concentric layers (lamellae) formed by osteocytes.

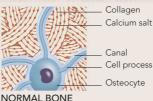
STRUCTURE OF OSTEOPOROTIC BONE

The mineral density (mainly calcium and phosphorus) is reduced from two-thirds to onethird. The medullary canal through the bone's center is enlarged, while gaps between the lamellae contribute to the fragility of the bone.



WHY OSTEOPOROSIS OCCURS

Bone tissue is built up by the deposition of minerals (mainly calcium salts) on a framework of collagen fibers. It is continually broken down and rebuilt in order to allow growth and repair. Osteoporosis develops when the rate at which fibers, minerals, and cells are broken down becomes much greater than the formation of new tissue.



Osteocytes form collagen fibers and aid calcium deposition. Calcium moves in canals between bone and blood in response to hormones.



Space Collagen Widened canal

Osteocyte

Cell process

OSTEOPOROTIC BONE

In osteoporosis, collagen and minerals are broken down faster than they form. Canals widen, new spaces appear, and bone weakens.

LIGAMENT INJURIES

Ligaments are strong, flexible bands of fibrous tissue that link bone ends together around a joint. If the bones in a joint are pulled too far apart, often as a result of a sudden or forceful movement, the ligament fibers may overstretch or tear. This commonly results in swelling, pain, and muscle spasm. A joint "sprain" is usually due to partial tearing of a ligament. Rest, ice,

compression, and elevation of the joint is the usual treatment if a sprain is not serious. A severe injury may result in joint instability or dislocation.



LIGAMENT FIBERS This view through an arthroscope (a telescope-like tube for seeing into joints) reveals torn fibers of a knee's anterior cruciate ligament.

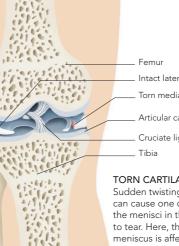
Anterior cruciate ligament



The ligaments in the ankle

TORN CARTILAGE

The knee joint contains padlike, curved "disks" of cartilage called menisci. These are almost C-shaped and made of tough fibrous cartilage. The disks are situated between the lower end of the femur and upper end of the tibia, with the medial meniscus on the knee's inner side and the lateral meniscus on the outside. These disks stabilize the joint, helping it "lock" straight while standing, and cushion the bones. A meniscus may be crushed or torn by rapid twisting of the knee, often while plaving a sport. If such an injury is painful, surgery can remove the damaged piece of cartilage.



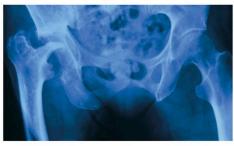


TORN CARTILAGE

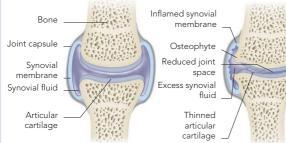
Sudden twisting of the leg can cause one or both of the menisci in the knee to tear. Here, the medial meniscus is affected.

OSTEOARTHRITIS

Osteoarthritis is often confused with rheumatoid arthritis (see opposite), but the two disorders have different causes and progressions. Osteoarthritis may affect only a single joint and can be triggered by localized wear and tear, resulting in painful inflammation from time to time. Joint degeneration may be hastened by a congenital defect, injury, infection, or obesity. Because cartilage normally wears away as the body ages, a mild form of osteoarthritis affects many people after about the age of 60 years. Typical symptoms of osteoarthritis include pain and swelling in the affected joint that worsen with activity and fade with rest; joint



OSTEOARTHRITIS OF THE HIP The right hip, on the left of this X-ray, is badly eroded by osteoarthritis. The head of the femur, which is normally round, is flattened.



EARLY OSTEOARTHRITIS

producing excess fluid.

The articular cartilage becomes thin

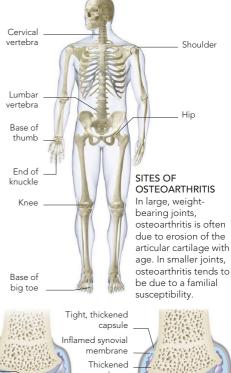
and rough, with fissures in its surface.

Bony outgrowths (osteophytes) form,

and the synovial lining is inflamed,

HEALTHY JOINT

The articular cartilages coating the ends of the bones are smooth and compressible. They are lubricated by synovial fluid and slip past each other with minimal friction. stiffness for a short time after rest; restricted movement of the joint; crepitus (crackling noises) when moving the joint; and referred pain (pain in areas remote from the site of damage but on the same nerve pathway as the affected joint).



nflamed synovial membrane Thickened bone Bone surfaces in contact Osteophyte Cyst forming in bone



LATE OSTEOARTHRITIS

The articular cartilage and underlying bone crack and erode. The bones rub together, thicken, and overgrow, causing extreme discomfort. The joint capsule thickens.

RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

Rheumatoid arthritis develops when the immune system produces antibodies that attack its own body tissues—especially the synovial membranes inside joints. The joints become swollen and deformed, with painful and restricted movement. Early general symptoms include fever, fatigue, and weakness. Characteristically, many of the small joints are affected in a symmetrical pattern; for example, the hands and feet may become inflamed to the same degree on both sides. Stiffness is often worse in the mornings but eases during the day. Painless small lumps or nodules (clusters of inflamed tissue cells) may form in areas of pressure, commonly on the



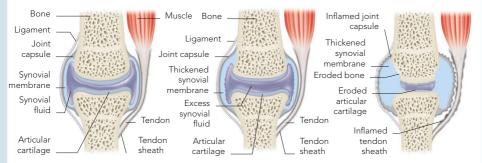
JOINT INFLAMMATION In this X-ray, the middle knuckles of the hands are severely damaged by rheumatoid arthritis (red). Inflammation of the joints causes abnormal bending of the fingers. forearms, and the skin over the joint is thin and fragile. The condition may flare up then fade for a time. The diagnosis is supported if a blood test detects an antibody, rheumatoid factor (RhF), associated with rheumatoid arthritis. The disease can

also affect the eyes, skin, heart, nerves, and lungs. Treatment includes simple anti-inflammatory drugs and disease-modifying

antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs).

SITES OF RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

Smaller joints, especially those in the hands, are often affected first, usually on both sides of the body at the same time. The inflammation may then transfer or "flit" to other, larger joints, such as the wrist.



Shoulder

Wrist Middle knuckle

Knee

Ankle

Тое

HEALTHY JOINT

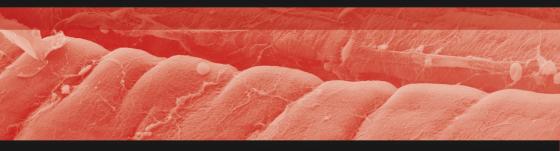
Cartilage is smooth and intact in a healthy joint. Ligaments aid stability, and tendons slide in sheaths as muscles pull on them.

EARLY RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

The synovial membrane becomes inflamed and thickens, spreading across the joint. Excess synovial fluid accumulates in the joint.

LATE RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

As the synovial membrane thickens, the cartilage and bone ends are eroded. The joint capsule and tendon sheath become inflamed.



THE MUSCULAR SYSTEM PRODUCES AN ENDLESS VARIETY OF ACTIONS BY USING MUSCLES IN COORDINATED TEAMS. MUSCLE TISSUE ENABLES BODY MOVEMENTS AND ALSO POWERS INTERNAL PROCESSES, FROM THE HEARTBEAT AND THE MOVEMENT OF FOOD THROUGH THE INTESTINES TO THE ADJUSTMENT OF ARTERY DIAMETER AND THE FOCUSING OF THE EYE. HOWEVER, MUSCLES CANNOT FUNCTION WITHOUT BEING STIMULATED BY THE NERVOUS SYSTEM. THE MUSCULAR SYSTEM IS MORE PRONE TO INJURY THAN TO DISEASE.



MUSCULAR SYSTEM	SCULAR SYSTE	
USCULAR SYSTE	USCULAR SYSTE	~
USCULAR S'	USCULAR S'	<
USCULAR S'	USCULAR S'	ш
USCULAR S'	USCULAR S'	E
USCULAR S'	USCULAR S'	S
USCULAR	USCULAR	≻
USCULAR	USCULAR	S
USCUL	USCUL	
USCUL	USCUL	-
USCI	USCI	◄
USCI	USCI	_
USCI	USCI	-
		U
		S
ž	ž	-
5	Σ	-
	2	~
	_	2

MUSCLES OF THE BODY

THE MUSCLES ARE RESPONSIBLE FOR MOVEMENT. THEY ACHIEVE THIS BY CONTRACTING AND PULLING ON THE BONES TO WHICH THEY ARE ATTACHED.

The typical male body contains approximately 640 muscles, which compose about two-fifths of its total weight. The same number in a female body make up a slightly smaller proportion. A typical muscle spans a joint and tapers at each end into a fibrous tendon anchored to a bone. Some muscles divide to attach to different bones. Superficial muscles, those located just beneath the skin, are pictured here on the left side of a male body. On the right side of this body are the deeper layers—the intermediate and deep muscles.

blade

Pectoralis minor Moves shoulder

> External intercostal Elevates ribs

Internal intercostal Pulls adjacent ribs together Internal oblique abdominal Flexes and rotates trunk Linea alba _____ Tendinous structure dividing left and right abdominal muscles

Inguinal ligament



Occipitofrontalis
 Raises eyebrows
 Orbicularis oculi

Closes eye

Orbicularis oris Narrows mouth and purses lips

Sternocleidomastoid

Scalenus Aids breathing and neck flexion

Tilts and twists neck

Trapezius Rotates and retracts shoulder blade

Deltoid

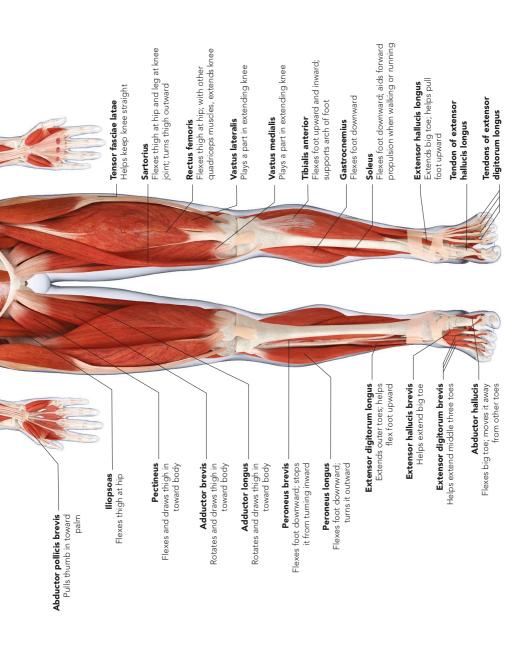
Raises arm away from body to front, side, and rear

Pectoralis major Draws arm toward body;

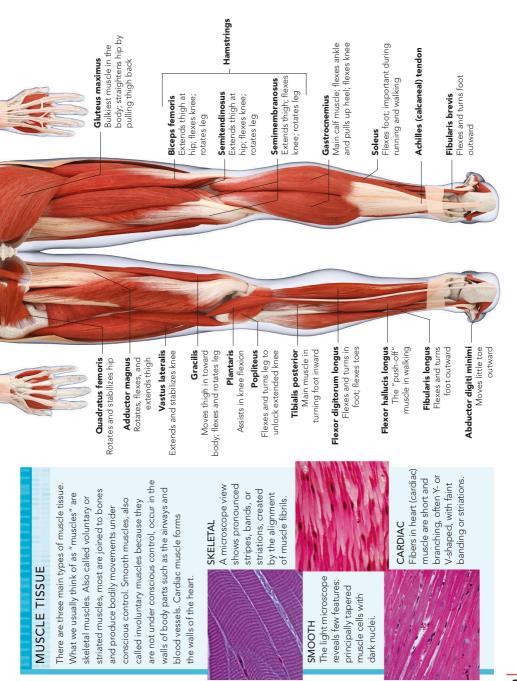
Uraws arm toward body; rotates upper arm inward **Biceps brachii** Flexes forearm at elbow and turns the palm upward

- Rectus abdominis Flexes spine and draws pelvis forward **External oblique abdominal** Flexes and rotates trunk

Brachioradialis Flexes arm at elbow

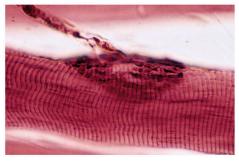


MUSCULAR SYSTEM	Temporoparietalis (auricularis) Wiggles ears Rhomboideus minor Helps retract shoulder blade and returns it to its rest position Rhomboideus major Rhomboideus major Tapezius Rotates, elevates, and retracts shoulder blade Largest surface area of any body ouder blade Largest surface area of any body overs arm; pulls shoulder blade Anore area of any body overs arm; pulls shoulder blade for traces, and retracts of traces for traces	Flexor carpi ulmaris Pulls write toward body Extensor digitorum Extends all finger joints
	Semispinalis capitis Extends head and neck; flexes them from side to side Splenus capitis Moves head; twists neck Splenus cervicis Flexes and rotates upper spine Lifts and twists shoulder Lifts and twists shoulder Infraspinatus Raises arm; stabilizes shoulder Infraspinatus Rotates arm; stabilizes shoulder Infraspinatus Rotates arm; stabilizes shoulder Lifts and twists arm; stabilizes shoulder Lifts and twists arm, stabilizes shoulder Lifts and twists arm, stabilizes shoulder Lifts and twists arm, stabilizes shoulder Diffiser and twists arm, stabilizes shoulder Lifts and twists arm, stabilizes shoulder Lifts and twists arm, stabilizes shoulder Lifts and twists arm, stabilizes shoulder Lifts and twists arm, stabilizes	Gluteus minimus Raises thigh away from body at hip, rotates thigh; when walking, tilts pelvis
9	amed for the rhomboideus ers are named one attachments s between the e movement r muscles bend ne of span, while alents, the allents, the allents, the arm out to the joint. ause movement ne of the body, arm out to ctor partners he reverse ard the are on the right es to the left.	Internal oblique abdominal



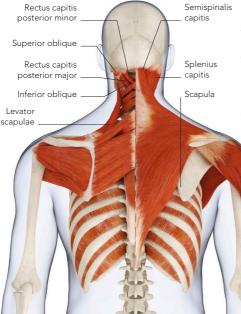
MUSCLES OF THE FACE, HEAD, AND NECK

THE MUSCLES OF THE FACE, HEAD, AND NECK INTERACT TO STEADY AND MOVE THE HEAD AND TO MOVE THE FACIAL FEATURES. THE MUSCULATURE INVOLVED IS HIGHLY COMPLEX, MAKING POSSIBLE A HUGE RANGE OF FACIAL EXPRESSIONS.



NERVE-MUSCLE JUNCTION

In this microscope image, a nerve cell (top left) joins a facial muscle fiber. At the point of contact between the two is the motor end plate (center), an area of highly excitable muscle fiber.



FACIAL MUSCLES

Some facial muscles are anchored to bones. Others are joined to tendons or to dense, sheetlike clusters of fibrous connective tissue called aponeuroses. This means that some facial muscles are joined to each other. Many of these muscles have their other end inserted into deeper layers of the skin. The advantage of this complex system is that even a slight degree of muscle contraction produces movement of the facial skin, which reveals itself as a show of expression or emotion. Almost all facial muscles are controlled by the facial nerve called cranial VII (see p.102).

HEAD AND NECK MUSCLES

An adult's head weighs more than 11 lb (5 kg) and is, to some extent, "balanced" on top of the vertebral column. Strong, stabilizing muscles in the neck, inner shoulders, and upper back constantly tense to steady the head and contract in coordinated teams to produce complex movements of the neck. These muscles assist facial expressions and nonverbal communication, such as emphasizing doubt by cocking the head slightly to one side, or moving the head to indicate "yes" or "no."

BACK MUSCLES

The neck and shoulder muscles support and steady the head. Upper-back muscles that attach to the shoulder blade (scapula) help stabilize the shoulders.

FACE AND NECK MUSCLES

Intermeshing muscles around the lips are involved in speech, nonverbal expression, eating, and drinking. Some facial muscles act as sphincters to open and close orifices, such as the eyelids, nostrils, and lips.

Temporoparietalis (auricularis) Wiggles ears Temporalis

Lifts jawbone _ (mandible) Occipitofrontalis Raises eyebrows

Corrugator supercilii

Pulls eyebrows together and wrinkles lower forehead

Procerus Pulls eyebrows down and together

Orbicularis oculi Closes eyelid

Exact relationship is the second seco

Compressor naris Closes nostrils

Dilator naris Opens and flares nostrils

Zygomaticus minor Raises upper lip

Zygomaticus major Pulls corner of mouth up and out

Risorius Pulls corner of mouth outward

Orbicularis oris Narrows mouth and purses lips

Mentalis Raises lower lip and wrinkles chin

Depressor labii inferioris Pulls down lower lip

Depressor anguli oris Lowers corner of mouth

Sternohyoid Depresses larynx

Masseter Lifts lower jaw (mandible) as when chewing, and closes mouth

Sternocleidomastoid Twists and tilts neck

> Scalenus Aids breathing and neck flexion

MUSCLES AND TENDONS

MUSCLES CAN ONLY CONTRACT AND SHORTEN. TO RETURN TO THEIR ORIGINAL SHAPE, THEY RELAX AND LENGTHEN PASSIVELY AS OTHER MUSCLES CONTRACT. THE CONTRACTION OF SKELETAL MUSCLES AND TENDONS PRODUCES BODY MOVEMENTS.



MUSCLE STRUCTURE

Skeletal (striated or voluntary) muscle consists of densely packed groups of hugely elongated cells called myofibers. These are grouped into bundles (fascicles). A typical myofiber is $3/4 - 1^{1}/5$ in (2–3 cm) long and $\frac{1}{500}$ in (0.05 mm) in diameter and is composed of narrower structures called myofibrils. These contain thick and thin myofilaments made up mainly of the proteins actin and myosin. Numerous capillaries keep the muscle supplied with the oxygen and glucose needed to fuel contraction. Actin

Thin myofilament

Consists of twisted strands of actin and tropomyosin (protein that inhibits contraction), plus occasional troponin complexes

> Head of myosin molecule

STRIATED MUSCLE

M band Connects neighboring

This electron micrograph shows a cross section through skeletal muscle. The bundles of myofibers are interspersed with capillaries (dark areas).

> Z band Where the contractile units (sarcomeres) join end to end

Capillary

Thick myofilament

Main component is the protein myosin: molecules have round heads and long tails

Tropomyosi

66666666

Tail of myosin molecule

Fascicle

One of the bundles of fibers (muscle cells) that make up a muscle

Perimysium

Connective tissue sheath surrounding a fascicle

Muscle fiber (myofiber) Multinucleated muscle cell up to 1 ft (30 cm) long

Epimysium Sheath of tissue around muscle

Sarcolemma Plasma membrane surrounding myofiber

Sarcoplasm Cytoplasm of muscle cell, containing many nuclei

Sarcomere

Basic unit of contraction of a muscle fiber, which extends from one Z band to the next

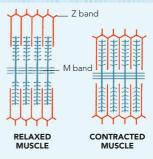
Muscle fibril (myofibril)

111

Each muscle fibril is made up of both thick (myosin) and thin (actin) contractile filaments

HOW MUSCLES CONTRACT

In muscle that is relaxed, the myofilaments only partly overlap. When a muscle contracts, the myosin filaments slide between the actin filaments, shortening the myofibrils and the entire muscle fiber. The more shortened muscle fibers there are, the greater the contraction in the muscle as a whole.

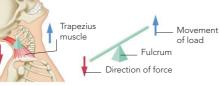


MUSCLES AND TENDONS

BODY PARTS AS LEVERS

Body movements employ the mechanical principles of applying a force to one part of a rigid lever, which tilts at a pivot point (fulcrum) to move a weight (load) that is elsewhere on the lever. The muscles apply force, bones serve as levers, and joints function as fulcrums. The various lever systems in the body allow a wide range of movement as well as making it possible

to lift and carry things.

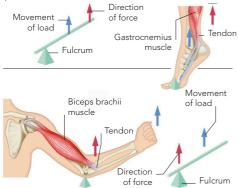


FIRST-CLASS LEVER

The fulcrum is positioned between the force and the load, like a seesaw. An example of this type of lever in the body is seen in the posterior neck muscles that tilt back the head on the cervical vertebrae.

SECOND-CLASS LEVER

The load lies between the force and the fulcrum. Standing on tiptoe, the calf muscles provide the force, the heel and foot form the lever, and the toes provide the fulcrum.

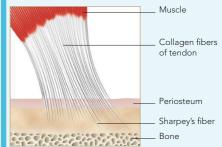


THIRD-CLASS LEVER

The most common type of lever in the body; the force is applied between the load and the fulcrum. An example is flexing the elbow joint (the fulcrum) by contracting the biceps brachii muscle.

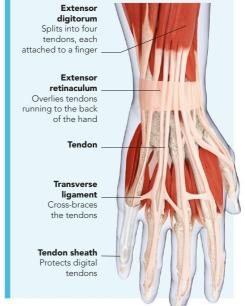
TENDONS

Tendons are tough, fibrous cords of connective tissue that link skeletal muscles to bones. Within them, Sharpey's fibers pass through the bone covering (periosteum) to embed in the bone. Tendons in the hands and feet are enclosed in self-lubricating sheaths to protect them from rubbing against the bones. From the hand bones, tendons extend up to muscles near the elbow.



BONE-TENDON ATTACHMENT

Sharpey's fibers, which are also known as perforating fibers, are extensions of the tendon's proteinaceous collagen fibers.



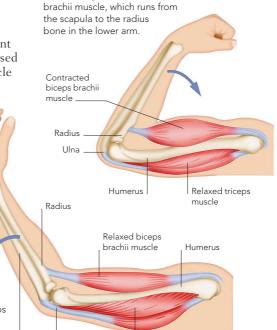
HOW MUSCLES WORK TOGETHER

Muscles can only pull, not push, and so are arranged in pairs that act in opposition to one other. The movement produced by one muscle can be reversed by its opposing partner. When a muscle

contracts to produce movement, it is called the agonist, while its opposite partner, called the antagonist, relaxes and is passively stretched. In reality, few movements are achieved by a single muscle contraction. Usually, whole teams of muscles act as agonists to give the precisely required degree and direction of motion, while the antagonists tense to prevent the movement from overextending.

STRAIGHTENING THE ELBOW

The biceps brachii relaxes and the triceps brachii, attached at its lower end to the ulna, contracts. It is aided by the small anconeus muscle on the elbow joint.



BENDING THE ELBOW The chief agonist is the biceps

Sensory nerve fiber Sensory capsule Annulospiral nerve ending Muscle cell Muscle spindle

fiber

Ulna

Tendon

NEUROMUSCULAR SPINDLE

These stretch sensors lie between and in parallel with skeletal muscle fibers; information from them allows the brain to gauge the muscle's tension and elongation.

POSITIONAL SENSE

Muscles contain many tiny sensors, known as neuromuscular spindles. These are modified muscle fibers with a spindle-shaped sheath or capsule and several types of nerve supply. The sensory or afferent nerve fibers, which are wrapped around the modified muscle fibers, relay information to the spinal cord and brain about muscle length and tension as the muscle stretches. Signals are then sent back through motor neurons to the muscle to tell it to contract, thus restoring muscle tension to normal. Similar receptors are found in ligaments and tendons. Together they provide the body's innate sense of its own position and posture, called proprioception.

Contracted triceps muscle

MUSCLE AND TENDON DISORDERS

MUSCLES AND TENDONS MAY BE DAMAGED AS A RESULT OF PHYSICAL EXERTION DURING DAILY ACTIVITIES, FROM SUDDEN PULLING OR TWISTING MOVEMENTS SUCH AS THOSE OCCURRING IN SPORTS OR AN ACCIDENT, OR FROM REPETITIVE ACTIONS, FOR EXAMPLE, DUE TO EMPLOYMENT.

MUSCLE STRAINS AND TEARS

Muscle strain is the term used for a moderate amount of soft-tissue damage to muscle fibers, which is usually caused by sudden, strenuous movements. Limited bleeding inside the muscle causes tenderness and swelling, which may be accompanied by painful spasms or contractions. Visible bruising may follow. More serious damage, involving a larger number of torn or ruptured fibers, is called a muscle tear. A torn muscle produces severe pain and swelling. Following a medical check to gauge the severity of the injury, the usual treatment is rest, antiinflammatory medication, and sometimes physical therapy. Rarely, surgery may be needed if a muscle has been badly torn.

TORN HAMSTRING

The hamstring muscles (rear of the thigh) may be torn by vigorous movements, such as the rapid acceleration common in sports.

> _ Femur _ Tendon

Pelvis

Semitendinosus muscle

Biceps femoris muscle

Site of tear ____

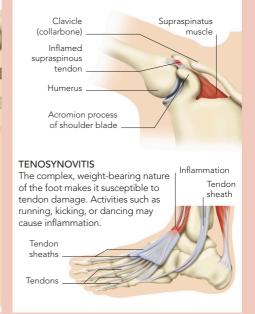
Vastus lateralis

TENDINITIS AND TENOSYNOVITIS

Tendinitis may occur when strong or repeated movement creates excessive friction between the tendon's outer surface and an adjacent bone. Tenosynovitis may be the result of overstretching or repeated movement causing inflammation of the lubricating sheaths that enclose some tendons. Both of these problems can occur together and may be part of the group of disorders known collectively as repetitive strain injuries (RSIs).

TENDINITIS

Repeated arm-lifting, such as in racquet sports, may force the supraspinous tendon to rub against the shoulder blade's acromion process, causing tendinitis.



RUPTURED TENDON

Playing sports and lifting heavy weights may result in torn, or ruptured, tendons. Examples are tearing of the tendons attached to the biceps brachii muscle in the upper arm, or of the quadriceps tendon at the front of the thigh that stretches over the knee. A sudden impact that bends a fingertip toward the palm may snap the extensor tendon on the back of the finger. In severe cases, the tendon may be torn away from the bone. Symptoms include a snapping sensation, pain, swelling, and impaired movement.

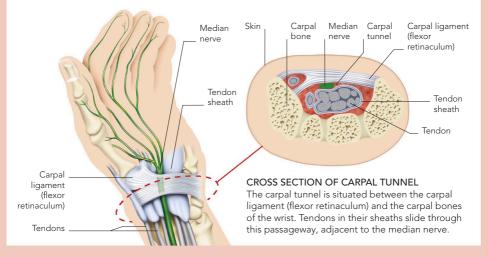
TORN ACHILLES TENDON

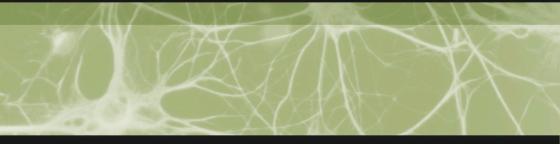
The Achilles tendon attaches the calf muscle to the heel bone. It can snap after sudden exertion and may need to be treated by surgery and immobilization in a cast.



CARPAL TUNNEL SYNDROME

The carpal tunnel is a narrow passage formed by the carpal ligament (flexor retinaculum), on the inside of the wrist, and the underlying wrist bones (carpals). Tendons run through the tunnel from the forearm muscles to the hand. The median nerve also passes through the carpal tunnel, to control hand muscles and convey sensations from the fingers. In carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS), the median nerve is compressed by swelling of the tissues around it in the tunnel. Causes include diabetes mellitus, pregnancy, a wrist injury, rheumatoid arthritis, and repetitive movements.





IN SOME WAYS, THE HUMAN BRAIN RESEMBLES A COMPUTER. HOWEVER, IN ADDITION TO LOGICAL PROCESSING, IT IS CAPABLE OF COMPLEX DEVELOPMENT, LEARNING, SELF-AWARENESS, EMOTION, AND CREATIVITY. EVERY SECOND, MILLIONS OF CHEMICAL AND ELECTRICAL SIGNALS TRAVEL AROUND THE BRAIN AND THE BODY'S INTRICATE NERVE NETWORK. NERVOUS TISSUE IS DELICATE AND NEEDS PHYSICAL PROTECTION AND A RELIABLE BLOOD SUPPLY. IF NERVES ARE DAMAGED, REPAIR MAY BE SLOW OR IMPOSSIBLE.

NERVOUS SYSTEM



NERVOUS SYSTEM

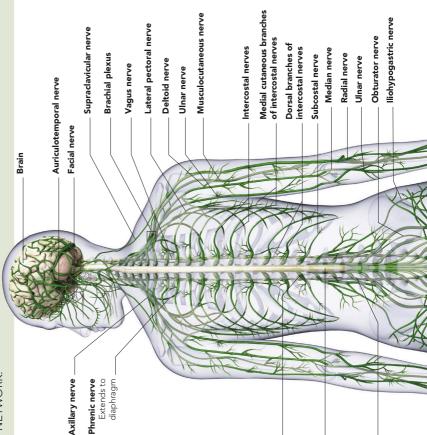
CONSTANTLY ALIVE WITH ELECTRICITY, THE EXTENSIVE AND COMPLEX NERVOUS SYSTEM IS THE BODY'S PRIME COMMUNICATION AND COORDINATION NETWORK.

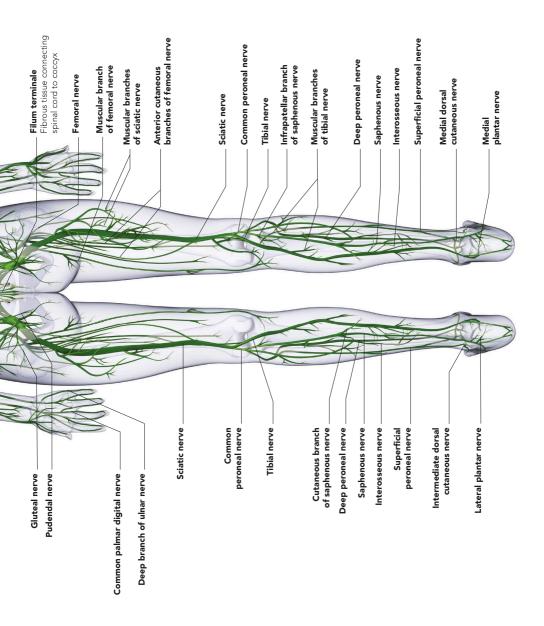
PNS, comprises 12 pairs of nerves from CNS, is made up of the brain and spinal cord. The peripheral nervous system, or These branching nerves go to each part coordination and decision-making. The PNS. Its work is primarily "automatic" of the body, relaying information to and from the CNS, which has the roles of control, of which we are rarely aware. parts. The central nervous system, or has nerve pathways in the CNS and The body's nervous system has three the brain and 31 pairs from the cord. autonomic nervous system, or ANS, it deals with activities such as heart rate adjustment and blood pressure

Spinal ganglion One of many nodules that send sensory information to brain via spinal cord Spinal cord

Part of central nervous system, extends from brain down the back, protected by vertebral column Sympathetic ganglia chain – Part of sympathetic nervous system, also called paravertebral ganglia; conveys stress signals to

vboo





NERVES AND NEURONS

NERVE CELLS, OR NEURONS, ARE HIGHLY SPECIALIZED IN THEIR STRUCTURE, FUNCTION, AND COMMUNICATION LINKS.

NEURON STRUCTURE

Like all other cells, a typical neuron has a main cell body with a nucleus. But a neuron also has long, wirelike processes that connect the neuron to others, allowing messages to be passed at junctions called synapses. These processes are of two main kinds. Dendrites receive messages from other neurons, or from nervelike cells in sense organs, and conduct them toward the cell body of the neuron. The axon conveys messages away from the cell body, to other neurons or to muscle or gland cells. Dendrites tend to be short and have many branches, while axons are usually longer and branch less along their length. Neurons in the brain and spinal cord are protected and nurtured by supporting nerve cells known as glial cells.



Schwann cell Produces myelin

> Schwann cell nucleus

Dendrite . process Receives messages from other neurons

Axon process Transmits messages from the nerve cell body to other tissues



MICROSCOPE VIEW Nerve cells under the microscope display their cell bodies with nuclei (left) and processes (right).

> Mitochondrion Involved in cell respiration and production of energy

Nucleus Located toward the middle of the cell body

Cell body

Node of Ranvier Gap between segments of myelin sheath on an axon

Myelin sheath

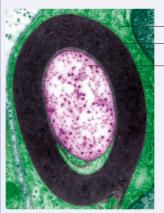
Series of fatty wrappings along an axon; insulates axons to prevent short-circuiting and speeds up the transmission of nerve impulses

NEURONAL NETWORK

The snaking dendrites and axons of a neural net, which are reaching out to communicate, are clearly visible in this image. These neurons are of the multipolar type, which are found especially in the cortex of the brain. A single neuron can correspond via its processes with tens of thousands of others.

MYELINATED NERVES

The axons of most nerve fibers are wrapped in thin layers of a white, fatty substance called myelin. These create a sheath of insulation that allows nerve impulses to be conducted quickly along the length of the nerve fiber.



_ Schwann cell _ Myelin layer

__ Axon

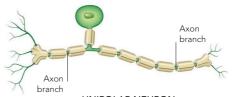
SCHWANN CELL

The myelin sheath that insulates a nerve fiber in the peripheral nervous system is produced by a Schwann cell, which is wrapped spirally around the body of the axon.

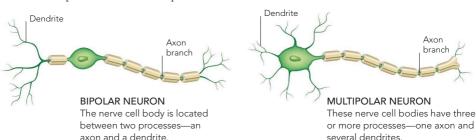
Synaptic knob End of an axon fiber

TYPES OF NEURON

Neuron cell bodies vary greatly in size and shape, as do the type, number, and length of their projections. Neurons can be unipolar, bipolar, or multipolar. Unipolar neurons are found mainly in the sensory nerves of the PNS. Bipolar neurons exist mostly in the embryo, but adults have some in the retina of the eye and the olfactory nerve in the nose. Most neurons in the brain and spinal cord are multipolar.



UNIPOLAR NEURON A single short process, an axon, extends from the nerve cell body and splits into two.



NERVES

Nerves, which resemble ropelike cords, pass between and branch into the body's organs and tissues. They are composed of bundles of communication strands—the elongated axons or nerve fibers of neurons. Each bundle is known as a fascicle. Most nerves carry two types of fiber. Sensory, or afferent, fibers bring messages from receptors in the sense organs and other structures to the spinal cord and brain. Motor, or efferent, fibers convey signals from the brain or spinal cord to a muscle or gland. Some nerves contain just sensory fibers, such as the optic nerve, while others have solely motor fibers.

INSIDE A NERVE

Nerve fascicle

of nerve fibers

A bundle or aroup

Bundles of nerve fibers are embedded within tough connective tissue to protect them from damage.

Perineurium

for a fascicle

Sheathlike

wrapping

A fiber or axon may end some

Myelin sheath

distance from its cell body

Epineurium Strong, protective outer covering for the whole nerve

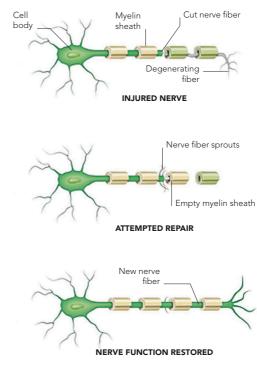
Blood vessels

NERVE REGENERATION

Peripheral nerve fibers that have been crushed or partly cut may slowly regenerate if the cell body is undamaged. The damaged section of fiber degenerates, leaving the myelin sheath hollow. The healthy remaining fiber begins to grow along the empty sheath at a rate of 1/25-2/25 in (1-2 mm) daily. Natural regeneration is much less likely in the nerve fibers of the brain and spinal cord, where the neurons are so specialized that generally they cannot replicate themselves or recreate their highly developed connections.

REGROWTH

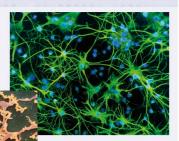
The stump end of a damaged nerve fiber sends out several sproutlike growths. One of these finds the empty but intact myelin sheath and grows inside it.



SUPPORT CELLS

Supporting nerve cells, known as glial cells or neuroglia, protect and nourish the neurons. There are several types of glial cell. The smallest are microglia, which destroy microorganisms, foreign particles, and cell debris from disintegrating neurons. Ependymal cells line cavities that are filled with cerebrospinal fluid, which surrounds both the brain and spinal cord (see p.89). Other glial cells insulate the axons and dendrites or regulate the flow of cerebrospinal fluid.

ASTROCYTE Named for their starlike appearance, they provide support and nutrition.



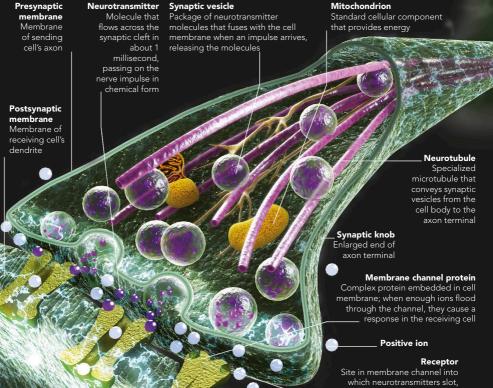
OLIGODENDROCYTE These cells provide a support framework, and produce and nourish myelin sheath segments for certain axons.

NERVE IMPULSE

WHEN NERVE CELLS, OR NEURONS, ARE STIMULATED THEY UNDERGO CHEMICAL CHANGES THAT PRODUCE TINY WAVES OF ELECTRICITY—NERVE IMPULSES.

Information is conveyed throughout the nervous system as nerve impulses, or action potentials. Impulses are about 0.1 volts (100 millivolts) in strength and last just $\frac{1}{1000}$ s (1 millisecond). The information carried depends on the location of the impulses in the nervous system, and on their frequency—from one impulse every few seconds to several hundreds per second.

When impulses reach a junction known as a synapse, they trigger the release of chemicals called neurotransmitters. Molecules of the neurotransmitter cross the synapse and stimulate the receiving neuron to fire an impulse of its own, as wavelike movements of ions (electrically charged particles). Neurotransmitters may also actively inhibit a receiving neuron from firing.



_ letting in charged ions

Dendrites

Projections of neuron; collect nerve impulses from other neurons or sensory nerve endings

Neuron cell body

Main part of the neuron, containing the nucleus and cell components

/ Axon

Main nerve fiber of the neuron, conveying impulses away from the cell body

Neurofibral node

Also called node of Ranvier; portion of axon not covered by myelin

Myelin sheath

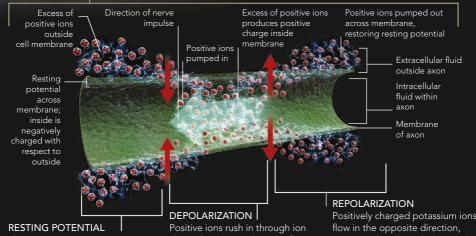
Also called neurilemma or Schwann sheath; spiraling structure of fatty myelin that helps speed an impulse and prevent it from fading or leaking

Schwann cell

Sheetlike cell that grows around a portion of axon (fiber) to form the myelin sheath

IMPULSE MOVEMENT WITHIN A NERVE CELL

A nerve impulse is based chiefly on movement of positively charged sodium and potassium ions through the neuron's cell membrane. Impulses travel at speeds of between 3–400 ft/s (1–120 m/s), depending on the type of nerve. Movement is faster in myelin-coated axons.



There are more positive ions outside the cell and more negative ions inside, producing a "resting potential" of -70 millivolts. Positive ions rush in through ion channels. The membrane is first depolarized, then its polarity is reversed, resulting in an "action potential" of +30 millivolts inside. Positively charged potassium ions flow in the opposite direction, restoring the charge balance. This stimulates an adjacent area of membrane, and the next, and the impulse moves along like a wave.

BRAIN

THE BRAIN, TOGETHER WITH THE SPINAL CORD, REGULATES NONCONSCIOUS PROCESSES AND COORDINATES MOST VOLUNTARY MOVEMENT. IT IS THE SITE OF CONSCIOUSNESS, ALLOWING HUMANS TO THINK AND LEARN.

BRAIN STRUCTURE

The largest part of the brain is the cerebrum, which has a heavily folded surface—the pattern of which is unique in each person. The grooves are called sulci when shallow and fissures when deep. Fissures and some of the large sulci outline four functional areas, called lobes: frontal, parietal, occipital, and temporal (see p.90). A ridge on the surface of the brain is called a gyrus. The center of the brain contains the thalamus, which acts as the brain's information relay station. Surrounding this is a group of structures known as the limbic system (see p.94), which is involved in survival instincts, behavior, and emotions. Closely linked with the limbic system is the hypothalamus (see p.95, which receives sensory information.



CEREBELLUM The cerebellum (section shown above) contains billions of neurons that link up with other regions of the brain and spinal cord to facilitate precise movement.

BLOOD SUPPLY TO THE BRAIN

The brain forms 2 percent of the body's weight but needs 20 percent of its blood. Without oxygen and glucose, brain function quickly deteriorates, leading to dizziness and loss of consciousness. Within only four to eight minutes of oxygen deprivation, brain

CIRCLE OF WILLIS

A ring of arteries, the Circle of Willis, encircles the base of the brain and provides multiple pathways to supply oxygenated blood to all parts of the brain. If a pathway becomes blocked, blood can be redirected from another pathway.



damage or death results. The brain has an abundant supply of blood from a vast network of blood vessels that stem from the carotid arteries, which run up each side of the neck, and from two vertebral arteries that run alongside the spinal cord.

BLOOD SUPPLY The brain has an extensive blood supply from two front and two rear arteries, as illustrated in this colored, three-dimensional magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) scan. The blood vessels are colored red; here, they are seen supplying oxygenated blood to various parts of the brain, which is shown as the blue area.

INNER STRUCTURES

A section down the middle of the brain reveals its inner structures. Although these structures look very different in the diagram below, they are all made up of brain tissue, which is composed of billions of neurons. There are two types of brain tissue—qray matter and white matter.

Cerebrum

Largest part of brain, with connections to all parts of the body

Hypothalamus

Functions include regulating body temperature and controlling autonomic nervous system

Meninges

Three membranes that surround and protect the brain and spinal cord; made of connective tissue

Corpus callosum

Largest of several bundles of nerve fibers that connect the two brain hemispheres

Pituitary gland

Known as the "master gland"; controls many other glands

Thalamus

Area that relays nerve signals to cerebral cortex

Brainstem

Regulates vital functions such as heartbeat and respiration

Cerebellum

Second largest part of the brain; responsible for balance and posture; situated behind brainstem BRAIN

PROTECTION

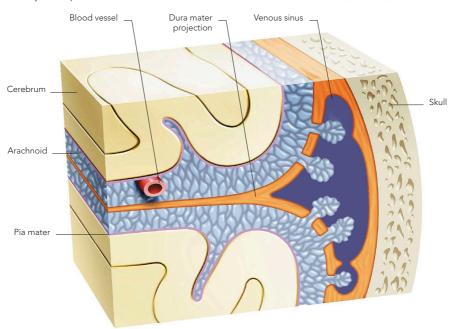
The brain has several forms of protection. First and foremost is the skull (see p.48). Between the skull and the gray matter of the cerebrum lie three protective membranes that also protect the spinal cord (see p.98). The dura mater lines the inside of the skull, where it is attached to the bones; it is a thick, inelastic layer that provides support and protection. The arachnoid membrane lies beneath the dura, and was named for its resemblance to a spider's web. The pia mater adheres to the convolutions of the cerebrum, and supplies brain tissue with blood vessels. Protection also comes from the cerebrospinal fluid (see opposite) in the subarachnoid space, between the arachnoid membrane and the pia mater. It absorbs and disperses excessive mechanical forces that might otherwise cause serious injury. Analyses of its chemical constituents and flow pressure have offered vital clues for diagnosing diseases and disorders of the brain and spinal cord, such as meningitis.

Skull

Brain

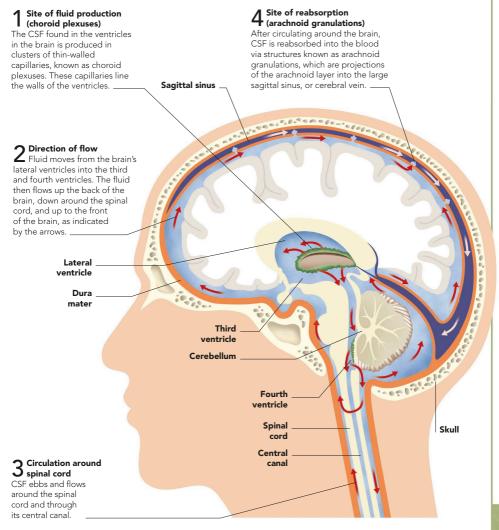
MENINGES OF THE BRAIN

A section through the skull and brain reveals the three meninges. The dura mater lines the skull and sends four projections inward to give support. The arachnoid membrane cushions the brain, and the pia mater closely envelops the cerebrum.



CEREBROSPINAL FLUID FLOW

The tissue of the brain floats in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) within the skull. CSF is a clear liquid, which is renewed four to five times a day. CSF protects and nourishes the brain and spinal cord as it flows around them. It contains proteins and glucose that provide energy for brain cell function, as well as lymphocytes that guard against infection. CSF is produced by the choroid plexuses in the lateral ventricles, and drains into the third ventricle. It then flows into the fourth ventricle, which is located in front of the cerebellum. Circulation of the fluid is aided by pulsations of the cerebral arteries.



BRAIN STRUCTURES

THE BRAIN HAS FOUR MAIN STRUCTURES: THE LARGE, DOMED CEREBRUM; THE INNER, DEEPER DIENCEPHALON (CONSISTING OF THE THALAMUS AND NEARBY STRUCTURES); THE CEREBELLUM, TO THE LOWER REAR; AND THE BRAINSTEM, AT THE BASE.

EXTERNAL BRAIN FEATURES

The cerebrum makes up more than fourfifths of the brain's tissue. Its heavily folded surface forms the lobes of the cerebral cortex. The cerebrum partly envelops the thalamus and nearby structures, and also the brainstem. The smaller cerebellum forms about one-tenth of the brain's volume; it is mainly concerned with organizing motor information sent to muscles so that body movements are smooth and coordinated.

Lateral sulcus __ Groove running along upper part of temporal lobe Frontal lobe Controls movement, speech,

Controls movement, speech, and aspects of "personality"

Parietal lobe

Area where pain, pressure, temperature, and touch are perceived and interpreted

Postcentral gyrus

This ridge, or bulge, is a key anatomical landmark that lies just behind the midpoint from front to rear

Parietal occipital fissure

Fissure (deep groove) that demarcates border between parietal and occipital lobes

Occipital lobe

This area is mainly concerned with analyzing and interpreting visual information, from sensory nerve signals sent by the eyes

Inferior temporal sulcus

Lower of two main sulci (shallow grooves) that divide gyri (bulges) of temporal lobe

Cerebellum

This "little brain" is involved with timing and accuracy of skilled movements, and controls balance and posture

Superior temporal sulcus Upper of two main sulci

(shallow grooves) that divide chief gyri (bulges) of temporal lobe

Temporal lobe

Governs recognition of sounds, and their tones and loudness; plays a role in memory storage

LOBES OF THE BRAIN

Traditionally, four major lobes are identified on the cerebral surface. The names of some of the lobes parallel the names of the skull bones that overlie them (see p.48).

Pons

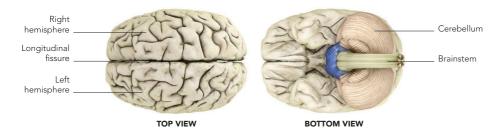
Upper portion of brainstem

Brainstem

Lowest, mainly "automatic" region of brain (see p.93)

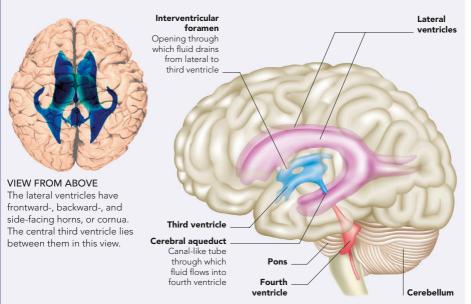
OUTER BRAIN STRUCTURES

The cerebrum is partly separated into two halves (cerebral hemispheres) by the deep longitudinal fissure. The cerebellum is the smaller bulbous structure beneath, responsible for muscle control. Below the cerebellum is the brainstem, which controls basic life processes.



THE HOLLOW BRAIN

The brain is, in a sense, hollow: it contains four chambers known as ventricles, which are filled with cerebrospinal fluid, or CSF (see p.89). There are two lateral ventricles, one in each hemisphere, and the CSF fluid is produced here. It then drains via the interventricular foramen into the third ventricle, which is situated close to the thalamus and occupies a more central position. From here it flows through the cerebral aqueduct and into the fourth ventricle, which extends down between the pons and cerebellum into the medulla. The total volume of CSF in the ventricles is about $^{\circ}/_{10}$ fl oz (25 ml). Circulation is aided by head movements and pulsations of the cerebral arteries.



GRAY AND WHITE MATTER

Most of the cerebrum has two main layers. The outer layer, often known as "gray matter," is the cerebral cortex. It follows the folds and bulges of the cerebrum to cover its entire surface. Its average thickness is 1/10-2/10 in (3–5 mm), and, spread out flat, it would cover about the same area as a

standard pillowcase. Deeper within the cerebrum are small islands of gray matter. These, and the cerebral cortex, are composed chiefly of the cell bodies and projections (dendrites) of neurons. The paler "white matter," forming the bulk of the cerebrum's interior, is composed mainly of nerve fibers.

CORONAL SECTION

A vertical "slice" through the middle of the brain reveals the paired structures, outer gray layer and inner white matter. The corpus callosum contains more than 100 million nerve fibers, and is the main "bridge" between the two hemispheres.



Corpus callosum

Largest of several bundles of nerve fibers, called commissures, which connect specific areas of the two halves, or cerebral hemispheres, of the upper brain Gray matter Outermost layer of cerebral cortex; contains an estimated 50 billion neurons and perhaps 10 times as many supporting cells

White matter interior

Here, axons, or fibers, of neurons run up from lower areas and project down from neuron cell bodies of cortex

Basal ganglia "Islands" of gray matter deep in cerebrum

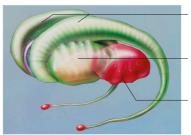
Motor nerve tracts

Large bundles of nerve fibers carry instructions for movements down to the spinal cord; they cross over in lower brainstem

BASAL GANGLIA

These structures include the lentiform nucleus (putamen and globus pallidus), caudate nucleus, subthalamic nucleus, and substantia nigra (the latter two not seen in this view). They are a complex interface between sensory inputs and motor skills, especially for semiautomatic movements, such as walking.

Brainstem



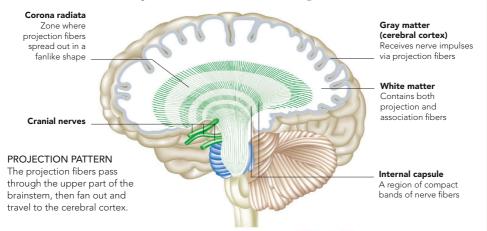
Caudate nucleus

Lentiform nucleus

Thalamus

VERTICAL LINKS

Sheathed (myelinated) nerve fibers are organized into bundles called projection tracts. These nerve fibers transmit impulses between the spinal cord and lower brain areas and the cerebral cortex above. The nerve tracts pass through a communication link called the internal capsule, and also intersect the corpus callosum. In addition, similar bundles pass through the upper, outer zones of the white matter, from one area of the cerebral cortex to another. These bundles, called association tracts, convey nerve signals directly between different regions or centers of the cortex.

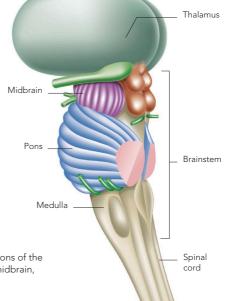


THE THALAMUS AND BRAINSTEM

The thalamus sits on top of the brainstem, and is shaped like two eggs placed side by side. It lies almost at the "heart" of the brain, and acts as a major relay station that monitors and processes incoming information before this is sent to the upper regions of the brain. The brainstem contains centers that regulate several functions vital for survival: these functions include the heartbeat, respiration, blood pressure, and some reflex actions, such as swallowing and vomiting.

BRAINSTEM

The three main regions of the brainstem are the midbrain, pons, and medulla.



THE PRIMITIVE BRAIN

IN TIMES OF STRESS OR CRISIS. DEEP-SEATED INSTINCTS WELL UP FROM WITHIN US AND TAKE OVER OUR AWARENESS. SUCH EVENTS INVOLVE THE "PRIMITIVE BRAIN," WHICH IS BASED MAINLY IN A SERIES OF PARTS KNOWN AS THE LIMBIC SYSTEM.

THE LIMBIC SYSTEM

The limbic system influences subconscious, based in upper regions of the brain. instinctive behavior, similar to animal responses that relate to reproduction and survival. In humans, many of these innate, "primitive" behaviors are modified by conscious, thoughtful considerations

However, when primal urges prevail, the limbic system and its associated structures take over. At other times they play lesser, but still complex and important, roles in the expression of instincts, drives, and emotions.

LIMBIC STRUCTURES

The ring-shaped limbic system is located in the lower center of the brain, between the cortical "thinking" areas and the lowest parts, which control automatic functions.

Column of fornix

Cingulate gyrus Part of the limbic cortex that modifies behavior

Fornix

Pathway of nerve fibers that transmits information from hippocampus and other limbic areas to the mammillary bodies

Mammillary body

Relay station for information between fornix and thalamus; helps process memories

Pituitary gland

Olfactory bulbs

The brain's "smell processors"; they are "hard-wired" into the limbic system, which helps explain why the sense of smell can evoke such strona memories and emotional responses

Pons Part of the brainstem; not part of the limbic system

Midbrain

Topmost part of brainstem: limbic areas here link to the cortex and thalamus. and to clusters of nerve cell bodies known as basal ganglia

Hippocampus

Involved with learning. recognizing new experiences, and short-term memory

Amygdala

Involved in emotions such as anger, and drives such as thirst, hunger, and sexual desire

Parahippocampal gyrus

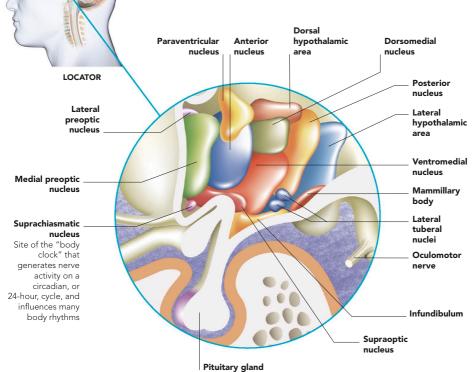
Modifies expression of forceful emotions; forms and recalls memories of scenes and views

THE HYPOTHALAMUS

The hypothalamus, which literally means "below the thalamus," is about the size of a sugar cube and contains numerous tiny clusters of neurons called nuclei. It forms an important part of the relationship between the brain and the body, and is usually regarded as the vital integrating center of the limbic system. A stalk below links it to the pituitary gland (see p.134), which helps regulate the activity of the endocrine system, including the thyroid and adrenal glands. The hypothalamus also has complex associations with the rest of the limbic system around it, and with the autonomic parts of the general nervous system. Functions of the hypothalamus include monitoring and regulating vital internal conditions such as nutrient levels, body temperature, water—salt balance, blood flow, the sleep—wake cycle, and the levels of hormones such as sex hormones. The hypothalamus also initiates feelings, actions, and emotions such as hunger, thirst, rage, and terror.

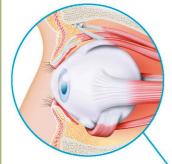
HYPOTHALAMIC NUCLEI

The roles played by all the nuclei in the hypothalamus are not fully known. However, some roles have been identified. For example, the ventromedial nucleus is responsible for feelings of fullness after eating. Damage to this area causes overeating.



THE RETICULAR FORMATION

The reticular formation is a structure containing various clusters of neurons (nuclei) together with a series of long, slim nerve tracts that are located in much of the length of the brainstem (see p.93). Its fibers extend to the cerebellum behind, the diencephalon above, and the spinal cord below. The reticular formation comprises several distinct neural systems, each with its own neurotransmitter (the chemical that passes on nerve signals at the tiny junctions, or synapses, between neurons). One of the reticular formation's many functions is to operate an arousal system, known as the reticular activating system (RAS), that keeps the brain awake and alert. The reticular formation also includes the cardioregulatory and respiratory centers that control heart rate and breathing, and other essential centers.



VISUAL IMPULSES Sensory input to the RAS travels along the optic nerves from the eyes, alerting the brain to possible danger. Radiating signals The RAS sends activating signals up through the midbrain to regions of the cerebral cortex, while other nerve fibers return feedback

Activating signals Nerve signals arrive at the cerebral cortex to maintain the state of wakeful readiness so that the mind remains conscious and alert

Cerebral cortex

Diencephalon Contains thalamus, hypothalamus, and epithalamus

Reticular formation Medulla Excitatory area

Impulses from spinal cord

THE RETICULAR ACTIVATING SYSTEM

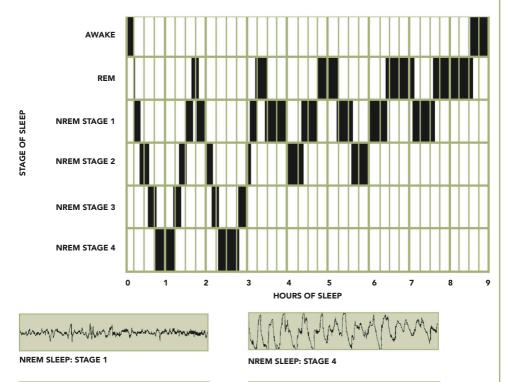
Long, slender pathways of nerve fibers in the reticular formation, which is located within the brainstem, detect incoming sensory information from many sources. They send activating signals to the higher centers of the brain.

AUDITORY IMPULSES

The RAS filters out insignificant sensory information, such as background noise, and reacts if there is a change in input.

SLEEP CYCLES

During sleep, much of the body rests, but not the brain. Its billions of neurons continue to send signals, as shown by EEG traces. Sleep occurs in cycles, which are made up of lengthening phases of REM (rapid eye movement) sleep, when most dreaming occurs, and four stages of NREM (nonrapid eye movement sleep), which is mostly dreamless. In stage 1, sleep is light: people wake relatively easily, and brain waves are active. In stage 2, brain waves begin to slow down. In stage 3, fast and slow waves are interspersed. In stage 4, the deepest stage, there are slow waves only.





NREM SLEEP: STAGE 2

NREM SLEEP: STAGE 3

SLEEP STAGES

EEG traces show different waveforms of brain activity for each sleep stage. As the body reaches the deeper stages, body temperature, heart rate, breathing rate, and blood pressure all reduce. During REM sleep, these functions increase slightly and most dreaming occurs.

SPINAL CORD

THE NERVE FIBERS OF THE SPINAL CORD LINK THE BRAIN WITH THE TORSO, ARMS, AND LEGS. THE CORD IS MORE THAN A PASSIVE CONDUIT FOR NERVE SIGNALS. WHEN NECESSARY, IT CAN BYPASS THE BRAIN: FOR EXAMPLE, IN REFLEX ACTIONS.

SPINAL CORD ANATOMY

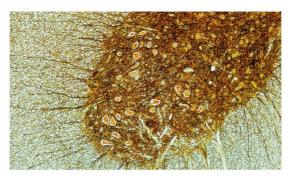
The spinal cord is a bundle of nerve fibers (axons) about 16-18 in (40-45 cm) long. It is only slightly wider than a pencil for most of its length, tapering to a threadlike tail at the lower (lumbosacral) part of the spine. Branching out from the cord are 31 pairs

of spinal nerves, which carry sensory information to the cord about conditions within the body and transmit the sense of touch from the skin. They also convey motor information to muscles throughout the body and to glands within the chest and abdomen.

Nerve fiber tract SPINAL CORD Bundle of nerve fibers The cord has a butterfly-shaped core of gray (axons) that carries signals matter, made up of nerve cell bodies and to and from spinal cord and unmyelinated fibers. An outer layer of white specific areas of brain matter is made up mainly of myelinated fibers. Central canal Cerebrospinal fluid White matter Sensory nerve Gray matter rootlets (dorsal) fills the narrow central canal Bundles of fibers that enter the Spinal nerve spinal cord at Sensory and motor rear (dorsal side) nerve rootlets merge to form spinal nerve Sensory Motor nerve root ganglion rootlets (ventral) Bundles of fibers Cluster of nerve cell that emerge from the bodies on a front (ventral side) of spinal cord spinal nerve Pia mater Anterior fissure Deep groove along Arachnoid front of spinal cord Dura mater Subarachnoid space Meninges Three layers that protect

FRONT OF BODY

spinal cord

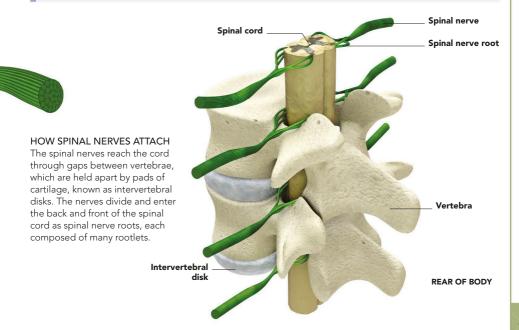


SPINAL GRAY MATTER

This microscopic view of a cross section through the spinal cord shows a brownstained "wing" of the butterfly-shaped gray matter, which lies at the cord's center.

NERVE CROSSOVER

Bundles of nerve fibers (axons) in the left and right sides of the spinal cord do not all pass straight up into the left and right sides of the brain. In the uppermost portion of the spinal cord and the lower brainstem (the part called the medulla; see p.93), many of the fibers cross over, or decussate, to the other side—left to right, and right to left. This means that nerve signals about, for example, touch sensations on the left side of the body reach the touch center (somatosensory cortex) on the right side of the brain. Likewise, motor signals from the right motor cortex in the brain and the right side of the cerebellum travel to the muscles on the left side of the body. Different major bundles, or tracts, of fibers decussate at slightly different levels. About one-tenth of those that cross over do so in the upper spinal cord, and the remainder cross over in the medulla.

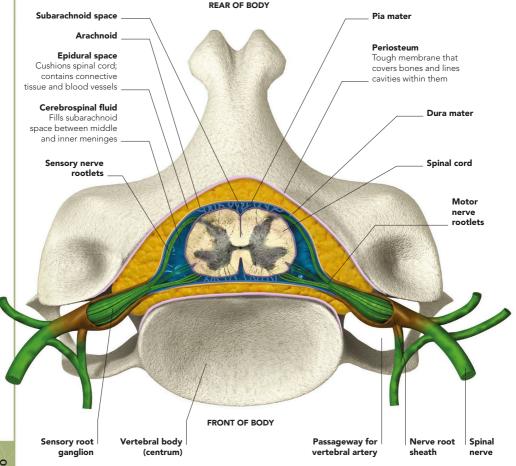


PROTECTION OF THE SPINAL CORD

The spinal cord is located inside the spinal canal, which is a long tunnel within the aligned column of backbones (vertebrae). This vertebral column, along with its strengthening ligaments and muscles, bends and flexes the cord, but also guards it from direct knocks and blows. Within the spinal canal, the circulating cerebrospinal fluid (see p.89) acts as a shock-absorber and the epidural space provides a cushioning layer of fat and connective tissue. The epidural tissues lie between the periosteum (the membrane that lines the bone of the spinal canal) and the dura mater, the outer layer of the meninges.

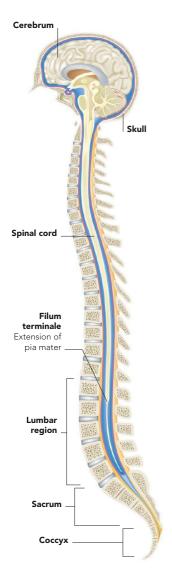
INSIDE THE SPINAL CANAL

A cross section of the vertebral column in the neck (cervical) region shows how the spinal cord nestles in the well-padded bony cavity. Although the vertebrae shift position as the trunk of the body moves, the spinal cord remains well supported and protected.



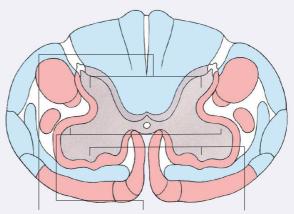
EXTENT OF THE SPINAL CORD

While the body is growing, the spinal cord does not continue to lengthen the way that the spinal bones do. By adulthood, it extends from the brain down to the first lumbar vertebra (L1) in the lower back. Here, the cord forms a cone-shaped ending that tapers to a slender, tail-like filament, known as the filum terminale. This extends down through the lumbar and sacral vertebrae to the coccyx.



NERVE TRACTS OF SPINAL CORD

In the white matter of the spinal cord, nerve fibers are grouped into main bundles, or tracts, according to the direction of the nerve signals that they carry and the type of signals they transmit and respond to, such as pain sensations or temperature. Some tracts connect and relay impulses between a few local pairs of spinal nerves, without sending fibers up to the brain. The central gray matter of the cord is organized into horns, or columns.



Dorsal (back) horns Neurons here receive sensory information about touch, balance, muscle activity, and temperature Lateral (side) horns Neurons here monitor and regulate internal organs, such as the heart, lungs, stomach, and intestines Ventral (front) horns Neurons here send signals along motor fibers to skeletal muscles, causing them to contract and move

ASCENDING TRACTS

These ascending tracts are bundles of nerve fibers that relay impulses about body sensations, and inner sensors such as pain, up the spinal cord to the brain.

DESCENDING TRACTS

These descending tracts convey motor signals from the brain to the skeletal muscles of the torso and limbs in order to bring about voluntary movements.

PERIPHERAL NERVES

THE BODY'S NETWORK OF PERIPHERAL NERVES COMMUNICATES WITH THE BRAIN AND SPINAL CORD. SENSORY FIBERS CARRY MESSAGES FROM SENSE AND INTERNAL ORGANS, WHILE MOTOR FIBERS CONTROL MUSCLE AND GLAND ACTIVITY.

CRANIAL NERVES

The 12 pairs of cranial nerves connect to the brain directly, not via the spinal cord. Some perform sensory functions for organs and tissues in the head and neck, while others have motor functions. The nerves with predominantly motor fibers also contain some sensory fibers that convey information to the brain about the amount of stretch and tension in the muscles they serve, as part of the proprioceptive sense (see p.73). Most of the cranial nerves are named according to the body parts they serve, such as the optic nerves (eyes). By convention, the nerves are also identified by Roman numerals, so the trigeminal nerve, for example, is cranial V (five).

Olfactory nerve (I, sensory)

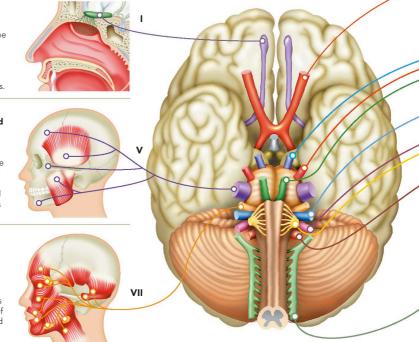
Relays information about smells from the olfactory epithelium inside the nose, via the olfactory bulbs and tracts, to the brain's limbic centers.

Trigeminal nerve (V, two sensory and one mixed branch)

Ophthalmic and maxillary branches send signals from the eye, face, and teeth; mandibular fibers control chewing and send sensory signals from the lower jaw.

Facial nerve (VII, mixed)

Sensory branches come from the taste buds of the front two-thirds of the tongue; motor fibers run to the muscles of facial expression and to the salivary and lacrimal glands.



VIEW FROM BELOW

In this view of the underside of the brain, the pairs of cranial nerves are revealed as joining mainly to the lower regions of the brain. Some of these cranial nerves have a sensory function, taking impulses to the brain. Others have a motor function, carrying nerve signals from the brain to various muscles and glands. Some cranial nerves are mixed, with both sensory and motor nerve fibers.

PERIPHERAL NERVES

Optic nerve (II, sensory)

н

The optic nerve sends visual messages from the rod and cone cells in the retina of the eye to the visual cortex in the brain; parts of the two nerves cross at the optic chiasm (see p.122), where they form bands of nerve fibers, called optic tracts. Each nerve consists of a bundle of about one million sensory fibers—it carries the most information of any cranial nerve.

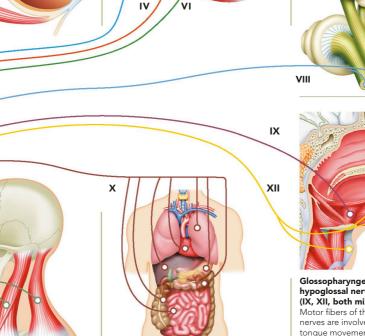
Oculomotor, trochlear, and abducens nerves (III, IV, VI, mainly motor)

These three nerves regulate the voluntary movements of the eye muscles, to move the eyeball and eyelids; the oculomotor also controls pupil constriction by the iris muscles and focusing changes in the lens by the ciliary muscles.

ш

Vestibulocochlear nerve (VIII, sensory)

The vestibular branch sends nerve signals from the inner ear about head orientation and balance; the cochlear branch brings signals from the ear concerning sound and hearing.



Spinal accessory nerve (XI, mainly motor)

XI

This nerve controls muscles and movements in the head, neck, and shoulders. It also stimulates the muscles of the pharynx and larynx, which are involved in swallowing.

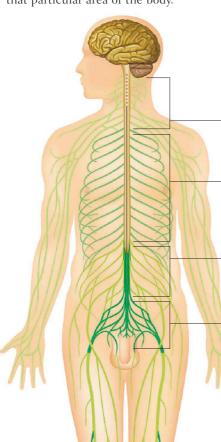
Vagus nerve (X, mixed)

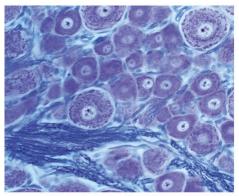
The longest and most branched cranial nerve, the vagus has sensory, motor, and autonomic fibers that pass to the lower head, throat, neck, chest, and abdomen; they are involved in many vital body functions, including swallowing, breathing, and heartbeat. Glossopharyngeal and hypoglossal nerves (IX, XII, both mixed) Motor fibers of these nerves are involved in tongue movement and swallowing, while sensory fibers relay information about taste, touch, and temperature from the

tongue and pharynx.

SPINAL NERVES

The 31 pairs of peripheral spinal nerves emerge from the spinal cord through spaces between the vertebrae (see p.99). Each nerve divides and subdivides into a number of branches; the dorsal branches serve the rear portion of the body, while the ventral branches serve the front and sides. The branches of one spinal nerve may join with other nerves to form meshes called plexuses, where nerves merge and intersect. Nerves leaving each plexus then go on to carry signals to and from that particular area of the body.





SPINAL NERVE GANGLION

This microscope image shows a section through a cluster of spinal nerve cells (ganglia), where nerve impulses are coordinated. Each neuron (purple) is surrounded by support cells (light blue).

Cervical region (C1–C8)

Eight pairs of cervical spinal nerves form two networks, the cervical (C1-C4) and brachial plexuses (C5-C8/T1). These run to the chest, head, neck, shoulders, arms, and hands, and to the diaphragm.

Thoracic region (T1–T12)

Apart from \overline{T} 1, which is considered part of the brachial plexus, thoracic spinal nerves are connected to the intercostal muscles between the ribs, the deep back muscles, and the abdominal muscles.

Lumbar region (L1–L5)

Four of the five pairs of lumbar spinal nerves (L1–L4) form the lumbar plexus, which supplies the lower abdominal wall and parts of the thighs and legs. L4 and L5 interconnect with the first four sacral nerves (S1–S4).

Sacral region (S1-S5)

Two nerve networks, the sacral plexus (L5–S3) and the coccygeal plexus (S4/S5/Co 1), send branches to the thighs, buttocks, muscles and skin of the legs and feet, and anal and genital areas.

SPINAL REGIONS

The organization and naming of the four main spinal nerve regions reflect the regions of the spine itself—cervical or neck, thoracic or chest, lumbar or lower back, and sacral or base of spine.

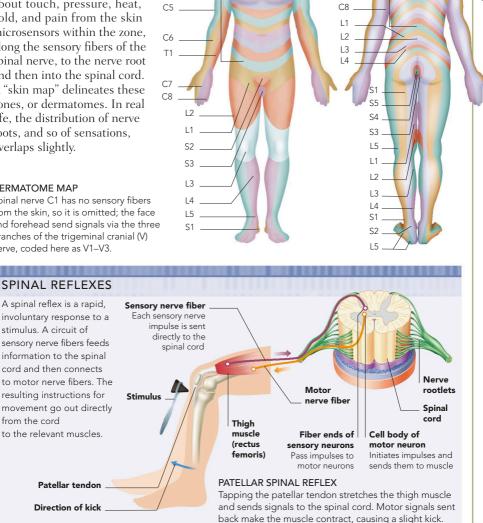
DERMATOMES

A dermatome is a region or zone of skin supplied by the dorsal (rear, sensory) nerve roots of one pair of spinal nerves. The nerve branches carry sensory information about touch, pressure, heat, cold, and pain from the skin microsensors within the zone. along the sensory fibers of the spinal nerve, to the nerve root and then into the spinal cord. A "skin map" delineates these zones, or dermatomes. In real life, the distribution of nerve roots, and so of sensations, overlaps slightly.

DERMATOME MAP

Spinal nerve C1 has no sensory fibers from the skin, so it is omitted; the face and forehead send signals via the three branches of the trigeminal cranial (V) nerve, coded here as V1–V3.

SPINAL REFLEXES



FRONT VIEW

V1

V2

V3

C2

C3

T2 to

T12

REAR VIEW

C3

C4

C5

C6

C7

T1 to T12

PERIPHERAL NERVES

C2

AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM (ANS) MAINTAINS CONSTANT CONDITIONS WITHIN THE BODY, A PROCESS KNOWN AS HOMEOSTASIS. MOST OF ITS ACTIVITY IS INDEPENDENT (AUTONOMIC) OF THE CONSCIOUS MIND.

AUTOMATIC FUNCTIONS

The ANS shares some nerve structures with the central and peripheral nervous systems. It also has chains of ganglia (clusters of nerves where axons communicate) on both sides of the spinal cord. The sensory information it collects about organs and internal activities are integrated by the hypothalamus, brainstem, or spinal cord. It sends motor signals to three main destinations: the involuntary smooth muscles of many organs and blood vessels; cardiac muscle; and certain glands.

Pupil dilates as outer muscle of iris contracts; lens focuses on distant objects as ciliary muscles relax

Salivary glands secrete thick, viscous saliva

Trachea kept open

Bronchial tubes dilate

Lung blood vessels dilate (widen)

Heart rate and force of contraction increase

Adrenal gland produces stress hormones

Blood vessels in skin constrict, turning it pale; . hairs stand on end; sweat gland secretion rises

Liver releases glucose

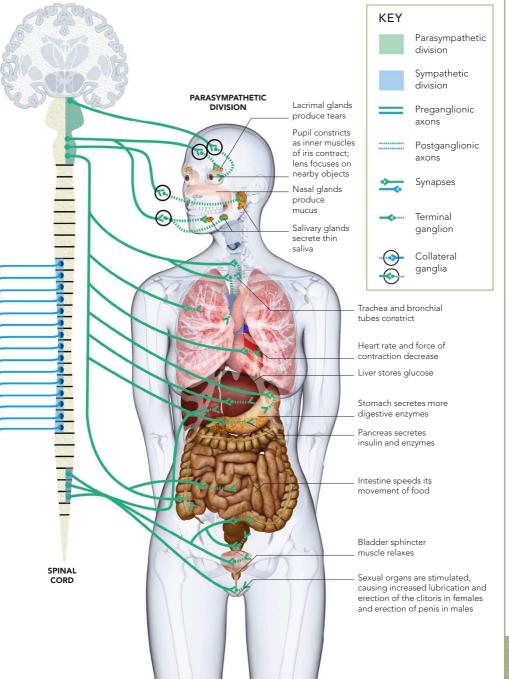
TWO DIVISIONS

There are two divisions in the ANS: the sympathetic and parasympathetic. The ganglia of the sympathetic division are arranged into two ganglion chains, one on each side of the spinal column (only one is shown here). The ganglia of the parasympathetic ANS are inside organs (see diagram). Only skin and blood vessels receive nerve messages from all positions on the cord. Kidney decreases urine output

Stomach produces less of the digestive enzymes

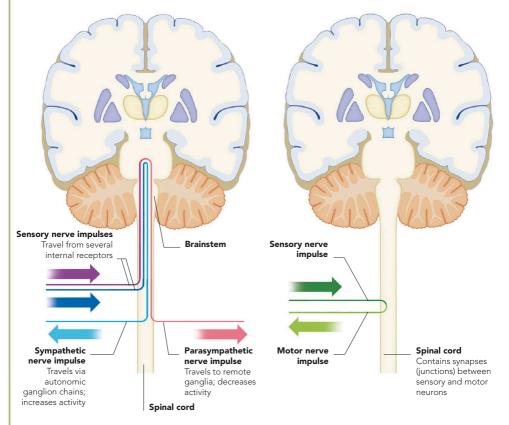
Intestine slows . its movement of food

Bladder sphincter muscle constricts Blood vessels dilate SYMPATHETIC DIVISION



INVOLUNTARY RESPONSES

There are two main types of involuntary, or automatic, responses, which do not usually involve conscious awareness. One involves reflex actions (see p.105). Reflexes mainly affect muscles normally under voluntary control. The other type of response includes autonomic motor actions. The initial nerve pathways for these responses run along spinal nerves into the spinal cord, then up ascending nerve tracts to the lower autonomic regions of the brain, particularly parts of the limbic system and the hypothalamus. These regions analyze and process the information received, and then use the autonomic pathways to send out motor impulses, which are instructions for the involuntary muscles and the glands. Response signals for the parasympathetic and sympathetic systems have separate pathways.



AUTONOMIC RESPONSES

Nerve signals pass along spinal nerves and up the spinal cord to the lower autonomic regions of the brain, which output motor impulses in response.

REFLEXES

Sensory signals arrive, and motor signals depart, entirely within the spinal cord, and without the involvement of the brain—although the brain becomes aware soon afterward.

RESPONSES UNDER VOLUNTARY CONTROL

Nervous responses under voluntary control are the opposite of reactions controlled by the ANS. Stimulated by incoming sensory nerve messages, or by conscious thought and intention, the brain's cerebral cortex formulates a central motor plan for a particular movement, and sends out instructions as motor nerve signals to voluntary muscles. As the movement progresses, it is monitored by sensory endings in the muscles, tendons, and joints. The sensory endings update the cerebellum, so that the cerebral cortex can send corrective nerve signals back to the muscles in order to keep the movement coordinated and on course.

Cerebral cortex

Receives sensory data from cerebellum, compares it with what has just been sent as instructions, and modifies the next batch of instructions accordingly

Basal ganglia

Plan and initiate complex movements, receive sensory data from the cerebellum, and relay information to the cerebral cortex above

Cerebellum

Receives all sensory information from the muscles and the joints; coordinates and relays instructions to produce precise movements

Sensory nerve impulse

Motor nerve impulse

VOLUNTARY RESPONSES

Nerve signal pathways for voluntary actions include a continually active feedback loop. Motor nerve impulses travel to the muscles involved, while sensory nerve impulses return to the cerebellum to report on the progress of the action and make any fine adjustments necessary for smooth movements

Spinal cord

MEMORIES, THOUGHTS, AND EMOTIONS

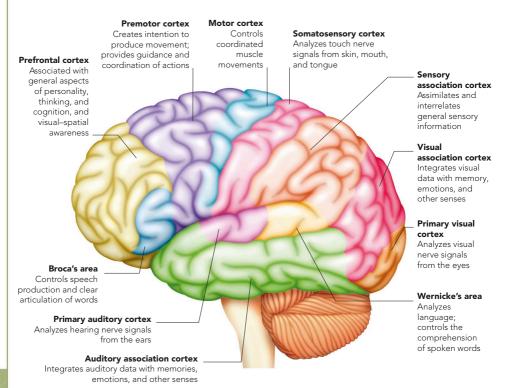
MANY MENTAL FACULTIES ARE NOT CONTROLLED BY JUST ONE AREA OF THE BRAIN. FOR EXAMPLE, THERE IS NO SINGLE "MEMORY CENTER." THOUGHTS, FEELINGS, EMOTIONS, AWARENESS, AND MEMORY INVOLVE MANY PARTS OF THE BRAIN.

MAP OF THE CORTEX

Certain regions of the brain's cortex are called primary sensory areas. Each of these receives sensory information from a specific sense. The primary visual cortex, for instance, analyzes data from the eyes. Around each region are association areas, where data from the specific sense is integrated with data from other senses, compared with memories and knowledge, and associated with feelings and emotions. In this way, seeing a particular scene allows us to recognize, identify, and name the objects in it; remember where we saw them previously, recall related sensory data, such as a certain smell, and experience associated emotions again.

CENTERS OF ACTIVITY

Certain areas of the cortex carry out specific brain functions, while others are more generalized. No areas have been identified as exact sites of consciousness or learning.



MEMORY AND RECALL

Memories are the brain's information store. No single region of the brain processes them as they are being established, nor acts as a storage site for all memories.

These processes depend on the significance and time span of the memory, its depth of emotional impact, and its association with specific senses such as eyesight.

Putamon

Stores "subconscious" memories, such as motor skills gained by repetition

Prefrontal cortex

Controls grasp of passing situations, such as visualspatial awareness of current surroundings

Amygdala

Recalls powerful emotions associated with memorable events. such as fear

Hippocampus Establishes long-term memories and knowledge linked with

Cortex Stores parts of a memory associated with specific senses and motor actions in their relevant areas

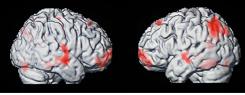
AREAS INVOLVED IN MEMORY STORAGE

Various areas of the brain are involved in memory. The hippocampus, for example, helps transfer immediate thoughts and sensory data into short- and long-term stores. If it is damaged, a person can recall events from long ago, before the damage, but not what happened a few hours previously.

spatial awareness



The real-time scanning method fMRI (functional magnetic resonance imaging) reveals tiny localized increases in blood flow. As a result, the scans can pinpoint



RIGHT SIDE OF BRAIN



RIGHT SIDE OF BRAIN

LEFT SIDE OF BRAIN



LEFT SIDE OF BRAIN

PLANNING A MOVEMENT

which areas of the brain are busy during

well-defined mental activities, such as

studying the visual details of an image,

or listening to and understanding speech.

Temporal lobe

Stores language, words,

vocabulary, and speech

The subject of this fMRI scan was asked to think about performing a task during the scan. The image shows activity in both the left and right prefrontal areas and also in both the left and right auditory cortex.

MAKING THAT MOVEMENT

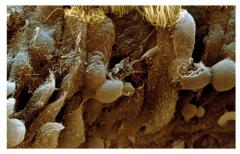
When actually performing the task, large parts of the premotor and motor cortex show up on the brain's left side. The cerebellum (at the base of the brain) helps control precise muscle coordination.

SMELL, TASTE, AND TOUCH

RECEPTORS THAT SENSE PRESSURE, PAIN, AND TEMPERATURE ARE WIDESPREAD IN THE BODY. TASTE AND SMELL, IN CONTRAST, ARE "SPECIAL SENSES" BECAUSE THEIR RECEPTORS ARE COMPLEX AND LOCALIZED, AND DETECT SPECIFIC STIMULI.

SMELL

Smell is a sense that can detect chemical molecules known as odorants floating in the air. Specialized epithelial tissue provides a smelling zone, known as the olfactory epithelium, on the roof of the nasal cavity. In humans, smell is more sensitive than taste and may be able to distinguish millions of odors. Smell is important for warning of dangers, such as smoke and poisonous gas, and for appreciating food and drink. The sense of smell tends to deteriorate with age, so young people are able to distinguish a wider range of odors and experience them more vividly than older people.



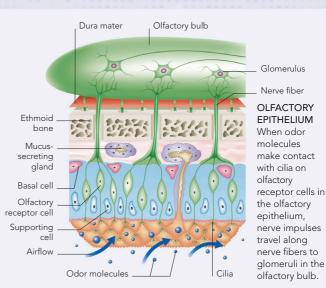
NASAL LINING

Epithelial cells in the lining of the nasal chamber have tufts of hairlike cilia, which wave germ- and odorant-trapping mucus toward the back of the chamber to be swallowed.

HOW WE SMELL

Odor molecules dissolve in the mucus lining the nasal chamber. In the roof of the chamber, they touch the cilia (microscopic, hairlike endings of olfactory receptor cells). If the correct molecule slots into the sameshaped receptor on the cilial membrane, like a key in a lock, a nerve impulse is generated. The impulses are partly processed by intermediate neurons called glomeruli in the olfactory bulb.





NERVE PATHWAYS FOR SMELL AND TASTE

Both smell (olfactory) and taste (gustatory) sensations pass along cranial nerves directly to the brain. Smell signals travel from the olfactory bulbs along the olfactory nerve, which is made up of groups of nerve fibers, to a patch of the cortex located in the temporal lobe. Taste sensations travel along branches of the glossopharyngeal and facial nerves to the gustatory center in the cortex.



NASAL CHAMBER

A 3-D CT scan shows the three shelves of bone known as the conchae on both sides of the nasal chamber.

Cerebral cortex

Helps integrate smell and taste sensation with memory and emotion

Gustatory cortex

"Taste center" for reception and analysis of gustatory (taste) nerve signals

Pathway of impulses from trigeminal nerve

> Pathway of impulses from glossopharyngeal nerve

> > Thalamus

Receives taste signals from the medulla and sends them to the gustatory cortex

Olfactory bulb

Outgrowth of brain; processes smell signals before passing them to the brain

Olfactory nerve fibers Fibers from olfactory

receptor cells form bundles of nerves

Nasal chamber

Trigeminal nerve

Branches gather

sensory impulses from the front two-thirds of the tongue

Glossopharyngeal nerve

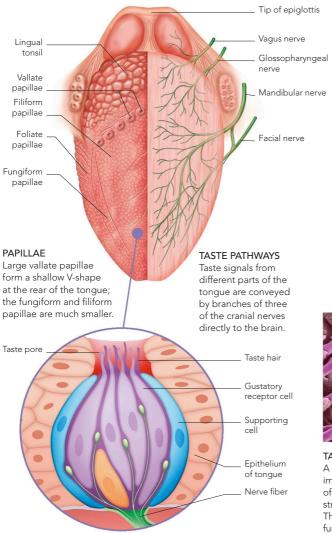
Branches collect taste impulses from the rear third of the tongue

Medulla

Taste signals from cranial nerves reach the medulla to be relayed to the thalamus

TASTE

Taste works in a similar way to smell. Its gustatory cell (taste) receptors detect specific chemicals dissolved in saliva by a "lock-and-key" method (see p.112). Groups of receptor cells are known as taste buds. A child has about 10,000 taste buds, but with age, their numbers may fall to under 5,000. They are located mainly on and between the pimplelike papillae that dot regions of the tongue's upper surface. There are also some taste buds on the palate (roof of the mouth), throat, and epiglottis.



TASTE BUDS

Each taste bud is structured much like an orange whose "segments" consist of roughly 25 "gustatory" receptor cells and numerous supporting cells. The receptor cells have hairlike tips that project into a hole (the taste pore) in the tongue's surface. Their nerve fibers gather at the bud base.



TASTE RECEPTORS

A scanning electron microscope image shows two different types of papillae. The purple conical structures are filiform papillae. The circular pink structure is a fungiform papilla.

SMELL, TASTE, AND TOUCH

TOUCH

The sense of touch comes from microscopic sensory receptors (specialized endings of nerve cells) in the skin or in deeper tissues (see p.182). Some receptors are enclosed in capsules of connective tissue, while others are uncovered. Different shapes and sizes of receptors detect a range of stimuli, such as light touch, heat, cold, pressure, and pain. The receptors relay their signals via the spinal cord and lower brain to a strip curving around the cerebral cortex, known as the somatosensory cortex, or "touch center."

Epidermis

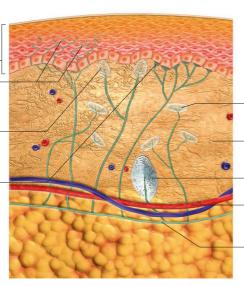
Layer of constantly renewing cells; multiply at base; harden and die as they move outward

> Superficial nerve endings Occur everywhere in the skin

Meissner's corpuscle Upper dermal nerve ending; mostly located just below epidermis

Merkel's disc receptor

Junction nerve ending; sited just above or below the boundary between epidermis and dermis



SENSORY RECEPTORS

When a sensory receptor in the skin is deformed, or temperature changes make it expand or contract, it generates nerve impulses.

Ruffini corpuscle

Nerve ending, mostly in middle or lower dermal layers

Dermis Skin layer housing most touch receptors

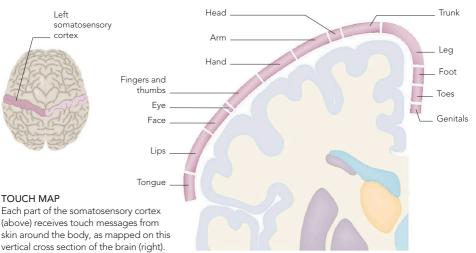
Pacinian corpuscle Located deep in the dermis

Blood vessel

Brings nourishment to the skin layers and touch receptors

Nerve fiber

Receptors' nerve fibers gather into bundles; these convey signals to the main nerves

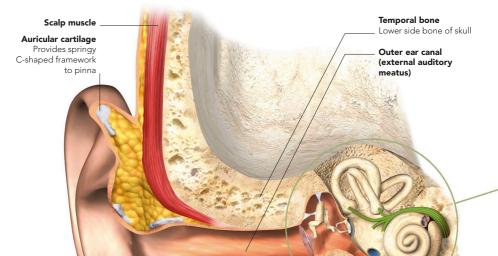


EARS, HEARING, AND BALANCE

THE EARS PROVIDE THE SENSE OF HEARING. THEY ALSO DETECT HEAD POSITION AND MOTION, SO THEY ARE ESSENTIAL TO BALANCE. THE FUNCTION OF BOTH HEARING AND BALANCE IS BASED ON THE ACTIVITY OF "HAIR CELL" RECEPTORS.

INSIDE THE EAR

The ear is divided into three parts. The outer ear comprises the ear flap and the slightly S-shaped outer ear canal, which guides sound waves to the second region, the middle ear. The elements of the middle ear amplify the sound waves and transfer them from the air into the fluid of the inner ear. They include the eardrum and the three smallest bones in the body—the auditory ossicles, which span the air-filled cavity of the middle ear. The fluid-filled inner ear changes sound waves to nerve signals inside the snail-shaped cochlea. The middle-ear cavity connects to the throat via the Eustachian tube, and so to the air outside. This connection allows atmospheric pressure to transfer to the cavity, equalizing the air pressure on either side of the eardrum and preventing it from bulging as the outside pressure changes.



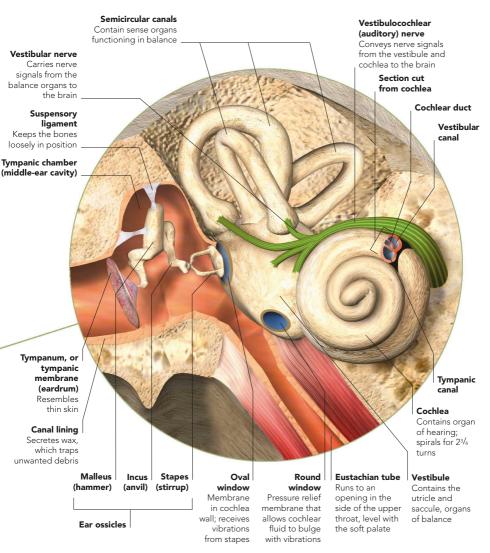
Pinna (ear flap) Skin-covered flap with subcutaneous fat, cartilage, and connective tissue

OUTER EAR

The vaguely trumpet-shaped pinna helps funnel sound waves into the outer ear canal. The lining of the canal continuously secretes wax to trap dirt and germs. It slowly flakes off and works its way out, helped by movements of the jaw.

MIDDLE AND INNER EAR

The ossicles of the middle ear are positioned and connected by miniature ligaments, tendons, and joints, just like larger bones. The cochlea, semicircular canals, and vestibule of the inner ear are linked. They are all filled with fluid, and are encased and protected within the thickness of the skull's temporal bone. They occupy a complex series of tunnels and chambers known as the osseous labyrinth.



HOW WE HEAR

Ears act as energy converters, changing pressure differences in air, known as sound waves, into electrochemical nerve impulses. Sound waves usually occur as a complex pattern of frequencies, and they vibrate the eardrum in that same pattern. The vibrations are conducted along the ossicle chain, which rocks like a bent lever and forces the footplate of the stapes to act like a piston, pushing and pulling at the flexible oval window of the cochlea. The motions set off waves through the perilymph fluid inside the cochlea. These, in turn, transfer their vibrational energy to the organ of Corti, which coils within the cochlea.



HAIR CELLS

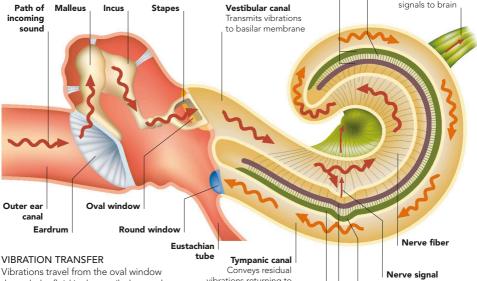
Within the organ of Corti, with the tectorial membrane removed on the right, each hair cell is seen to have 40–100 hairs arranged in a curve. Nerve fibers run from the cell bases

Organ of Corti

Central spiral element of the cochlea, composed of tectorial and basilar membranes linked by sensitive hair cells Hair cells

Generate nerve signals in response to motion of basilar and tectorial membranes

> Cochlear nerve Carries nerve signals to brain



through the fluid in the vestibular canal to the organ of Corti, Here, hair cells on the basilar membrane vibrate. pulling the hairs and stimulating them to produce nerve impulses. These travel via the cochlear nerve to the auditory cortex in the brain for interpretation. Residual vibrations from the vestibular canal pass along the tympanic canal to the round window.

vibrations returning to round window

Tectorial membrane

Tips of hairs from hair cells embed in this membrane

Basilar membrane

Supports the bases of hair cells and their nerve fibers

Frequency response

Organ of Corti "shakes" at a particular point along its length, according to frequency of vibration

THE PROCESS OF BALANCE

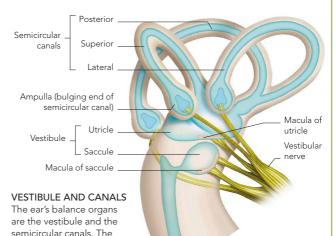
Balance involves analyzing sensory inputs from the eyes, skin, and muscles, and then adjusting the body's position through motor outputs. The vestibule and semicircular canals of the inner ear play a key role, too. The vestibule responds mainly to the position of the head relative to gravity (static equilibrium), while the canals react chiefly to the speed and direction of head movements (dynamic equilibrium).

VESTIBULE

The vestibule's two parts, the utricle and saccule, each have a patch, the macula, containing hair cells. The tips of the cells extend into a membrane covered in heavy mineral crystals (otoliths). With the head level, the saccule's macula is vertical and the utricle's horizontal. As the head bends forward, the hair cells monitor the head's position in relation to the ground.

SEMICIRCULAR CANALS

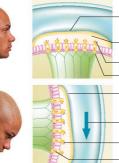
Each semicircular canal has a bulge near one end, called the ampulla. This houses a low mound of hair cells, their hair ends set into a taller, jellylike mound, the cupula. As the head moves, fluid in the canal lags behind, swirls past the cupula, and bends it. This pulls the hairs and triggers their cells to fire nerve signals.



latter are all at right angles

to each other, and respond

to any head movement.



MACULA ACTION

- Mineral crystals (otoliths) cover the membrane
- Otolithic membrane
- Hair of hair cell Hair cell
- Utricular macula rotated to vertical
- Gravity pulls membrane
- Hairs deflected
- Hair cell stimulated

AMPULLA ACTION

- . Hairs of hair cells
- Mound of hair cells (crista ampullaris)
- Ampulla
- Fluid swirls due to head motion
- Cupula bends
- Hair cells stimulated





EYES AND VISION

EYESIGHT PROVIDES THE BRAIN WITH MORE INPUT THAN ALL OTHER SENSES COMBINED—MORE THAN HALF OF THE INFORMATION IN THE CONSCIOUS MIND IS ESTIMATED TO ENTER THROUGH THE EYES.

THE SEQUENCE OF VISION

Light rays enter the eve through the clear, domed front of the eyeball, the cornea, where they are partly bent (refracted). They then pass through the transparent lens, which changes shape to focus them (see Accommodation, opposite) as an upside-down image onto the retina. The retina contains many millions of light-sensitive cells called rods and cones, which convert light energy into nerve signals. Rods are scattered through the retina and detect low levels of light. Cones are concentrated in the fovea and distinguish colors and fine details. The signals of the image are sent along the optic nerves of each eye to the visual cortex in the brain.

> **Optic nerve** Conveys nerve signals to brain

Lateral rectus Small muscle that swivels the eye to look out to the side

INSIDE THE EYE

An average eyeball is 1 in (25mm) in diameter, and has three main outer layers: the sclera, choroid, and retina. Near the front, the sclera can be seen as the white of the eye, and at the front it becomes the clear cornea. The main bulk of the eye, between the lens and the retina, is filled with a clear, jellylike fluid known as vitreous humor. This maintains the eyeball's spherical shape.

Optic disk

Point at which nerve fibers leave the eye; contains no light-sensitive cells Sclera

Tough, white protective outer sheath of eyeball

Choroid Blood-rich layer that supplies retina and sclera

Retina Thin layer of light-sensitive rod and cone cells

Fovea Region of retina with dense concentration of cone cells, enabling precise vision _



Superior rectus Small muscle that swivels

eve to

look up

Suspensorv ligaments Hold lens within the

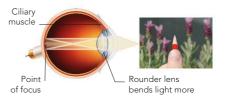
ring of ciliary

muscle

Posterior chamber Fluid-filled cavity behind the iris

ACCOMMODATION

Most of the eye's focusing power comes from the cornea, but the lens alters in shape to fine-focus light rays, a process known as accommodation. To focus on nearby objects, the ring-shaped ciliary muscle around the lens contracts, making the lens thicker. To focus on more distant objects, the muscle relaxes, making the lens flatter and thinner.



NEAR VISION

Light rays from close objects diverge more, so they need the extra focusing power of a fatter lens to bend the light rays so that they converge.

Point of focus



Flatter lens bends light less

DISTANT VISION

Light rays from distant objects are almost parallel and require less refracting power to focus, so the ciliary muscle relaxes to make the lens bulge less.

Iris

Ring of muscle that changes size of pupil to regulate amount of light entering the eye

Anterior chamber

Between cornea and iris, filled with aqueous humor (fluid)

Pupil

Hole in iris that becomes wider in dim light

Cornea

Domed, transparent "window" at front of eye

Conjunctiva

Delicate, sensitive covering of cornea and eyelid lining

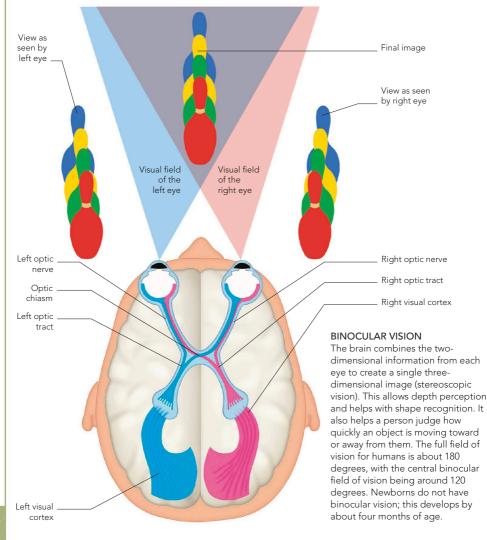
Ciliary muscle Ring of muscle that changes shape for alters lens shape

Transparent disk of tissue that near or far vision

Lens

VISUAL PATHWAYS

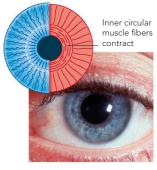
Nerve signals conducted along the left and right optic nerves converge at a crossover junction, called the optic chiasm, at the base of the brain. Here, fibers carrying signals from the left side of each retina join and proceed as the left optic tract to the left visual cortex at the back of the brain. Likewise, fibers from the right side of each retina form the right optic tract and go to the right visual cortex. Because the eyes are set apart, each sees a slightly different view of an object. The combination of the views of both eyes into a single image is called binocular vision.



EYES AND VISION

PUPILS

The size of the pupils constantly changes in response to changing levels of light. This is a function of the autonomic nervous system (see pp.106–107). Smooth muscle fibers in the iris are arranged as an inner, circular band and an outer, radial band. Sensory receptors in the eyes respond to light and send nerve signals to the brain, which sends messages to one or the other muscle band to adjust pupil size.



CONSTRICTED PUPIL

In bright light or to view nearby objects, the pupil constricts as the parasympathetic nervous system stimulates the inner circular muscle fibers to contract.



DILATED PUPIL

When light is dim and the eye needs more light to see, the pupil widens as the sympathetic nervous system causes the outer radial muscle fibers to shorten.

AROUND THE EYE

When it closes, the eyelid physically protects the eye and smears lacrimal fluid, or tears, over the conjunctiva. Tears wash away dirt and dust and protect against microbes. Around the eyeball, there are six small,

Lacrimal ducts

5–10 ducts convey fluid to the surface of the eye .

Lacrimal canals

Collect tears draining through small holes in the corner of the eye

> Lacrimal sac Channels tears toward nose

Nasolacrimal duct Opens into nasal cavity

TEAR APPARATUS

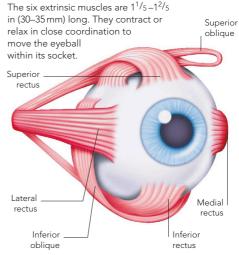
The tear (lacrimal) gland is under the soft tissues of the outer part of the upper eyelid. It produces $^{1}/_{3}$ - $^{2}/_{3}$ fl oz (1–2 ml) of fluid daily.

Lacrimal gland Secretes tears to keep eye clean and moist



straplike muscles that attach it to the socket (orbit) in the skull bone. These extraocular or extrinsic muscles are very fast-acting and swivel, or roll, the eyeball so the eye can look up or down, inward or out.

EYE MUSCLES OF RIGHT EYE



NERVOUS SYSTEM DISORDERS

DISORDERS OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM CAN DEVELOP FOR VARIOUS REASONS, SUCH AS PROBLEMS WITH THE BRAIN'S BLOOD SUPPLY, THE DETERIORATION OF BRAIN CELLS, ABNORMAL DEVELOPMENT IN THE WOMB, TISSUE INFECTION, CELL DAMAGE, AND THE AGING PROCESS.

STROKE

Disruption of blood supply to nerve cells in the brain results in a temporary or permanent loss of function of the body parts they serve. In most people, symptoms of stroke develop rapidly, and may include weakness or numbness on one side of the body, visual disturbances, slurred speech, and difficulty maintaining balance. Immediate admission to a hospital is essential to try to prevent brain damage. Long-term treatment to reduce the risk of further strokes usually consists of drugs. Rehabilitation, such as physical therapy and speech therapy, are often needed. The after-effects of a stroke range from mild, temporary symptoms to lifelong disability.

Thrombus

Fat deposits in artery walls reduce flow and may encourage a blood clot, or thrombus, to form; if this blocks an artery to the brain, a stroke follows

Hemorrhage

Blood vessel

Common carotid artery

Embolus

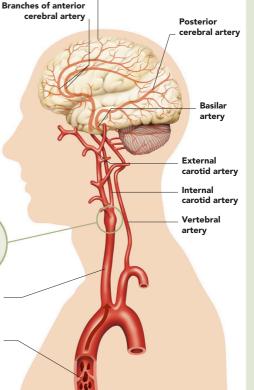
A piece of material called an embolus may travel in the blood and block a cerebral artery, causing a stroke

BLEEDING WITHIN THE BRAIN

An intracerebral hemorrhage, bleeding within brain tissue, is a main cause of stroke in older people who have hypertension. High blood pressure may put extra strain on small arteries in the brain, which causes them to rupture.

Blockage of tiny vessels

Prolonged high blood pressure or diabetes may damage tiny blood vessels, which may lead to localized blockages known as lacunar strokes



BLOCKED BLOOD VESSELS

Blocked arteries that cause a stroke can occur for several reasons, ranging from localized blockages in tiny blood vessels deep within the brain to a blockage caused by a fragment of material that has traveled to the brain from elsewhere.

DEMENTIA

Dementia combines memory loss, confusion, and general intellectual decline. The disorder mainly occurs in people over the age of 65, but young people are sometimes affected. In the early stages of dementia, a person is prone to becoming anxious or depressed due to awareness of the memory loss. As the dementia worsens, the person may eventually need full-time care in a nursing home. Caregivers may also need support.

ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE

The most common form of dementia is Alzheimer's disease. Brain damage occurs due to the abnormal production of a protein called amyloid, which builds up in the brain. No cure has been found, but drugs can slow the progress of the disease in some people. Area of dead brain tissue

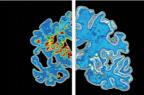
> Blocked blood vessel

Blood

vessels

MULTI-INFARCT DEMENTIA

Dementia can develop due to clots that block tiny blood vessels that supply the brain, causing death in small areas of brain tissue (infarcts).



HEALTHY BRAIN

ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE This computer graphic shows a slice through the brain of a person with Alzheimer's disease compared to a slice of healthy brain. The diseased brain is considerably

shrunken due to the degeneration and death of nerve cells. The surface of a brain affected by Alzheimer's disease may be more deeply folded than normal.

BRAIN IN ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE

MIGRAINE

About 1 in 10 people has migraine, with episodes of severe headache often associated with visual disturbances, nausea, and vomiting. The underlying cause of a migraine is unknown, but changes in the diameter of the blood vessels in the scalp and brain are known to occur. Current research indicates that migraines are linked to abnormal function of nerve pathways and a disturbance in the activity of brain chemicals. Triggers for a migraine attack include stress, missed meals, lack of sleep, and certain foods, such as cheese or chocolate. In many women, migraines are associated with menstruation.

HEADACHE PHASE

During migraine, severe, throbbing pain may affect half or all of the head as blood vessels in the scalp and brain widen (dilate). These vascular changes are thought to be secondary to nerve pathway abnormalities. _____ Dilated

vessels

BRAIN INFECTIONS

Infection of brain tissue or its protective layers can be caused by a variety of viruses, bacteria, and tropical parasites. Infection of the brain, or encephalitis, is a rare complication of a viral infection, such as mumps or measles. It can be fatal, with babies and elderly people being most at risk.

MENINGITIS

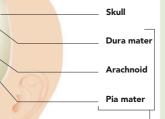
Inflammation of the meninges is usually caused by a virus or bacterium. Initially, meningitis may cause vague flulike symptoms. More pronounced symptoms may also develop, such as headache, fever, nausea, vomiting, stiff neck, and a dislike of bright light. In meningitis due to Meningococcus bacteria, there is a distinctive reddish purple rash. If meningitis is suspected, immediate admission to a hospital is necessary for tests. If bacterial meningitis is confirmed, treatment in intensive care is often required, and a complete recovery may take weeks or months. It can be fatal despite treatment. Recovery from viral meningitis usually takes up to two weeks. No specific treatment is needed.

SITES OF INFECTION

Infectious organisms can affect the brain itself, the three membranes (meninges) that surround the brain, or both. Infections can reach the brain through the blood, but can also spread from a nearby infection (such as an ear infection) or through a skull wound.

Brain tissue

Infection of brain tissue, known as encephalitis, is often mild, but is occasionally life-threatening; features include headache, fever, and nausea

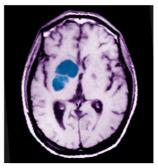


Meninges

Of the three meninges, the arachnoid and pia mater are affected more severely by meningitis than the outermost layer, the dura mater.

BRAIN ABSCESS

An abscess is a collection of pus. Brain abscesses are rare, and are usually caused by bacteria that have spread to the brain from an infection in nearby tissues in the skull. Treatment consists of high doses of antibiotics and possibly corticosteroids to control swelling of the brain. Surgery may be needed to drain pus through a hole drilled in the skull. If given early treatment, many people with a brain abscess recover. However, some have persistent problems, such as seizures, slurred speech, or weakness of a limb.



BRAIN ABSCESS

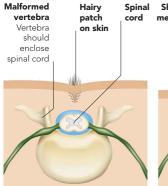
This MRI scan of the brain shows an abscess (blue area) due to a fungal infection in a person who has AIDS. People with AIDS are at increased risk of developing a brain abscess.



TESTING A MENINGITIS RASH In meningococcal meningitis, bacteria in the blood may cause dark-red or purple spots that turn into blotches. The rash does not fade when pressed with a glass.

SPINA BIFIDA

There are three main forms of spina bifida: spina bifida occulta, meningocele, and myelomeningocele. Spina bifida occulta may require surgery to avoid serious neurological complications later in life. Meningoceles usually have a good prognosis after surgery. Myelomeningocele has effects that may include



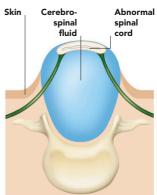
SPINA BIFIDA OCCULTA One or more vertebrae in the spine is malformed, but the cord is not damaged. On the skin, there may be dimpling, a tuft of hair, a fatty lump (lipoma), or a birthmark.

Skin and Cerebro-Spinal Skin meninges spinal fluid fluid

MENINGOCELE

The meninges protrude through a malformed vertebra as a visible fluid-filled sac called a meningocele. The spinal cord remains intact, and the defect can be repaired.

paralysis or weakness in the legs, and lack of bladder and bowel control. Children with this form will have a permanent disability and may need extra support during their lives. Folic acid helps prevent spina bifida, and women are advised to take supplements when planning to conceive and during the first 12 weeks of pregnancy.



MYELOMENINGOCELE

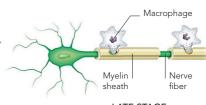
A part of the spinal cord, contained within a sac of fluid, protrudes through the skin. This is the most severe form of spina bifida, and will leave the child with some degree of disability.

MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS

Multiple sclerosis (MS) is due to immune system damage to the sheaths that insulate nerve fibers. It affects sensation, movement, body functions, and balance. In some people, symptoms may last for days or weeks, then clear up for months or years. In others, symptoms gradually get worse. Drugs may help lengthen remission periods and shorten attacks.

EARLY STAGE

At first, there are only small patches of damage. Macrophages, a type of scavenging cell, remove damaged areas of the myelin sheaths, exposing the fibers and impairing nerve conduction.



Damaged

myelin sheath

LATE STAGE

As MS progresses, the amount of damage to the sheaths increases, and affects conduction in more fibers. As the damage spreads, the symptoms become progressively worse.

127

DFAFNESS

There are two types of hearing loss: conductive and sensorineural. Conductive hearing loss results from impaired transmission of sound waves to the inner ear, and is often temporary. In children, the most common cause is glue ear (see below). In adults, it is most commonly due to blockage by earwax. Other causes include damage to the eardrum or, rarely, stiffening of a bone in the middle ear so that it cannot transmit sound. Sensorineural hearing loss is most commonly due to deterioration of the cochlea with age. It may also result from damage to the cochlea by

Hole in eardrum Malleus bone of middle ear

Bones of

(ossicles)

Gluelike

fluid



PERFORATED EARDRUM

A tear or hole in the eardrum may occur due to pressure from a buildup of pus or fluid in the middle ear during an infection. It may also occur due to unequal pressures between the middle and outer ear, as may happen when flying. Healing usually takes about a month.

excessive noise or by Ménière's disease. Rarely, hearing loss is caused by an acoustic neuroma or by certain drugs. Simple measures can be effective for treating conductive deafness, such as syringing the ear to remove earwax. Surgery may be required for glue ear or otosclerosis. Sensorineural deafness usually cannot be cured, but hearing aids can help.

A cochlear implant, in which electrodes are surgically implanted in the cochlea, may help in profound deafness.

Eardrum Vibrates in response to sound waves Semicircular canals Play a role in balance

HEALTHY EAR

Outer ear canal Conducts sound waves to eardrum

> Eustachian tube

> > Auditory nerve

Cochlea

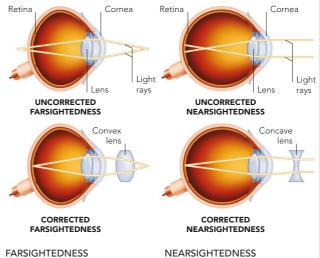
GLUE FAR

A persistent collection of fluid in the middle ear, which occurs more commonly in children, can cause difficulty in hearing. Fluid buildup is caused by a blockage of the Eustachian tube, which ventilates the middle ear, often as a result of infection.

VERVOUS SYSTEM

FOCUSING PROBLEMS

Farsightedness (hypermetropia) and nearsightedness (myopia) result from the eveball being either too short or too long (see right). In astigmatism, vision is blurred because the cornea is irregularly curved, and the lens cannot focus all light rays on the retina. Aging often affects near vision because the lens loses its elasticity and cannot easily adjust its shape. Refractive errors can usually be corrected by glasses or contact lenses, or by surgical techniques such as laser-assisted in-situ keratomileusis (LASIK) and photorefractive keratectomy (PRK). In LASIK, the middle layers of the cornea are reshaped by a laser, while in PRK, areas of the cornea's surface are shaved away by a laser to alter its shape.



In farsightedness, the eyeball is too short, so the cornea and lens focus light rays behind the retina, and the image is blurred. Convex lenses make the light rays converge so that they are focused on the retina, correcting vision.

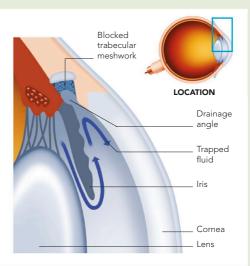
NEARSIGHTEDNESS In nearsightedness, the eyeball is too long, so the cornea and lens focus light rays in front of the retina, and the image is blurred. Concave lenses are required, which make the light rays diverge so that they are focused on the retina.

GLAUCOMA

Glaucoma occurs when there is an abnormally high pressure inside the eyeball that is caused by a buildup of fluid. The pressure may permanently damage nerve fibers in the retina or the optic nerve, affecting vision. In acute glaucoma, the condition develops suddenly and is accompanied by severe pain. Chronic glaucoma (see right) comes on slowly and painlessly over many years.

CHRONIC GLAUCOMA

Fluid continually moves into and out of the eye to nourish its tissues and maintain the shape of the eye. Normally, the fluid flows out through the pupil and drains out of the trabecular meshwork within the drainage angle. In chronic glaucoma, the meshwork is blocked, and pressure builds up.





LIKE THE BRAIN AND NERVES, THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM IS INVOLVED IN THE INFORMATION BUSINESS. HORMONES CARRY ESSENTIAL MESSAGES THAT HAVE FAR-REACHING EFFECTS. THEY CONTROL PROCESSES AT EVERY LEVEL, FROM ENERGY UPTAKE OF A SINGLE CELL TO THE WHOLE BODY'S RATE OF GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT. TODAY, ARTIFICIAL REPLACEMENTS FOR UNDERACTIVE GLANDS AND HORMONE-BLOCKERS FOR OVERACTIVE GLANDS ARE AVAILABLE. MEANWHILE, THE LIST OF NEWLY DISCOVERED HORMONES CONTINUES TO GROW.

ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

ENDOCRINE ANATOMY

PRODUCED BY ENDOCRINE GLANDS. HORMONES TARGET THE BODY'S CHEMICAL MESSENGERS, HORMONES, ARE CERTAIN TISSUES TO REGULATE THEIR ACTIVITIES.

of bodies of glandular tissue, such as reproduction. Hormones travel in the the thyroid, and also includes glands hormone slots only into receptors on glands and tissues secrete hormones growth and development, and sexual within certain organs, including the The endocrine system is composed testes, ovaries, and heart. These that control and coordinate body specific molecular shape of each substances in metabolism, fluid blood, so each hormone reaches every body part. However, the as the breakdown of chemical balance and urine production, its target tissues or organs. functions such

Thymus gland Produces hormones involved in development of white blood cells, called T cells, that are part of the immune system

Heart

Produces a hormone called atriopeptin that

reduces blood volume and pressure and

helps regulate fluid balance

Hypothalamus

Cluster of nerve cells that serves as the main link between nerves and hormones; produces hormones that control the pituitary gland

Pituitary gland

glands controls many other endocrine Called the "master gland";

Thyroid gland

heart rate Controls aspects of metabolism, including maintenance of body weight, rate of energy use, and

pineal bodv) Pineal gland

normone important in the sleep-wake cycle; also influences sexual Makes melatonin, a development

Adrenal gland

Outer layer manufactures steroid hormones that regulate metabolism and maintain fluid balance; inner layer produces epinephrine

Kidney which stimulates production of red blood Secretes erythropoletin,



TESTES

organs and the production of sperm, including testosterone. Androgens In males, the two testes produce characteristics, such as facial hair development of the male sexual androgens: male sex hormones, and influence secondary sexual and deepening of the voice. stimulate the growth and

Stomach

cells in bone marrow

release of digestive Makes hormones that stimulate production or enzymes

Pancreas

Contains clusters of cells that produce the hormones insulin and glucagon, which control blood glucose levels

Intestines

Like the stomach, make hormones that stimulate production or release of digestive enzymes

Ovary hormones estrogen Makes the female sex and progesterone,

which regulate the menstrual cycle

HORMONE PRODUCERS

HORMONES CARRY THE CHEMICAL DATA THAT CONTROL THE RATE AT WHICH GLANDS AND ORGANS WORK. HORMONE-PRODUCING CELLS ARE FOUND ALL AROUND THE BODY, MANY IN GLANDS THAT HAVE SPECIALIZED FUNCTIONS.

MASTER GLAND: THE PITUITARY

The pituitary, or hypophysis, is the most influential gland in the endocrine system. It is actually two distinct glands in one. The front (anterior) lobe, also known as the adenohypophysis, forms the larger part. Behind is the posterior lobe, or neurohypophysis. The anterior pituitary manufactures eight major hormones on

SKIN

The action of melanocytestimulating hormone (MSH)produced in a thin layer between the two pituitary lobes-causes cells called melanocytes in skin tissue to produce more melanin pigment, making the skin darken.



Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) triggers the adrenals to produce steroid hormones that control stress response and the body's use of fats, carbohydrates, proteins, and minerals.

THYROID

Thyrotropin-releasing hormone from the hypothalamus controls the release of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH). This encourages the thyroid to become more active and affects metabolism

BONE AND GENERAL GROWTH

Growth hormone (GH) acts on the whole body to promote protein manufacture, bone growth, and building of new tissues throughout life, but is especially important for development in children.

Adrenal

gland

site and releases them into the bloodstream. The posterior pituitary receives its two main hormones from the hypothalamus, which lies above it; there, they are made by neurosecretory cells. Other neurosecretory cells make regulatory hormones, which travel via capillaries to the anterior lobe and control the release of hormones there.

Hypophyseal portal system

System of blood vessels that carry regulatory hormones (releasing factors) from hypothalamus to anterior pituitary lobe

Anterior lobe of pituitary Contains cells that manufacture about eight main hormones; secretion of these hormones is regulated by hypothalamus

Veir

SEX GLANDS

Luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) trigger the sex glands to make their own hormones, and also to produce ripe egg cells in females and mature sperm cells in males.

Testis



Neurosecretory cell

Specialized nerve cells in the hypothalamus produce antidiuretic hormone (ADH) and oxytocin; these hormones flow through cell fibers (axons) to the posterior lobe of the pituitary

Hypothalamus

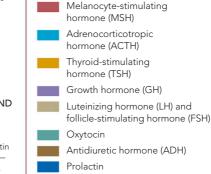
KIDNEY TUBULES

Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), also known as vasopressin, controls the amount of water removed from the blood by the microfilters (nephrons) in the kidneys. It also helps constrict small arteries when blood pressure falls.

PITUITARY VESSELS AND NERVES

The pituitary attaches to the hypothalamus by a short stalk. The anterior lobe receives a blood supply from the hypothalamus, while the posterior receives blood directly from the heart. Interaction between the hypothalamus and pituitary links the nervous and endocrine systems. This diagram shows the targets for pituitary hormones.

KEY TO ARROWS



Posterior lobe of pituitary

rterv

Stores hormones produced by neurosecretory cells in hypothalamus, and releases them as needed

Axon

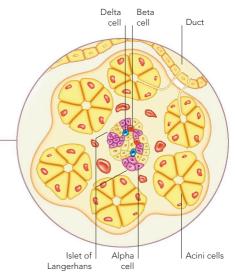
Pituitary stalk

UTERINE MUSCLES AND MAMMARY GLANDS

Oxytocin stimulates contractions during labor and—together with prolactin from the anterior pituitary triggers the release of milk from the mammary glands.

PANCREAS

The pancreas is a dual-purpose gland. It produces digestive enzymes in cells called acini, but also has an endocrine function. Within the acinar tissues are cell clusters known as islets of Langerhans, which produce hormones involved in controlling glucose (blood sugar), the body's main energy source. Beta cells make the hormone insulin, which promotes glucose uptake by body cells and speeds conversion of glucose into glycogen for storage in the liver. In this way, insulin lowers blood glucose levels. Another hormone, glucagon, is produced by alpha cells and has opposing actions, raising blood glucose levels. Delta cells make somatostatin, which regulates the alpha and beta cells.



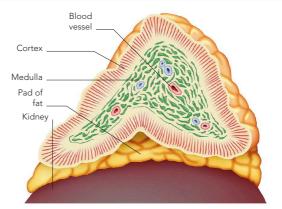


Surrounded by enzyme-producing acini cells, the tiny pancreatic islets contain three types of cells: alpha, beta, and delta. The secretions of the latter help regulate insulin and glucagon production.

PANCREAS

ADRENAL GLANDS

The inner layer (medulla) and outer layer (cortex) of the adrenal gland secrete different hormones. The cortical hormones are steroids (see p.139) and include glucocorticoids, such as cortisol, which affect metabolism; mineralocorticoids such as aldosterone, which influence salt and mineral balance; and gonadocorticoids, which act on the ovaries and testes. The medulla functions as a separate gland. Its nerve fibers link to the sympathetic nervous system, and it makes the fight-or-flight hormones, such as epinephrine.

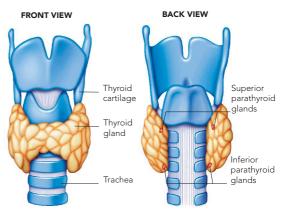


ADRENAL ANATOMY

Each adrenal gland is shaped like a cone or pyramid and sits on top of the kidney, cushioned by a pad of fat. The glands consist of two parts: the cortex, with three layers, and the medulla, containing nerve fibers and blood vessels.

THYROID AND PARATHYROID GLANDS

The thyroid is located in the front of the neck, and has four tiny parathyroid glands embedded at the back. The hormones it produces have wide-ranging effects on body chemistry, including the maintenance of body weight, the rate of energy use from blood glucose, and heart rate. Unlike other glands, the thyroid can store its hormones. The parathyroids make parathormone (PTH), which increases the levels of calcium in the blood. PTH acts on bones to release their stored calcium, on the intestines to increase calcium absorption, and on the kidneys to prevent calcium loss.



THYROID

The thyroid wraps around the upper windpipe (trachea). It produces two hormones that regulate the body's metabolism: thyroxine (T_4) and triiodothyronine (T_3) .

PARATHYROIDS

The small parathyroid glands are set into the rear corners of the thyroid's lobes, at the back of the trachea. There are usually four, but their number and exact locations vary.

SEX GLANDS AND HORMONES

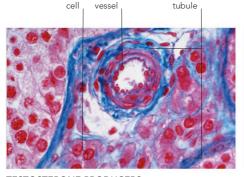
The main sex glands are the ovaries and testes. The hormones they produce stimulate the production of eggs and sperm respectively, and influence a developing embryo's sex. Until puberty, levels of sex

Blood

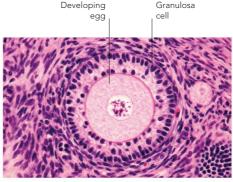
Seminiferous

Interstitial

hormones remain low. Then, in males, the testes increase their output of androgens (male sex hormones), such as testosterone. In females, the ovaries produce more estrogen and progesterone.



TESTOSTERONE PRODUCERS The cells shown in pink in this microscopic image of the testis secrete testosterone. They are found in the connective tissue between seminiferous tubules.



ESTROGEN PRODUCERS This microscope picture shows a developing egg surrounded by a ring of granulosa cells. These secrete estrogens.

HORMONAL ACTION

HORMONES REGULATE THE FUNCTION OF THEIR TARGET CELLS BY ADJUSTING THE RATE AT WHICH A CELL'S BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS OCCUR. DIFFERENT HORMONES ARE RELEASED ACCORDING TO DIFFERENT TRIGGER MECHANISMS.

HORMONAL TRIGGERS

Various stimuli cause an endocrine gland to release more of its hormone. In some cases, the gland responds to the level of a certain substance in the blood, using a feedback loop (see opposite). In other cases, there is an intermediate mechanism, such as the hypothalamus– pituitary complex. The adrenal gland is controlled both by adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), released by the pituitary on cue from the hypothalamus, and by nerve impulses direct from the hypothalamus. The pea-sized pineal gland, near the center of the brain, is triggered by darkness to release the sleep hormone melatonin. Pineal activity is inhibited by light, which is detected by the eye and sent to the gland as a series of nerve impulses.



Blood vessel Blood calcium level detected

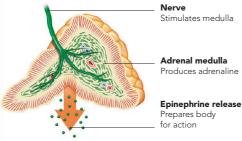
Thyroid Calcitonin lowers blood calcium

Parathyroid Parathormone raises blood calcium

Hormone release

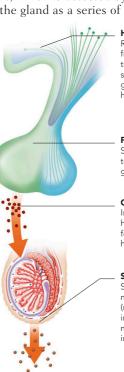
BLOOD LEVEL STIMULATION

Low blood calcium levels inhibit release of calcitonin from the thyroid and stimulate the parathyroids to release parathormone; calcium levels are raised.



DIRECT INNERVATION

The adrenal medulla receives nerve fibers (is innervated) from the hypothalamus via the sympathetic nervous system.



Hypothalamus

Receives information from monitoring cells that track levels of sex hormones; produces gonadotropin-releasing hormones

Pituitary Stimulated

to release gonadotropins

Gonadotropins

Include luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)

Sex gland (testis)

Stimulated to produce more of its sex hormones (mainly testosterone in male; ovaries produce mostly estrogen in female)

HYPOTHALAMIC-PITUITARY CONTROL

As sex hormone levels fall, gonadotropin-releasing hormones (GnRH) are sent from the hypothalamus to the pituitary, which releases more gonadotropins.

HORMONE CONTROL MECHANISMS

Chemically, there are two main types of hormones: those made of protein and amine molecules, and those made of steroids. The two groups work in a similar way,

biochemically altering production rates of certain substances, but at a cellular level they have different mechanisms. Protein and amine hormones act on receptor sites at a cell's surface: steroid hormones act on receptors inside the cell.

Protein-based Steroid hormone Steroid receptor hormone Passes through Binds with membrane hormone within Steroid Hormone hormone cell to form receptor "complex" On cell membrane Nucleus Action Complex affects inside cell genes that **Biochemical** produce enzymes action triggered DNA PROTEIN-BASED HORMONES STEROID-BASED HORMONES

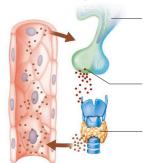
These hormones cannot pass through the cell

membrane. They bind to receptors on the membrane, triggering biochemical action inside the cell.

Steroids pass into the cell, then bind to receptors and enter the cell nucleus. This triggers genes to produce enzymes that prompt biochemical action.

FEEDBACK MECHANISMS

Hormone levels are controlled by feedback mechanisms, or loops. The amount of a hormone in the blood is detected and passed on to a control unit, which in many cases is the hypothalamus-pituitary



Hypothalamus Receives messages

about blood levels of thyroid hormones, makes TRH

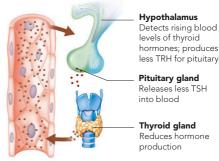
Pituitary gland TRH causes increased release of TSH into blood

Thyroid gland Triggered by TSH to produce more of its hormones

INCREASING LEVELS

Thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) from the hypothalamus causes the pituitary to make thyroidstimulating hormone (TSH); hormone levels rise.

complex (as with the thyroid hormones, see below). If a hormone level is too high, the control unit reduces hormone production. If the level is too low, the control unit stimulates production.



DECREASING LEVELS

High hormone levels prompt negative feedback, so the hypothalamus produces less TRH. This reduces TSH levels and the thyroid produces fewer hormones.

ENDOCRINE DISORDERS

SOME HORMONES HAVE WIDESPREAD EFFECTS, SO HORMONAL DISORDERS CAN CAUSE PROBLEMS AROUND THE BODY. THE PREFIX "HYPER-" IMPLIES AN EXCESS OF HORMONE, MAKING ITS TARGETS TOO ACTIVE; "HYPO-" IMPLIES TOO LITTLE HORMONE AND UNDERACTIVITY OF ITS TARGETS.

PITUITARY TUMORS

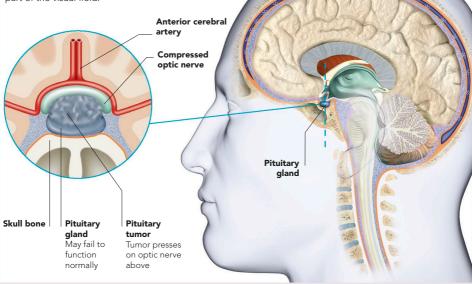
The central role of the pituitary in the endocrine system is reflected in the problems caused by a pituitary tumor, which may grow in any part of the gland; those in the anterior lobe are more likely to be benign (noncancerous). One result may be excess growth hormone, which causes enlargement of certain bones, such as those in the face, hands, and feet, and of some tissues, such as the tongue, as well as the development of coarse body hair and deepening of the voice. This condition is known as acromegaly. Some tumors cause excessive prolactin secretion or overstimulate the adrenal cortex.

PROLACTINOMAS

About 40 percent of pituitary tumors are prolactinomas—slow-growing, noncancerous tumors that cause the anterior lobe to secrete excessive prolactin. Normally this hormone promotes breast development and milk production in pregnancy. Symptoms of excess prolactin include irregular periods and lowered fertility in women; breast enlargement and impotence in men; and fluid leakage from the nipples, along with reduced sexual desire. In most cases, medication helps shrink the tumor and reduce prolactin output; otherwise, surgery or radiation therapy may be necessary.

PITUITARY TUMOR

An enlarging tumor may press on the optic nerves that pass just above it, causing headaches and visual disturbances, such as losing part of the visual field.

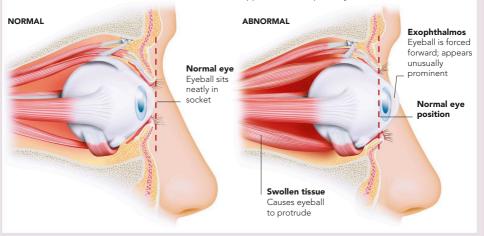


HYPERTHYROIDISM

Three-quarters of overstimulated thyroid cases are due to Graves' disease, an autoimmune disorder in which antibodies stimulate the thyroid, causing excessive hormone production. It is one of the most common hormonal disorders, especially in women aged 20-50. A less common cause is small lumps (nodules) in the gland. Raised hormone levels push up the metabolic rate, causing weight loss due to increased energy usage, rapid irregular heartbeat, trembling, sweating, anxiety, insomnia, weakness, and more frequent bowel movements. The enlarged thyroid may show as a swelling in the neck (goiter). Drug treatment can usually control the condition.

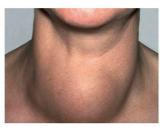
GRAVES' DISEASE

Hyperthyroidism due to Graves' disease can cause bulging eyes, giving a staring appearance and possibly blurred vision.



HYPOTHYROIDISM

In hypothyroidism, the thyroid hormones, triiodothyronine and thyroxine, are underproduced. Because these hormones govern the speed of many metabolic processes, a lack of them leads to a slowing of bodily functions. Symptoms of hypothyroidism include fatigue, weight gain, slow bowel activity and constipation, swollen face, puffy eyes, thickened skin, thinned hair, hoarse voice, and inability to cope with cold. The most common cause of hypothyroidism is inflammation of the thyroid gland due to an autoimmune condition called Hashimoto's thyroiditis, in which antibodies mistakenly damage the gland. The thyroid gland may swell considerably as a lump, or goiter, in the neck. A less common cause of hypothyroidism is a lack of the mineral iodine—needed to make the thyroid hormones—in the diet. A rarer possibility is damage to the pituitary gland by a tumor.



GOITER

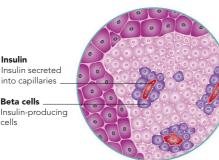
A swollen thyroid (goiter) may be due to thyroiditis, hyperthyroidism, hypothyroidism, thyroid nodules, or cancer of the thyroid.

DIABETES MELLITUS

THE MAIN ENERGY SOURCE FOR CELLS IS GLUCOSE, WHICH THE CELLS ABSORB FROM THE BLOOD WITH THE HELP OF THE HORMONE INSULIN. IN DIABETES MELLITUS, THIS PROCESS DOES NOT WORK PROPERLY. THERE ARE TWO MAIN TYPES OF DIABETES MELLITUS: TYPE 1 AND TYPE 2.

TYPE 1 DIABETES

Type 1 diabetes mellitus is an autoimmune disorder. It occurs when the immune system misidentifies beta cells in the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas as foreign and destroys them. The cause is unknown, but the disease may be triggered by a viral infection or inflammation in the pancreas. It usually develops in childhood or adolescence. Symptoms include thirst, dry mouth,

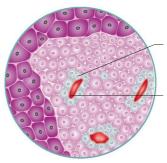


DAMAGED BETA CELLS

If the beta cells are damaged, they cannot produce insulin. As a result, body cells cannot take up glucose, and blood glucose levels rise too high. The lack of insulin allows the alpha cells to produce more glucagon, which raises blood glucose levels still further. hunger, frequent urination, fatigue, blurred vision, and weight loss. If untreated, the disorder can cause ketoacidosis, in which toxic chemicals called ketones build up in the blood. Affected people need urgent medical attention; otherwise they can fall into a coma. There can also be long-term complications (see Type 2 diabetes, opposite). Treatment involves insulin injections.

NORMAL BETA-CELL FUNCTION

As food and drink are digested, the presence of glucose, amino acids, and fatty acids in the intestine stimulates beta cells to release insulin into the bloodstream via tiny blood vessels called capillaries, which run through the islets of Langerhans.



Damaged beta cells Insulinproducing cells destroyed

Capillary

No insulin is secreted into capillaries

BLOOD SUGAR REGULATION

During digestion food is broken down to provide substances that cells can use to fuel and repair themselves. The main source of fuel is glucose, which is carried in the bloodstream to cells. Any excess is stored in the liver, muscle cells, and fat cells. The body needs to keep the blood glucose level steady. If it is too low, cells will not have enough glucose for their energy needs. If it is too high, there is a risk of autoimmune disease and pancreatitis. If the blood glucose level is too low, alpha cells in the islets of Langerhans secrete glucagon, which stimulates the release of stored glucose. If the level is too high, beta cells in the islets secrete insulin, which reduces the level.

TYPE 2 DIABETES

In type 2 diabetes, the pancreas secretes insulin, but the body cells are unable to respond to it. The causes are complex, including genetic predisposition and lifestyle factors. This form of diabetes is often associated with obesity and is a growing problem in affluent societies. The disorder develops slowly. There may be initial symptoms such as thirst, fatigue, and frequent urination, but in some cases the diabetes goes unnoticed for several years. As a result, complications may arise. Persistent high glucose levels can cause damage to small blood vessels around the body. People with type 2 diabetes are also more prone to high cholesterol levels, atherosclerosis (see p.157), and high blood pressure. The condition can be controlled with a healthy diet, regular exercise, and daily monitoring of blood glucose. However, in some cases, drugs are needed to boost insulin production or help the cells absorb glucose.

Retinopathy

Overgrowth of new blood vessels in retina causes loss of vision

Nephropathy

Damage to tiny vessels in kidneys leads to kidney failure

> Small vessel disease Vessel walls thicken and restrict oxygen supply to tissues

EFFECTS OF DIABETES This diagram shows the

complications that can arise from long-term diabetes, usually if the problem is poorly controlled.



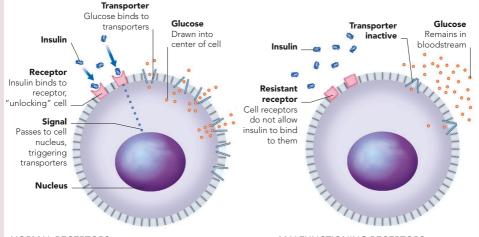
Caused by atherosclerosis; is more likely, and develops at an earlier age, in people with diabetes

Neuropathy

Poor circulation to nerves results in nerve damage

Foot problems

Poor circulation and loss of feeling leads to skin ulcers and gangrene

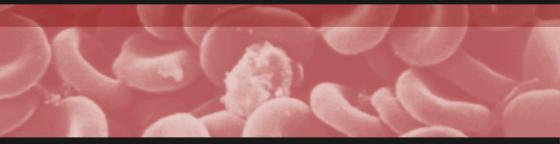


NORMAL RECEPTORS

Insulin binds with receptors on a cell to allow glucose to enter the cell. This, in turn, triggers transporters in the cell to draw glucose inside.

MALFUNCTIONING RECEPTORS

People with type 2 diabetes produce enough insulin, but the receptors are resistant to it and glucose cannot be taken into cells.



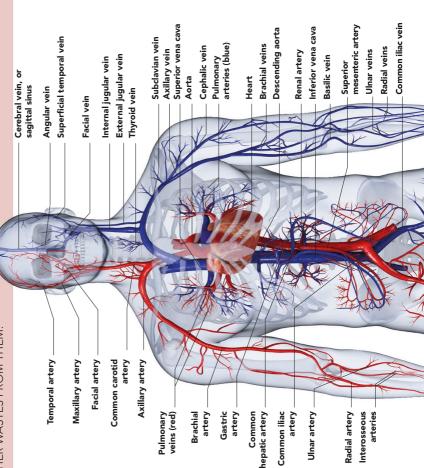
THROBBING HEART, PULSING VESSELS, BLOOD LEAKING FROM A WOUND—THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM IMPACTS DEEPLY ON OUR CONSCIOUSNESS. EVERY PART OF THE BODY RELIES ON A STEADY FLOW OF LIFE-GIVING BLOOD. THAT MOST VITAL OF PUMPS, THE HEART IS MOSTLY MUSCLE AND, IF MALTREATED, IT CAN WEAKEN AND WASTE, COMPROMISING ITS OWN BLOOD SUPPLY. DISORDERS OF THE HEART AND CIRCULATION ARE GENERALLY CAUSED BY ABUSE AND EXCESS: SMOKING TOBACCO, OBESITY, AND TOO LITTLE EXERCISE.

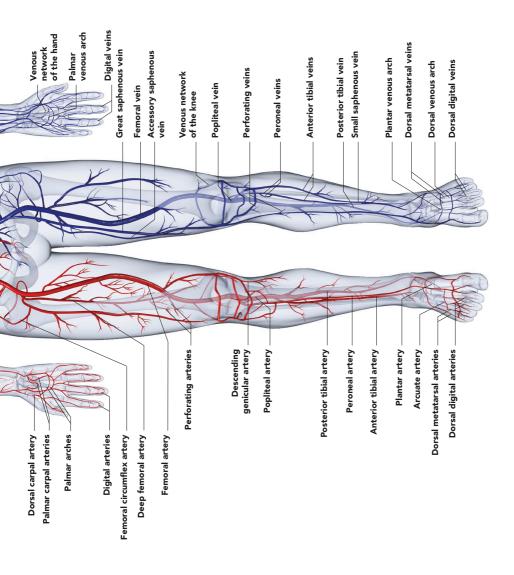


CARDIOVASCULAR ANATOMY

THE CIRCULATORY (OR CARDIOVASCULAR) SYSTEM DELIVERS OXYGEN AND NUTRIENTS TO VIRTUALLY ALL BODY CELLS, AND REMOVES CARBON DIOXIDE AND OTHER WASTES FROM THEM.

around the body. The arteries divide join and enlarge to form veins, which nutrients, and other substances can Working as a pump, the heart beats take blood back to the heart. In the the heart, blood vessels, and blood. figure shown here, vessels carrying regularly to send oxygen-rich blood oxygenated blood (usually arteries) deoxygenated blood (usually veins) from the tissues and cells into the blood for disposal. The capillaries are blue. This intricate network is The circulatory system comprises pass through to surrounding cells and tissues. Waste products flow arteries, which convey the blood some 90,000 miles (150,000 km) into tiny capillaries, the walls of long-almost equivalent to four times the circumference of the into tough, elastic tubes called which are so thin that oxygen. appear red and those carrying Earth.





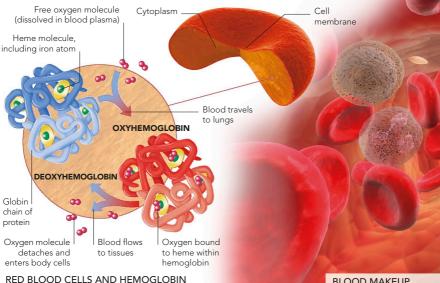
BLOOD AND BLOOD VESSELS

BLOOD IS A COLLECTION OF SPECIALIZED CELLS SUSPENDED IN A STRAW-COLORED LIQUID CALLED PLASMA. FLOWING AROUND THE BODY, BLOOD CARRIES OXYGEN AND NUTRIENTS, COLLECTS WASTE, DISTRIBUTES HORMONES, AND SPREADS HEAT.

WHAT IS BLOOD?

An adult has about 11 pints (5 liters) of blood. Roughly 50-55 percent of blood is plasma, 90 percent of which is water. Plasma contains dissolved substances such as glucose (blood sugar), hormones, enzymes, and also waste products such as urea and lactic acid. Plasma also contains proteins such as albumins, fibrinogen (important in clotting), and globular proteins or globulins. Alpha and beta globulins help transport lipids, which are fatty substances such as cholesterol.

Gamma globulins are mostly the diseasefighting substances known as antibodies. The remaining 45-50 percent of blood is made up of three types of specialized cells. Red blood cells or erythrocytes carry oxygen; various white blood cells, known as leukocytes, are part of the defense system; and platelets or thrombocytes, which are tiny fragments of much larger cells, are involved in the process of clotting.



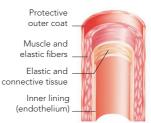
A biconcave disk with no nucleus, each red blood cell contains 300 million hemoglobin molecules. Hemoglobin is composed of heme, an iron-rich pigment, and globin, ribbonlike protein chains. Oxygen in the lungs latches onto heme to make oxyhemoglobin. In this form, oxygen travels through the bloodstream to all parts of the body.

BLOOD MAKEUP

In ¹/16.000 in³ (1 mm³) of blood float about 5 million red cells. 10,000 white cells, and 300,000 platelets. These cells may have to move in single file through the narrowest blood vessels.

ARTERIES

Arteries carry blood away from the heart toward organs and tissues. Apart from the pulmonary arteries, all arteries carry oxygenated blood. Their thick walls and muscular and elastic layers can withstand the high pressure that occurs as the heart pumps blood.



ARTERY SECTION

Four layers are found in an artery wall. The blood-carrying space, or lumen, is in the center.

VEINS

A vein is more flexible than an artery and its walls are thinner. The blood inside a vein is under relatively low pressure, and flows slowly and smoothly. Many larger veins, particularly the long veins in the legs, contain valves that prevent the backflow of blood,

Outer layer

Inner lining Valve cusp, or leaflet



Muscle layer

CAPILLARIES

The smallest and most numerous of the blood vessels, capillaries convey blood between arteries and veins. A typical capillary is about $\frac{1}{2.500}$ in (0.01 mm) in diameter, only slightly wider than a red blood cell. Many capillaries enter tissue to form a capillary bed, where oxygen and other nutrients are released. and where waste matter passes into the blood.

a job helped by muscles around the veins that contract during movement.

VEIN SECTION

The muscle layer of a vein is thin and enclosed by two layers; the innermost layer of some veins has valves at regular intervals.

CAPILLARY BED

Capillaries link small arteries (arterioles) to veins (venules).

> Arteriole Carries blood Capillary rich in oxygen

Venule Contains blood low in oxygen

Capillary wall

Cell nucleus

CAPILLARY WALL The thin capillary wall allows easy movement of substances between surrounding tissues.

White blood cell

leukocytes, white blood cells are a vital part of the

Platelet

Tiny, short-lived cell fragment that has an important role in the

Red blood cell

Red blood cells (erythrocytes) have a lifespan of about

Blood vessel wall

The thickness of the wall is dependent on the pressure of blood flowing through it

HEART STRUCTURE

THE HEART IS A POWERFUL ORGAN ABOUT THE SIZE OF A CLENCHED FIST. LOCATED JUST TO THE LEFT OF CENTER BETWEEN THE LUNGS, IT OPERATES AS TWO COORDINATED PUMPS THAT SEND BLOOD AROUND THE BODY.

THE HEART'S BLOOD SUPPLY

The muscular wall, or myocardium, of the heart is constantly active and needs a generous supply of oxygen and energy from blood. To provide this, the heart muscle has its own blood vessels—the right and left coronary arteries. These vessels branch from the main artery, the aorta, just after it leaves the heart, and send smaller blood vessels into the heart muscle. Waste from heart tissue is removed by the coronary veins, in particular by the coronary sinus, a large vein at the back of the heart.

CORONARY VESSELS

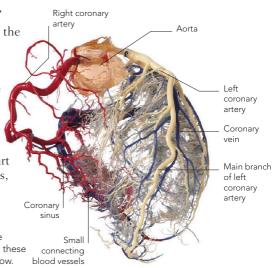
There are many connecting vessels between the coronary arteries. If an artery becomes blocked, these can provide an alternative route for the blood flow. b

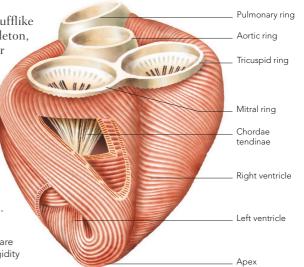
CARDIAC SKELETON

In the upper heart, four rigid, cufflike rings, known as the cardiac skeleton, provide points of attachment for the four heart valves and for the heart muscle. The wraparound muscle fibers in the ventricle walls, and the timing of their contractions, enable the ventricles to squirt blood from the apex (lower end) upward, and out through the pulmonary and aortic valves, rather than squeezing blood down to pool in the apex region.

FIBROUS FRAMEWORK

Four rings of fibrous tissue in the heart are known as the cardiac skeleton. Their rigidity prevents the valves from deforming.





Superior vena cava Vein carrying deoxygenated blood from the upper body

Aorta

The largest artery in the body; carries oxygenated blood to organs and tissues

Pulmonary artery

Divides into the right and left pulmonary arteries



PULMONARY ARTERY

This is an inside view of the pulmonary artery, which carries deoxygenated blood to both lunas.

> Left pulmonary veins

Left atrium

Aortic valve Controls flow from

left ventricle into systemic circulation

Pulmonary valve Controls blood flow from right ventricle

Mitral valve

The left atrioventricular valve. with two cusps

Left ventricle

Septum

Muscular partition between the heart's two sides

Myocardium

Layer of cardiac muscle responsible for the heart's contractions

Right pulmonary veins

Carry oxygenrich blood from the lungs to the left atrium

Right atrium

Tricuspid valve The right atrioventricular valve, with three cusps

Right ventricle

Chordae tendinae Also known as heart strings

Inferior vena cava One of the body's

two largest veins; carries oxygendepleted blood from the lower body

Pericardium

Two-lavered membrane that surrounds and protects the heart

Descending aorta

Takes freshly oxygenated blood to the lower body and legs

INSIDE THE HEART

The heart has four chambers. The lower two (the ventricles) have thicker muscle walls than the upper two (the atria). The septum, also mostly muscle, divides the heart's two sides. The atria receive blood from all parts of the body; the ventricles pump blood into circulation.

HEART STRUCTURE

HEART VALVES

The heart has four valves to control blood flow. Each has the same basic structure. although they differ in certain details. The two atrioventricular valves lie between the atria and ventricles. The mitral valve, on the left side, has two cusps, while its right

Pulmonary Superior vena Aorta artery cava l eft atrium Pulmonary valve l eft ventricle Aortic valve Right atrium Mitral valve Tricuspid valve Right ventricle

FUNCTION OF HEART VALVES

The tricuspid valve controls blood flow from the right atrium to the right ventricle; the pulmonary valve, from the right ventricle into the pulmonary artery; the mitral valve, from the left atrium to the left ventricle; and the aortic valve, from the left ventricle into the aorta.

MITRAL VALVE

This image of a healthy human heart valve shows the heart strings (chordae tendinae) and valve cusps. The mitral valve lies between the left atrium and the left ventricle.

> Chordae tendinae

Cusp



counterpart, the tricuspid valve, has three. The two semilunar valves are at the exits from the ventricles: the pulmonary valve between the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery, and the aortic valve between the left ventricle and the aorta.



TWO CUSPS



THREE CUSPS

PULMONARY VALVE

This valve lies between the right ventricle of the heart and the pulmonary artery. It opens as the right ventricle contracts and forces blood out of the heart toward the lungs.

Direction of blood flow Valve cusp open

HEART VALVE OPEN

The flexible cusps are

forced apart by the

the heart contracts

pressure of blood as

Blood pushes against valve



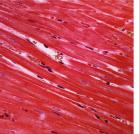
Blood at high

HEART VALVE CLOSED Back pressure causes the cusps to close and seal at their edges, to stop reverse blood flow.

HEART STRUCTURE

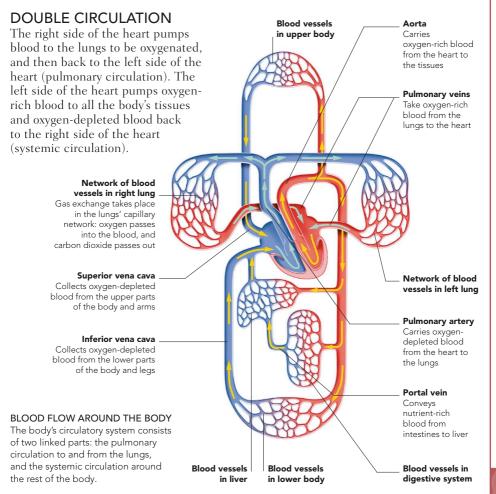
CARDIAC MUSCLE

The walls of the heart are made of a special type of muscle known as cardiac muscle, which is found only in the heart. Unlike other types of muscle, cardiac muscle can contract repeatedly without becoming tired. However, to maintain this constant activity, the muscle requires a continuous, ample supply of oxygenated blood, provided by the coronary arteries.



CARDIAC MUSCLE TISSUE

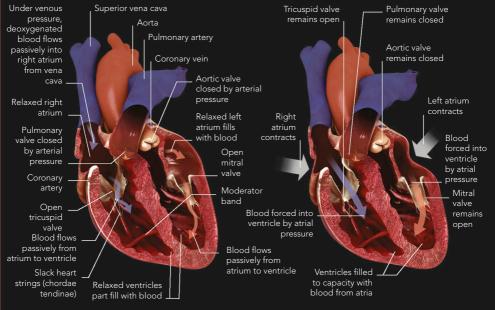
Cardiac muscle is a type of involuntary muscle, with short, branched, striated muscle fibers.



HOW THE HEART BEATS

THE HEART IS A DYNAMIC, UNTIRING, PRECISELY ADJUSTABLE DOUBLE PUMP THAT FORCES BLOOD AROUND THE BODY'S IMMENSE NETWORK OF BLOOD VESSELS—PERHAPS MORE THAN THREE BILLION TIMES DURING A LIFETIME.

The heart's two lower chambers (ventricles) have thick, muscular walls that contract to squeeze blood into the arteries. The upper chambers (atria) have thinner walls and act partly as reservoirs for blood entering from the main veins. Each heartbeat has two main phases: in the first phase (diastole), the heart relaxes and refills with blood; in the second phase (systole), it contracts, forcing the blood out. The whole cycle takes, on average, less than a second. During activity or stress, both the beating rate and the volume of blood pumped out of the heart increase greatly.



1 RELAXATION (LATE DIASTOLE)

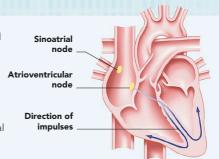
During this phase of the heartbeat sequence, the muscular walls of the heart relax. The atrial chambers balloon slightly as they fill with blood coming in under quite low pressure from the main veins. Deoxygenated blood from the body enters the right atrium, while oxygenated blood from the lungs enters the left atrium. Some of the blood in the atria flows down into the ventricles. By the end of this phase, the ventricles are filled to about 80 percent of capacity.

2 CONTRACTION OF THE ATRIA (ATRIAL SYSTOLE)

The heart's natural pacemaker, known as the sinoatrial node, is located in the upper part of the right atrium. It "fires" electrical impulses, similar to those generated by nerves, that set off the contraction phase. Some impulses spread through the atrial walls and stimulate their cardiac muscle to contract. This contraction squeezes the blood inside the atria through the atrioventricular (tricuspid and mitral) valves into the ventricles, whose walls remain relaxed.

HEARTBEAT SYNCHRONIZATION

Contractions of the atria and the ventricles are synchronized by electrical impulses from the sinoatrial node, the heart's natural pacemaker. Toward the end of diastole, the sinoatrial node sends out electrical impulses. These impulses travel through the atria, making them contract (atrial systole). Some impulses travel to the atrioventricular node, which sends them through conducting fibers to the ventricles, which contract in response (ventricular systole). The electrical impulses then travel back toward the atria. The sinoatrial node then fires again to continue the cycle.



Blood forced from right ventricle into pulmonary artery

Pulmonary valve opened by ventricular pressure

Atrium relaxes but pressure rises due to the contracting ventricle pressing against its wall

Tricuspid valve forced shut by ventricular pressure

> Taut heart strings (chordae tendinae)

valves snap shut.

→ CONTRACTION OF THE

Aortic valve opened by ventricular pressure

> Blood forced from contracting ventricle into aorta

> > Right atrium relaxed

Pulmonary valve

closed by back-

pressure from artery

Mitral valve forced shut by ventricular pressure

> Tricuspid valve open

Left ventricle contracts from base upward

Right ventricle contracts

from base upward

VENTRICLES (VENTRICULAR SYSTOLE)

ventricle walls contracts, stimulated by electrical

During this most active and powerful stage of

the heartbeat, the thick cardiac muscle in the

impulses relayed by the atrioventricular node.

This causes a rise in ventricular pressure, which

opens the aortic and pulmonary valves at the

exits of the ventricles. Blood is forced out into

the main arteries, making the atrioventricular

Right ventricle relaxed

RELAXATION (EARLY DIASTOLE)

Left ventricle

relaxed

The walls of the ventricles begin to relax, causing ventricular pressure to reduce. The pressure of the recently ejected blood in the main arteries is now high, so both the aortic and pulmonary valves close. This prevents backflow into the ventricles. As ventricular pressure on the atrioventricular valves relaxes, the valves open. This reduces pressure in the atria, allowing blood to enter once again from the main veins.

Aortic valve closed

Left atrium relaxed

valve open

Mitral

by back-pressure

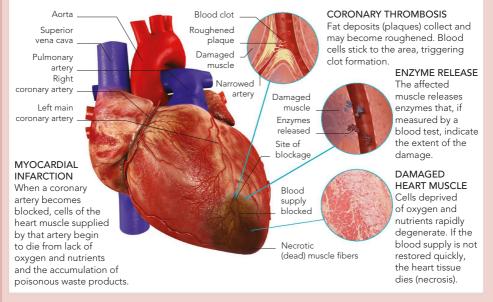
from artery

CARDIOVASCULAR DISORDERS

DISORDERS OF THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM MAY AFFECT THE HEART ITSELF, CAUSING STRUCTURAL DAMAGE OR DISRUPTING HEART RHYTHM. BLOCKAGES IN BLOOD VESSELS CAN STARVE TISSUES OF OXYGEN, LEADING TO SERIOUS PROBLEMS ANYWHERE IN THE BODY.

HEART ATTACK

A heart attack (myocardial infarction) is the result of coronary artery disease due to atherosclerosis (see opposite), and the subsequent formation of a blood clot, or thrombus. Once formed, the clot can completely block blood flow to an area of heart muscle, starving it of oxygen and eventually causing tissue death. If possible, the blood flow must be restored to the damaged cells as quickly as possible. A heart attack usually occurs suddenly, with little or no warning. The chest pain is usually severe, is not necessarily brought on by exertion, and persists despite resting. A heart attack can also cause sweating, shortness of breath, nausea, and loss of consciousness.

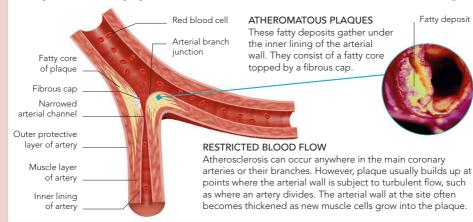


ANGINA

Angina is caused by a temporarily inadequate supply of blood to the heart muscle, usually because of arterial narrowing as a result of atherosclerosis (see opposite). The pain most often occurs when the heart's workload is increased, for example with exercise, and fades with rest. Other triggers of angina are stress, cold weather, or a large meal. An attack of angina typically begins with a heavy, constricting pain behind the breastbone. This can spread into the throat and jaw, and down into the arms, especially the left one. The pain usually subsides within about 10-15 minutes. People with angina often take medication to dilate (widen) the coronary arteries.

ATHEROSCLEROSIS

The process that leads to atherosclerosis begins with abnormally high levels of excess fats and cholesterol in the blood. These substances infiltrate the lining of arteries, forming deposits known as atheroma. This can happen in any of the body's arteries, including those supplying the brain with blood, when the result may be a stroke. The atheromatous deposits gradually form raised patches known as plaques. These consist of



VALVE DISORDERS

There are two main types of heart valve disorder: stenosis and incompetence. In stenosis, the valve outlet is too narrow, restricting blood flow. The condition may be congenital (present at birth), due to an infection such as rheumatic fever, or part of the aging process. In incompetence, the heart valve does not close fully. allowing backflow of blood. This problem can result from a heart attack or an infection of the valve



NORMAL VALVE OPEN

As the heart contracts, the high pressure pushes the cusps of the valve open, allowing blood to flow.



NORMAL VALVE CLOSED

The pressure on the other side of the valve increases and the valve cusps snap shut, preventing backflow.

Restricted blood flow Valve partially open

fatty cores within the arterial wall, covered by

fibrous caps. The plaques narrow the space within

the artery, restricting the overall flow of blood to

turbulence that disrupts the flow of blood, and

more likely to clot. The major risk factors for

atherosclerosis include smoking, a diet high in saturated fats, lack of exercise, and excess weight.

the eddies over the plaque surface make the blood

tissues beyond the site. They also cause



STENOSIS

The valve stiffens and cannot open fully. Blood flow is restricted, so the heart beats harder to compensate.

- Valve partially closed
- Abnormal cusp

Blood leaks back through valve

INCOMPETENCE

The cusps do not close properly, and blood leaks backward. The heart must work harder to circulate blood.



EMBOLISM

Most emboli are fragments of a blood clot (thrombus), or even a whole clot, that has detached from its original site and traveled in the bloodstream to lodge in a blood vessel. An embolus may also be made of fatty material from an atheromatous plaque (see p.157) in an arterial wall, crystals of cholesterol, fatty bone marrow that has entered the circulation following a bone fracture, or an air bubble or amniotic fluid. In a pulmonary embolism, a clot originating elsewhere in the body travels in the veins to the lungs. Clots that form in the heart or arteries can block the blood circulation anywhere in the body. An embolus is most likely to block a blood

Embolus traveling to lung

Pulmonary artery

Path of embolus

THROMBOSIS

Thrombosis is the blockage of a blood vessel by a blood clot. It is most likely to occur where normal blood flow is disrupted, which may be due to plaques of fatty atheromatous tissue in the walls of an artery (see p.157) or inflammation of the blood vessel. The clot eventually narrows or blocks the passage for blood so that the tissues beyond are deprived of oxygen and nutrients.

Platelet

THROMBUS FORMATION

Thrombosis can occur in arteries and veins, but commonly happens at a site of atherosclerosis in an artery wall, which disrupts the normal blood flow.



Damage from atheroma (plaque)

INTERNAL DAMAGE

When an artery lining is damaged by rupture of a plaque, platelets in the area clump together and release chemicals that begin the clotting process.

vessel where it narrows or branches, depriving the tissues of oxygen beyond the site of the blockage. The symptoms of an embolism depend on the site affected.

PULMONARY EMBOLISM

A fragment of blood clot from a leg vein may travel through the veins to the heart's right side, then out along the pulmonary arteries to a lung.

Inferior vena cava

Path of embolus

Thrombotic embolus

A fragment (embolus) composed of blood clot (thrombotic) material may arise anywhere, but veins of the legs and pelvis are common sites

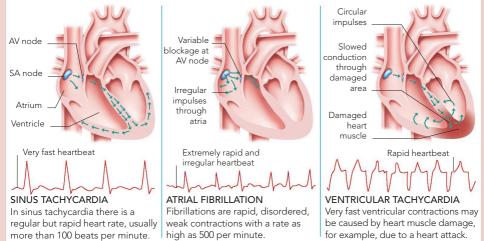
Fibrin strands

Thrombus blocking artery; thrombi can also form in veins

The chemicals help convert fibrinogen into insoluble fibrin strands, which trap blood cells, escalating clot formation.

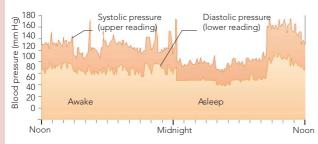
ARRHYTHMIA

An arrhythmia is a heart rate that is unusually slow or fast, or erratic. A normal heartbeat is initiated by specialized cells in the natural "pacemaker," the sinoatrial (SA) node, at the top of the right atrium. They send electrical impulses out through the atrial muscle tissue, stimulating it to contract. These signals are relayed by the atrioventricular (AV) node along nervelike fibers through the septum (central dividing wall) and into the thick muscle tissue of the ventricle walls. A fault in the system can lead to various arrhythmias, including those described here.



HYPERTENSION

Blood is under pressure as the heart pumps it around the circulation. In hypertension, this pressure is persistently above normal limits. There are no symptoms of hypertension at first, but despite this, over time it increases the risk of many serious disorders, such as stroke, heart disease, and kidney failure. Contributing factors



to hypertension include certain genetic influences and diet and lifestyle factors, such as being overweight, drinking excessive amounts of alcohol, smoking, and having a high-salt diet. Hypertension is most common in middle-aged and elderly people. A stressful lifestyle may aggravate the condition.

BLOOD PRESSURE GRAPH

Normal blood pressure varies according to activity levels. This graph shows that during sleep, both the systolic and diastolic pressures (see pp.154–155) are much lower.



OXYGEN IS VITAL FOR LIFE. THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM TRANSFERS OXYGEN FROM THE AIR TO THE BLOOD, AND THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM DISTRIBUTES IT, WHILE THE MUSCULAR AND SKELETAL SYSTEMS DRIVE THE MOVEMENTS OF BREATHING. THE AIR IS OFTEN CONTAMINATED WITH DUST PARTICLES, HARMFUL MICROBES, ALLERGENS, IRRITANTS, AND CANCER-CAUSING CHEMICALS. ALL OF THESE CAN DAMAGE THE SYSTEM'S DELICATE PARTS, MAKING RESPIRATORY DISORDERS AMONG THE MOST COMMON ILLNESSES.

RESPIRATORY SYSTEM



RESPIRATORY ANATOMY

RESPONSIBLE FOR SUPPLYING ALL BODY CELLS WITH ESSENTIAL OXYGEN AND REMOVING THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM, IN CLOSE CONJUNCTION WITH THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM, IS POTENTIALLY HARMFUL CARBON DIOXIDE FROM THE BODY.

The nostrils lead into the nasal cavity, which joins Air enters the body mainly through the nostrils. with the pharynx (throat). The larynx, home to the vocal cords, joins the pharynx to the primary bronchi, each taking air the trachea (windpipe). The trachea splits into two airways, known as to one lung. The bronchi divide bronchi, and eventually into into secondary and tertiary minute bronchioles. In the lungs, exchange of gases takes place in tiny sacs called alveoli.

Nose hairs

nostrils; help filter out large Situated inside entrance of particles of dust and debris

Epiglottis

Cartilage flap that tilts over entrance to drinks, and saliva from entering trachea larynx when swallowing, to keep food,

Larynx

vocal cords within it, the larynx plays a Short, cartilaginous tube joining pharynx with trachea; together with vital role in speech production

Nasal cavity

mucus-covered membrane that wo by central plate of cartilage epithelia in roof of cavity, which are the sensory organs of smell Main route for air to and from microorganisms; divided into (nasal septum); also contains ungs; lined with a sticky, patches called olfactory raps dust particles and

Allows passage Nasopharynx

Permits passage of Oropharynx of air only

Pharynx

begins at rear of nasal cavity and Short tube that ends at larynx voice box)

Permits passage of Laryngopharynx oods and fluids

oods and fluids

Vocal cord

Trachea Also called the windpipe, main airway to lungs; held open against pressure of surrounding organs by C-shaped rings of

cartilage

Twelve pairs of ribs curve Rib around chest to protect lungs and heart

Intercostal muscles

Double layer of muscles between each pair of ribs; used during breathing

Slightly larger than **Right lung** left lung, averaging 55-60 percent of total lung volume **Pleural cavity** Space occupied by lungs; lined with lubricated

double membranes

Pleural membrane Comprises two Diaphragm Dome-shaped muscle dividing chest and

enclosing each lung; lubricating fluid reduces friction during breathing membrane layers

body's main breathing abdomen; together with intercostal muscles, forms muscle; during contraction,

6 18 22

it flattens to increase size of chest cavity

Pulmonary vein (red) Vessel that carrie

oxygenated blood from ung to heart

Pulmonary artery (blue)

Vessel that transports deoxygenated blood to lung from heart

Primary bronchus

Situated outside each lung, main airway supplying lung

Secondary bronchus Division of one of the

two primary bronchi

Tertiary bronchus

Formed from the division of secondary bronchus

Lobes of left lung

Two lobes only, to make lung has three lobes) room for heart (right

Bronchioles

Terminals of bronchi; gas minuscule sacs (alveoli) exchange occurs in at their ends

pericardial cavity Nestled in Heart

Pericardial cavity

by a scooplike shape in left lung Space formed mainly

LUNGS

THE TWO SPONGELIKE LUNGS FILL MOST OF THE CHEST CAVITY AND ARE PROTECTED BY THE RIBS. THEIR ESSENTIAL FUNCTION IS GAS EXCHANGE—TAKING IN VITAL OXYGEN FROM THE AIR AND EXPELLING WASTE CARBON DIOXIDE.

LUNG STRUCTURE

Air enters the lungs from the trachea, which branches at its base into two main airways, the primary bronchi. Each primary bronchus enters its lung at a site called the hilum, which is also where the main blood vessels pass in and out of the lung. The primary bronchus divides into secondary bronchi, and these subdivide into tertiary bronchi, all decreasing in diameter. Many subsequent divisions form the narrowest airways: the terminal and then respiratory bronchioles, which distribute air to the alveoli.

Right lung Like left lung, has ten bronchopulmonary segments

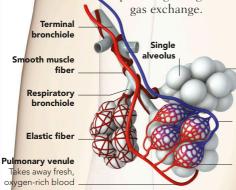
> Superior lobe Contains three bronchopulmonary segments

Horizontal fissure Between superior and middle lobes of right lung

ALVEOLI

The lungs' microscopic air sacs, known as alveoli, are elastic, thin-walled structures arranged in clumps at the ends of respiratory bronchioles. Around the alveoli are networks of capillaries. Oxygen passes from the air in the alveoli into the blood by diffusion through the alveolar and capillary walls (see p.166). Carbon dioxide diffuses from the blood into the alveoli. There are more than 300 million alveoli in both lungs,

providing a huge surface area for gas exchange.



Group of alveoli Consists of partly merged alveoli

Pulmonary arteriole Brings used, oxygen-poor blood to alveoli

Capillary network Gas exchange occurs here

Inferior lobe Contains five segments **Oblique fissure** Between middle and inferior lobes

Apex

Upper pointed tip of lung Trachea

Windpipe; carries air in and out of lungs

Left primary bronchus

Narrower and longer compared to right primary bronchus

Secondary _ (lobar) bronchus One of two airways, each supplying a lobe of left lung

Tertiary (segmental) bronchus

One of ten smaller airways; aerates a bronchopulmonary segment

> **Pulmonary arteries** Bring deoxygenated blood from heart

Pulmonary veins Send oxygenated, bright red blood to heart

Terminal bronchioles Tiny airways—about 30,000 in each lung;

30,000 in each lung; next-to-last divisions of segmental bronchi

Pleural membranes

Two membranes that cover each lung: visceral pleura wraps directly around lung; parietal pleura lines chest; separated by fluid Base Upcurved to accommodate diaphragm below

> Cardiac notch Space taken up by heart

Superior lobe

Oblique

fissure

Inferior lobe

X

Middle lobe Contains two bronchopulmonary segments

GAS EXCHANGE

THE BODY CANNOT STORE OXYGEN AND NEEDS CONTINUING SUPPLIES. IT ALSO CONSTANTLY PRODUCES CARBON DIOXIDE AS A WASTE PRODUCT. GAS EXCHANGE SWAPS OXYGEN AND CARBON DIOXIDE IN THE LUNGS AND TISSUES.

from tissues

to heart

Deoxygenated Oxygen is drawn into the body blood returns by the expanding lungs. When it reaches the end of the lungs' airways, the gas dissolves into the fluid lining the alveoli (air sacs). It passes into the blood for distribution to each body cell. Inside cells, the oxygen reacts with glucose to free its energy. Toxic carbon dioxide is a by-product of the process, but gas exchange discharges it into the air. In the lungs and body tissues, gases pass by diffusion: flowing from regions of high to low density.

Oxygen in air dissolves into fluid lining the alveolus and diffuses through alveolar wall and blood capillary wall

) Oxygen enters Fluid-lined Blood blood plasma capillary alveolus inside capillary (air sac)

Heart pumps deoxygenated blood into lungs

Oxygen-rich blood leaves heart

3 Oxygen quickly bonds to hemoglobin in red blood cells

Carbon dioxide diffuses out of blood plasma and enters air in alveolus

Cell of capillary wall Cell of alveolar wall

> Lower vena cava (one of the body's two main veins) returns deoxygenated blood from lower body to heart

Oxygen-rich blood returns to heart

Oxygen is

drawn into

trachea

Cxygenated blood Jeaves heart along the aorta (the body's main artery) and circulates to body tissues

EXCHANGE IN THE LUNGS

When fresh, oxygen-rich air reaches the alveoli-the tiny dead-end air spaces in the lungs—it must pass through several layers to reach the red cells in the blood. But these layers are so thin that the total distance is only ¹/₂₅₀₀ in (0.001 mm).

166

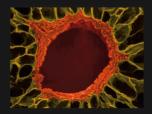
GAS EXCHANGE

EXCHANGE IN THE BODY TISSUES

Oxygen levels are higher in the blood than in surrounding tissues. The difference in levels forces oxygen to break its bonds to the hemoglobin in red blood cells and diffuse out of the blood into the adjacent cells. The reverse applies to carbon dioxide, which diffuses from the tissue into the blood plasma.

6 Oxygenated blood is carried through tissues in capillaries thinner than hair





7 Arriving red blood cells are rich in oxygen, which is bound to hemoglobin in the body of each cell

BRONCHIOLE AND ALVEOLI

This microview shows a crosssectioned bronchiole (red) surrounded by alveoli that have been cut through, so that they resemble air bubbles in a sponge.

8 Oxygen leaves the hemoglobin within the blood cells, and diffuses across capillary walls and into tissue cells P Carbon dioxide diffuses out of tissue cells, across wall of blood capillary, and into blood plasma

Capillary bed running through tissue

BREATHING AND VOCALIZATION

THE MOVEMENTS OF BREATHING, ALSO KNOWN AS RESPIRATION, BRING FRESH AIR CONTAINING OXYGEN DEEP INTO THE LUNGS AND THEN REMOVE STALE AIR CONTAINING THE WASTE PRODUCT CARBON DIOXIDE.

BREATHING

The movement of air into and out of the lungs is generated by differences in pressure within the lungs compared to the surrounding atmospheric pressure. These differences are produced by forcefully expanding the lungs by muscular action, and then passively allowing them to return to their former size. The rate and depth of breathing can be consciously modified. However, the underlying need to breathe is controlled by an area of the brain where responses to regulate the breathing muscles occur according to the levels of carbon dioxide and oxygen in the blood.

Lung Expands as diaphragm pulls down and ribs move up and out

Diaphragm Contracts and becomes flatter to stretch lungs downward

INHALATION

The chief muscles used in respiration at rest are the diaphragm at the base of the chest and the external intercostals between the ribs. For forceful inhalation, additional muscles assist in moving the ribs and sternum to expand the chest further and stretch the lungs even more.

Sternocleidomastoid

Pulls collarbone (clavicle) and sternum up to enlarge upper chest cavity

Scalenes

Three scalene muscles help elevate the uppermost two ribs

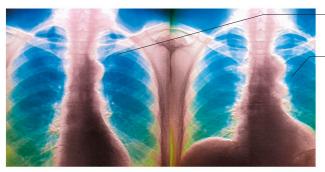
Pectoralis minor

Pulls up the third, fourth, and fifth ribs

External intercostals Narrow the gaps between ribs, making them swing up and out

Ribs

Tilt up and out to expand chest



Chest cavity expands as diaphragm and intercostal muscles contract

Chest cavity decreases in size as diaphragm and intercostal muscles relax

DIAPHRAGM MOVEMENT

The abdominal contents (dark area at the bottom of this X-ray) are flattened by the diaphragm muscle during inhalation (left) and then rise up during exhalation (right).

EXHALATION

Breathing out is largely passive. Like a stretched elastic band, the enlarged lungs recoil and shrink when the diaphragm, intercostals, and other inhalation muscles relax, and abdominal pressure pushes the diaphragm upward. Forced expiration brings further muscles into play, to actively compress the lungs beyond their usual resting volume.

Lung Shrinks with diminishing chest cavity volume

Diaphragm Relaxes and pushes up into dome shape Trachea

Stiff cartilage rings keep airways open under negative pressure

Sternum

Moves down and inward as ribs return to resting position

> **Internal intercostals** Pull ribs down for forced exhalation

Ribs

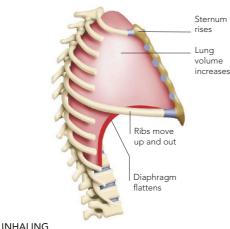
Are drawn in and tilt down

Rectus abdominis

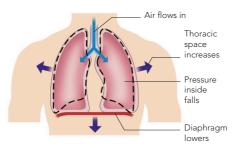
Pulls on ribs five to seven and sternum, to depress rib cage and assist expiration

VOLUME AND PRESSURE

Breathing alters the volume of the chest (thoracic cavity). The lungs "suck" onto the inner chest wall, so that as the cavity expands, they also become larger. The main expanding forces are provided by the diaphragm and intercostal muscles. At rest, the diaphragm carries out most of the work, as 17 floz (0.5 liters) of air—the tidal volume—shifts in and out with each breath (12 to 17 times every minute). Rate



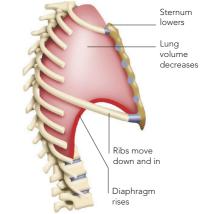
The diaphragm contracts to become less domelike, while the ribs swing upward and outward with a "bucket handle" action to raise the sternum



NEGATIVE PRESSURE

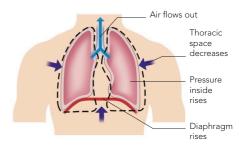
As the lung volume increases, the air pressure within decreases. Atmospheric pressure outside the body is now higher, and air is drawn down the airways and into the lungs-in effect, air is "sucked" in.

and volume increase automatically if the body needs more oxygen, as during exercise. Then forced inspiration can suck in an extra 70 fl oz (2 liters), and forced expiration expels almost as much, leading to a total air shift, or vital capacity, of more than 150 floz (4.5 liters) in a large, healthy adult. The breathing rate can triple, producing a total air exchange more than 20 times greater than at rest.



EXHALING

The diaphragm relaxes, and the elastic, stretched lungs recoil to become smaller again, allowing the sternum and ribs to move down and inward



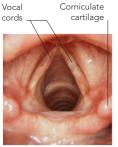
POSITIVE PRESSURE

As the lung volume diminishes when exhaling, the air is compressed, which raises its pressure within the lungs. So the air is pushed back along the airways and out of the nose and mouth.

VOCALIZATION

The vocal cords are two bands of fibrous tissue within the larynx. During breathing they are separated by a V-shaped gap (the glottis). Sound is produced when the cords tighten together and vibrate as air from the lungs passes between them. Pitch varies according to the tension in the cords. The false vocal cords above help close off the larynx during swallowing.

Vocal



CORDS APART A laryngoscope view shows the vocal cords during normal breathing, when air passes through the gap between them.



False vocal

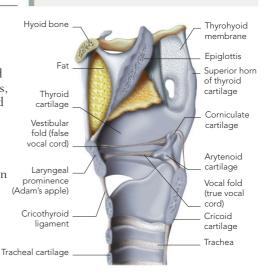
CORDS ADJACENT Laryngeal muscles swing the arytenoid cartilages, to which the vocal cords are attached, and bring them together.

RESPIRATORY REFLEXES

The respiratory reflexes of coughing and sneezing aim to blow out excess mucus, dust, irritants, and obstructions—coughing from the lower pharynx, larynx, trachea, and lung airways, and sneezing from the nasal chambers and nasopharynx. For a cough, the lower pharynx, epiglottis, and larynx close so that air pressure builds up in the lungs, and is released explosively, rattling the vocal cords. In a sneeze, the tongue closes off the mouth, to force air up and out through the nose.



MUCUS SPRAY Coughs (as shown here) and sneezes propel a spray of tiny mucus droplets from the respiratory airways for distances of up to 10ft (3 m).



THE LARYNX

The larynx is sited between the pharynx and the trachea. It has a framework of nine cartilages, comprising the paired arytenoids, cuneiforms, and corniculates, and the unpaired epiglottic, thyroid, and cricoid. The thyroid cartilage forms a prominent mound under the skin of the neck, called the "Adam's apple," which is larger and more pronounced in adult males. The cartilages are held in position by numerous muscles and ligaments.

INTERNAL STRUCTURE

The larynx forms a hollow chamber through which air flows silently during normal breathing. The areas of cartilage tilt to bring the vocal cords together for speech.

RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

RESPIRATORY DISORDERS

MILLIONS OF MICROBES FLOAT IN THE AIR, AND EACH BREATH BRINGS THOSE PARTICLES INTO THE RESPIRATORY TRACT, HEIGHTENING THE RISK OF A RESPIRATORY INFECTION, OTHER TYPES OF RESPIRATORY DISORDERS INCLUDE DAMAGE CAUSED BY ALLERGIES OR IRRITANTS, AND CANCERS.

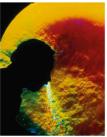
COMMON COLD

The common cold is one of the most frequently experienced illnesses but also generally one of the less serious. At least 200 different and highly contagious types of virus can cause the problem. They spread in fluid that floats through air, in tiny droplets of mucus coughed or sneezed out by people with colds, and also in films of moisture transferred from person to person by close contact, such as shaking hands, or via shared objects, such as cups. Symptoms involve frequent sneezing, a runny nose, which at first runs with a clear, thin

Virus particle

Cell of

discharge that may later become thicker and greenish yellow, a headache, slightly raised temperature, and perhaps a sore throat, cough, and reddened eves. Antibiotic drugs are ineffective because they do not work against viruses. Cold viruses change (mutate) so rapidly that even if antiviral drugs could be made to tackle existing strains, they would be ineffective against the new ones. Most cold remedies, such as decongestants and inhalants, treat the symptoms while the body's immune system attacks the invading microbes.



SPREADING INFECTION Coughs and sneezes can rapidly spread common cold viruses by spraying them up to 10ft (3m) in mucous droplets.

nasal lining VIRUS INVADES CELLS Virus particles in air land on and invade the cells lining the

nose and throat They rapidly replicate, killing their host cells

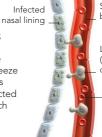
Multiplied virus particles

particles infect new cells

Released virus

WHITE CELLS

Defensive white blood cells squeeze out of capillaries toward the infected lining cells, which are producing thin mucus

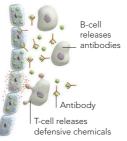


Swollen blood vessel

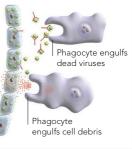
Lymphocyte (white blood cell)

Red blood cell

3 ANTIBODY PRODUCTION White blood cells known as B-cells produce antibodies. which immobilize the virus: other white blood cells destroy infected cells.



CLEARING UP Other white blood cells called phagocytes engulf virus particles. damaged nasal lining cells, and other debris. The cold subsides.

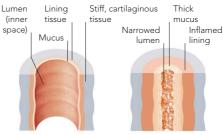


INFLUENZA

Influenza is primarily an upper respiratory tract infection, but it also has body-wide symptoms: raised temperature, sensations of being hot and sweaty and then cold with shivers, muscle aches, and exhaustion. Even after the main infection has cleared up, there may be lingering depression and fatigue. The influenza viruses are coded A, B, and C and are very contagious. Influenza A tends to produce regular outbreaks and can also affect domestic animals such as pigs, horses, and fowl. Influenza B usually causes more sporadic outbreaks in places where many people gather and interact. Influenza C is less likely to produce serious symptoms. The type A virus is most likely to change or mutate. People at risk of dangerous complications, such as the very young or elderly, can be vaccinated before the main risk time of the winter season. Because the virus can mutate, new vaccines are prepared annually.

ACUTE BRONCHITIS

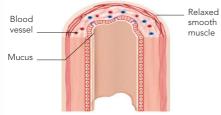
Bronchitis is inflammation of the larger airways (bronchi) in the lungs. The disorder may be a complication of a respiratory infection. Its acute form develops rapidly, with symptoms including a sputum-producing cough, tight chest, wheezing, and mild fever. Healthy adults usually recover in a few days.



NORMAL BRONCHUS The airway lining secretes a thin layer of mucus. The passageway (lumen) allows free air flow. INFLAMED BRONCHUS The airway lining swells and produces excess mucus, which may be coughed up.

ASTHMA

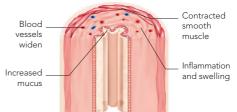
Asthma is an inflammatory lung disease that causes recurrent attacks of breathlessness and wheezing due to narrowed airways. Some people have the occasional slight episode; others are prone to severe and even life-threatening attacks. The muscle in the walls of the airways contracts spasmodically, causing constriction of the tubes.



HEALTHY AIRWAY

The bronchiole has relaxed smooth muscle in its walls and a thin coating of protective mucus covering the lining. The passage of air is unrestricted.

The narrowing is worsened by the secretion of excess mucus. Most cases develop in childhood and may be linked to allergy-based problems such as eczema. In many children, the trigger for an attack is an allergic reaction to a foreign substance, such as inhaled particles of pollen, animal hair, or house dust mite droppings.



ASTHMATIC AIRWAY

In an asthma attack, the muscle wall contracts and inflammation causes swelling of the airway lining. The mucus thickens, further narrowing the airway.

LUNG CANCER

The most common cause of lung cancer responsible for almost 9 in 10 cases—is tobacco smoke. In the past, lung cancer was far more common in men than women, because more men than women smoked. However, as more women have taken up smoking this effect has reduced. The disease is also becoming increasingly common in developing countries, with the spread of tobacco smoking and growing urban populations. Many inhaled irritants trigger the growth of abnormal cells in the lungs, but cigarette smoke contains thousands of

known carcinogenic (cancercausing)substances. In rare cases, lung cancer is caused by asbestos, toxic chemicals, or the radioactive gas radon. A persistent cough is usually the earliest symptom. Because most people who develop lung cancer are smokers, this is often dismissed as a "smoker's cough." Other symptoms include coughing up blood, wheezing, weight loss, persistent hoarseness, and chest pain. If tests confirm the presence of lung cancer, a lobectomy (removal of a lung lobe) or pneumonectomy (removal of a whole lung) may be performed. This is usually advised only if the tumor is small and has not spread. Chemotherapy and radiotherapy may be given alone, or in combination.

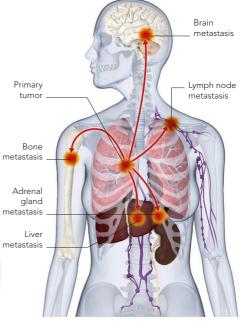
SPREADING CANCER CELLS

Tiny airborne carcinogenic particles lodge in the airways and contribute to the development of cancerous cells. Some of these cells may break away and travel in the blood or lymph to trigger secondary tumors.

Carcinogens

Alveolus

Capillary



THE SPREAD OF LUNG CANCER Lung cancer can spread (metastasize) to other parts of the body. Metastases in bones can cause pain and fractures; in the brain, headaches and confusion; and in the liver, weight loss and jaundice.

White blood cell

CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE

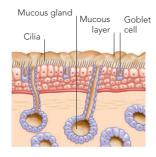
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) consists primarily of chronic bronchitis and emphysema, two conditions that usually occur together. In this disorder there is progressive damage to lung tissue, causing restricted airflow in and out of the lungs and shortness of breath.

CHRONIC BRONCHITIS

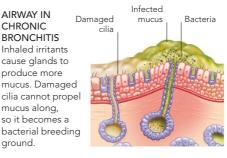
In chronic bronchitis, the main airways leading to the lungs, the bronchi, become inflamed, congested, and narrowed due to irritation caused by tobacco smoke, frequent infections, or prolonged exposure to pollutants. The inflamed airways begin to produce too much mucus (sputum), resulting in a typical cough that at first

NORMAL AIRWAY LINING

Glands produce mucus that traps inhaled dust and germs. Tiny surface hairs (cilia) propel the mucus up into the throat, where it is coughed up or swallowed.



is troublesome mostly in damp, cold months but then persists throughout the year. Symptoms such as hoarseness, wheezing, and breathlessness also develop. Eventually a person becomes short of breath even at rest. If a secondary respiratory infection develops, the sputum may change appearance from clear or white to yellow or green.



EMPHYSEMA

In emphysema, the air sacs (alveoli) become overstretched. They rupture and merge, which reduces their oxygen-absorbing surfaces and makes gas exchange less efficient. Air also becomes trapped inside them, the lungs over-inflate, and the volume of air moving in and out of the lungs is

HEALTHY TISSUE The alveoli are grouped, like grapes, and each tiny sac is partly separate from the others. The walls are thin and elastic so they can stretch. reduced. Most people affected by emphysema are long-term heavy smokers, although a rare inherited condition called alpha1-antitrypsin deficiency can also cause the disorder. The lung damage is usually irreversible, but giving up smoking may slow the progression of the disease.

DAMAGED

TISSUE Smoke or other pollutants stimulate chemicals that cause the alveolar walls to break down, reducing the area for gas exchange. Enlarged alveoli

collapsed alveolar walls



FEW BODY PARTS RENEW AS RAPIDLY AS THE SKIN. EVERY MONTH THE OUTER LAYER OF EPIDERMIS IS COMPLETELY REPLACED, AT A RATE OF 30,000 FLAKELIKE DEAD CELLS PER MINUTE. THE HAIR AND NAILS ARE LIKEWISE SELF-RENEWING. SKIN REFLECTS ASPECTS OF GENERAL HEALTH, ESPECIALLY DIET AND LIFESTYLE. INTERNAL DISORDERS OR EXTERNAL FACTORS CAN CAUSE PROBLEMS SUCH AS RASHES, SPOTS, AND SORES. SKIN GROWTHS MAY FOLLOW EXPOSURE TO HARMFUL CHEMICALS OR TO ULTRAVIOLET AND OTHER HAZARDOUS RADIATION.

SKIN, HAIR, AND NAILS

SKIN, HAIR, AND NAILS

SKIN, HAIR, AND NAIL STRUCTURE

THE SKIN IS ONE OF THE LARGEST ORGANS OF THE BODY, WEIGHING 6-9LB (3-4KG) AND WITH A SURFACE AREA OF ALMOST 21 SQ FT (2 M²). IT IS FORMED FROM MANY TYPES OF CELLS, SOME OF WHICH PRODUCE HAIR AND NAIL TISSUE.



SKIN SECTION

This micrograph shows three hair follicles and globules of sebum in the dermis (blue), with the thin epidermis (purple) on top.

SKIN STRUCTURE

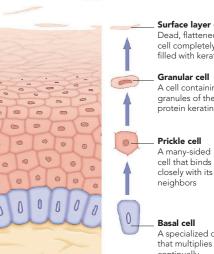
The skin is not just a thin, waterproof covering but a complex organ consisting of a variety of specialized cells. The skin's thickness varies from about $\frac{1}{50}$ in (0.5 mm) on delicate areas such as the evelids, to $\frac{1}{5}$ in (5 mm) or more on areas of wear and tear, such as the soles of the feet. Skin has two main layers: the outer epidermis, the main function of which is protection, and the underlying dermis. The dermis contains thousands of sensors that are sensitive to touch. It also contains sweat glands and blood vessels, which play a vital role in temperature regulation. Under the dermis is a layer known as subcutaneous fat. This acts as a buffer and provides insulation against extreme heat and cold.

SKIN RENEWAL

The epidermis continually renews and replaces itself. The basal layer consists of boxlike cells that multiply quickly and are gradually pushed up to the surface by new cells forming below. As the cells move upward, they develop tiny prickles that bind them together. They then flatten and fill with a waterproofing protein called keratin. Finally, the cells die, and reach the surface resembling interlocking roof tiles. As they flake away with wear and tear, more cells arrive to replace them.

EPIDERMAL LAYERS

The procession of skin cells from base to surface creates four layers (five in areas of great friction, such as the palms and soles) in the epidermis. As each cell moves upward, it fills with keratin.



Surface layer cell Dead, flattened cell completely filled with keratin

Granular cell A cell containing granules of the protein keratin



STRUCTURE OF SKIN

A patch of skin the size of a fingernail contains 5 million cells of at least a dozen main kinds, 100 sweat glands, 1,000 touch sensors, 100-plus hairs with sebaceous

glands, up to $3^{1/3}$ ft (1 m) of tiny blood vessels, and about $1^{2/3}$ ft (0.5 m) of nerve fibers.

Touch sensor Specialized nerve ending at edge of epidermis; other touch sensor types lie deeper in dermis. Hair shaft Part of hair that projects above skin surface

Arrector pili muscle

Tiny muscle that pulls up hair when cold

Sweat

Drops of perspiration ooze from sweat pores

Basal epidermal layer

Layer in which fast cell division renews epidermis above

Epidermal surface Cornified laver

of flat, dead skin cells

Capillaries

Tiny blood vessels that supply oxygen and nutrients to tissues and collect waste

Epidermis

Outer protective layer consisting of tough, flat cells

Dermis

Layer containing blood vessels, glands, and nerve endings

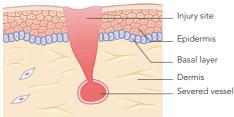
Subcutaneous fat Acts as an insulator,

shock absorber, and energy store

Hair bulb Lowest part of hair, where growth occurs Hair follicle Pouch of epidermis at root of hair **Sebaceous gland** Produces sebum that protects hair and lubricates skin Sweat gland Coiled knot of tubes secreting watery sweat Arteriole Supplies oxygenated blood Venule Carries away waste

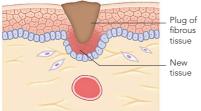
SKIN REPAIR

If the skin surface is breached, contents leak from damaged cells and stimulate the repair process. Platelets in the blood and the blood-clotting protein fibrinogen together form a mesh of fibers that traps red cells as the beginning of a clot.



1 INJURY

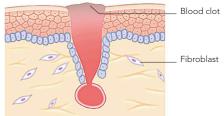
I The wound breaks open cells and releases their contents. These components attract various defense and repair cells.



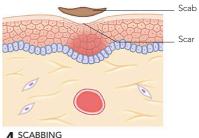
O Fibroblasts produce a plug of fibrous tissue within the clot, which contracts and shrinks. New tissue begins to form beneath.

NAIL STRUCTURE

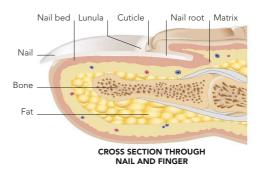
Fingernails and toenails are hard plates made of a tough protein called keratin. Growth takes place under a fold of flesh (cuticle) at the nail base. The nail matrix adds keratinized cells to the nail root, and the whole nail is continuously pushed forward along the nail bed toward its free edge. Most nails grow about ¹/₅₀in (0.5 mm) each week, with fingernails lengthening faster than toenails. Tissue-forming fibroblast cells collect in the area, as do white cells called neutrophils, which ingest cell debris and foreign matter such as dirt and germs. The clot gradually hardens and expels fluid to become a scab, as the skin heals.



Blood seeps from the vessel and forms a clot. Fibroblasts multiply and migrate to the damaged area.

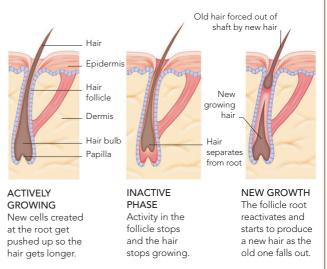


4 The plug hardens and dries into a scab, which eventually detaches. A scar may remain, but usually fades with time.



HAIR GROWTH

Hairs are rods of dead cells filled with keratin. The root, or bulb, is buried in a pit, the follicle. As extra cells add to the root, the hair lengthens. Different kinds of hairs grow at varying rates, with scalp hairs lengthening about ¹/100 in (0.3 mm) each day. Hair does not grow continuously. After three to four years, the follicle goes into a rest phase and the hair may fall out. Three to six months later, the follicle activates again and begins to produce a new hair.



TEMPERATURE REGULATION

One of the skin's functions is to help maintain a constant body temperature. If the body is too hot, blood vessels in the dermis widen (vasodilate) to allow extra blood flow so more heat can be lost from the surface, and sweat glands produce more

sweat, which evaporates, drawing away body heat. If the body is cold, the skin's blood vessels narrow (vasoconstrict) to minimize heat loss, and sweating is reduced. Tiny hairs are pulled upright by the arrector pili muscles to trap an insulating layer of air.

Hair lies flatter

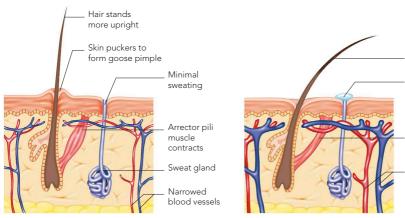
Increased

sweating

Arrector pili

Widened blood vessels

muscle relaxes



FEELING COLD

Tiny body hairs are raised, creating goose pimples at their bases. The skin's blood vessels constrict, reducing blood flow, and sweat glands reduce their activity.

FEELING HOT

Tiny body hairs lie flatter and the goose pimples disappear. The blood vessels widen, increasing blood flow, and sweat glands increase sweat production.

SKIN AND EPITHELIAL TISSUES

SKIN PROTECTS THE UNDERLYING TISSUES AND ALSO PROVIDES THE SENSE OF TOUCH. IT IS A SPECIALIZED TYPE OF EPITHELIUM. EPITHELIAL TISSUES OCCUR THROUGHOUT THE BODY, PROVIDING COVERINGS AND LININGS FOR BODY PARTS AND ORGANS.

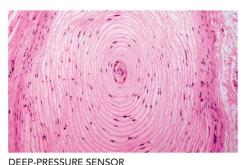
COMPLEXITIES OF TOUCH

The sense of touch is based in the lower of the skin layers, the dermis. Microsensors the endings of tiny nerve cells—in the dermis detect various physical changes, from light contact to heavy, painful pressure. On average, a skin patch the size of a fingernail contains about 1,000 receptors. However, the skin on the fingertips has more than 3,000 receptors that detect light touch for precise feeling. There are also receptor fibers



are also receptor incrs around the bases of hairs, in the follicles (pits) within the dermis. Different types of receptor respond more readily to certain types of stimulation, but almost all respond to most stimuli.

LIGHT-TOUCH SENSOR This microscope view shows a Meissner's corpuscle (green) in a fingertip. It is important for light, discriminatory touch.



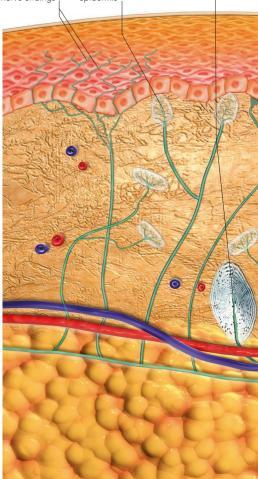
Pacinian corpuscles have a multilayered structure and are the largest skin receptors, in some areas being more than 1/25 in (1 mm) long.

Superficial nerve endings Penetrate the

Penetrate the epidermis; occur everywhere in the skin and include free nerve endings

Meissner's corpuscle

Upper dermal nerve ending; mostly located just below the base of the epidermis Pacinian corpuscle Located deep in the dermis



SKIN MICRORECEPTORS

Deformation of the layers within a receptor, and expansion or contraction as a result of temperature changes, generate nerve impulses. The impulses travel along the receptor's nerve fiber, which joins with bundles of other fibers in the deep dermis or tissue layers below. Most receptors "fire" nerve signals infrequently and irregularly when not stimulated, increasing their firing rate when the skin is touched.



Epidermis

Layer of constantly renewing cells; multiply at base: harden and die as they move outward

Merkel's disk receptor

Junction nerve ending; sited just above or below the boundary between epidermis and dermis

Ruffini corpuscle

Mid-dermal nerve ending: mostly scattered through the middle or lower layers of the dermis

Dermis

Mix of collagen, elastin, and other connective tissue: houses most of the touch receptors

Blood vessel

Brings nutrients and oxygen to the skin layers and touch receptors

Nerve fiber

Receptors' nerve fibers gather into bundles: these convey signals to the main nerves

TYPES OF SENSOR

Each type of microsensor is set at a particular depth in the dermis that best suits its function. The largest receptors, Pacinian corpuscles, are located at the deepest level, near the base of the dermis. Sensors for light touch are located near or just within the epidermal laver.

Free nerve endings Branching, usually

unsheathed sensors of temperature, light touch, pressure, and pain. They are found all over the body and in all types of connective tissue.

Meissner's corpuscle

Encapsulated nerve

ending in the skin's

on the palms, soles, lips, eyelids, external genitals, and nipples. It responds to light pressure.





Merkel's disc

Naked (unencapsulated) receptors, usually in the upper dermis or lower epidermis, especially in nonhairy areas. They sense faint touch and light pressure.

Ruffini corpuscle

Encapsulated receptor in the skin and deeper tissue that reacts to continuous touch and pressure. In joint capsules, it responds to rotational movement

Pacinian corpuscle

Large, covered receptor located deep in the dermis, as well as in the bladder wall, and near joints and muscles. It senses stronger, more sustained pressure.









EPITHELIUM

Epithelial tissue, also called epithelium, is an important structural element that acts as a lining or covering for other body tissues. Epithelium can be classified according to the shape and layout pattern of individual cells (see opposite), and also by the arrangement of cells into one or more layers. Most epithelial tissues form

PSEUDOSTRATIFIED EPITHELIUM

This type of columnar epithelium seems to be arranged in vertical layers. However, it actually consists of a single layer of cells of varying shapes and heights. The nuclei (control centers) of the different cell types are also at different levels, creating a layered (stratified) effect. Taller cells may be specialized into mucus-making goblet cells or ciliated cells that trap foreign particles. This type of epithelium occurs in the airway linings, and in the excretory and male reproductive passages and ducts. membranes and are specialized for protection, absorption, or secretion. They do not contain blood vessels, and their cells are usually anchored to, and stabilized by, a basement membrane. There may be other cell types present, such as goblet cells that secrete blobs of mucus for release onto the surface.



Rounded epithelial cell

BLADDER LINING

The electron micrograph shows the tightly packed epithelial cells of the bladder lining. They are soft and pliable, enabling them to stretch as the bladder fills with urine.

TRANSITIONAL EPITHELIUM

Surface of

goblet cell

Cilia

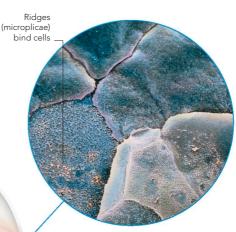
This epithelial tissue is similar to layered (stratified) epithelium, but is able to stretch without tearing. There are usually columnar cells in the basal layer, which become more rounded in the upper layers. As these layers stretch, the cells flatten, or become more squamous. Transitional epithelium is well suited to the urinary system, where it lines areas within the kidneys, ureters, bladder, and urethra. It allows these organs to bulge as urine flows through at pressure. The epithelium also secretes mucus that protects it from acidic urine

SIMPLE AND LAYERED EPITHELIUM

Simple epithelium is composed of a single layer of cells. This type of tissue is often found in areas where substances need to pass through easily, a single-cell thickness offering minimal resistance. For example, in the air sacs in the lungs, simple epithelium allows the exchange of gases to take place. Layered (stratified) epithelium has two or more layers, and is better for protection in areas such as the mouth or esophagus. Some complex epithelium has more than five layers, but two or three is more usual. The cells may be different shapes in the different layers.

CORNEA STRUCTURE

The epithelium covering the cornea is transparent and about five layers thick. It permits light rays to enter the eye.



Retina

EPITHELIUM IN THE EYE

The eye contains two types of epithelium: simple epithelium in the pigmented layer of the retina, and stratified squamous epithelium in the domed front "window" of the cornea.

TYPES OF EPITHELIAL CELL

The cells that make up the epithelial layers are usually classified according to their shape. Since most epithelial cells, as a consequence of their

Squamous

Platelike or flattened cells, wider than deep, resembling paving slabs or random paving; flattened nucleus.

Features: Cells allow selective diffusion, or permeability, allowing certain substances to pass, owing to thinness of the layer.

Cuboidal

Cube- or box-shaped cells, occasionally hexagonal or polygonal; nucleus usually in cell center.

Features: Substances absorbed from one side of the layer can be altered as they pass through the cytoplasm of the cuboidal cells, before leaving. locations in the body, are subject to friction, compression, and similar physical wear and tear, they divide rapidly to replace themselves.

Columnar

Tall, slim cells, often square, rectangular, or polygonal; large, oval nucleus near cell base.

Cornea

Features: Protect and separate other tissues; may be topped with cilia for movement of fluid outside the cell or microvilli for absorption.

Glandular

Epithelial cells modified for secretion, usually cuboidal or columnar with secretory granules or vacuoles.

Features: Layers of these cells may be infolded to form pits, pockets, grooves, or ducts, as in sweat glands.

SKIN AND HAIR DEFENSIVE FUNCTIONS

Skin is the body's first line of defense against potential harm. As such, it is well equipped to prevent physical damage due to its supple, cushioned qualities. The epidermal cells that form skin's outermost layers are tightly knit together but allow a certain amount of pliability. The cells are almost entirely full of the tough protein keratin, which resists attack by many kinds of chemicals. The natural secretion of sebum from the millions of sebaceous glands, each associated with a hair follicle, is slightly oily at body temperature and spreads easily. It furnishes the skin with partially water-repellent and antibiotic qualities, inhibiting the growth of certain microorganisms, and prevents hairs from becoming too brittle.

SCALP HAIR

Head hairs help keep rainwater from the scalp, absorb or deflect some of the energy in impacts and blows, and shield the head from extremes of temperature.



EYEBROWS AND EYELASHES

The arch of relatively coarse, fast-growing eyebrow hairs helps divert sweat or rainwater on the forehead that might trickle into the eyes. Eyelashes produce swirling air currents when blinking, which push floating particles away from the eye surface. Sebum oils and waxes

Mixture of lipid-rich secretions (palmitic, stearic, oleic, linoleic, and other fatty acids) softens and lubricates skin and repels water

> **Toenails** Made of almost solid keratin

Thick epidermis

Basal cell layer

Dermis

THICKENED SKIN

Areas of skin subjected to regular pressure respond by thickening their epidermis for greater protection and buffering, as in this magnified image of skin from the foot.

ULTRAVIOLET DEFENSES

The Sun's rays include a spectrum of color wavelengths, as well as infrared or IR rays and ultraviolet, UV, rays. Both UV-A and UV-B wavelengths are invisible, but exposure to the latter, in particular, is linked to skin cancers. Skin's defense is its dark pigment, melanin. This forms a screen in the upper epidermis and shields the multiplying cells in the base of the epidermis.

MELANIN PRODUCTION

Melanocytes are melanin-producing cells in the base of the epidermis. They make parcels of melanin granules, known as melanosomes, which pass into surrounding cells.

SKIN PIGMENTATION

Skin color depends on the type and quantity of two melanin pigments reddish pheomelanin and brown-black eumelanin—in the epidermis, and on the way the pigment granules are distributed. Each melanocyte has fingerlike dendrites that touch surrounding cells (basal keratinocytes). The melanocyte produces

COLOR VARIATION

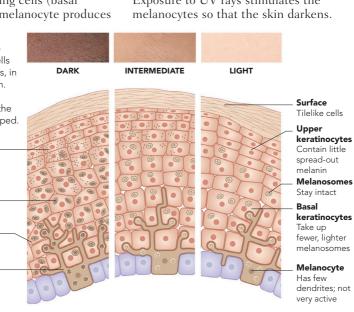
Darker skin tends to have larger melanin-making cells with denser melanosomes, in comparison to lighter skin. The former release their pigment granules, while the latter's granules stay clumped.

> Upper keratinocytes Have evenly spread melanin

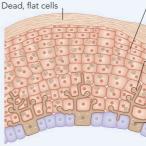
Melanosomes Release melanin granules Basal keratinocytes

Take up more melanosomes

Melanocyte Has many dendrites and is active



Surface



Melanin granules Disperse in cell:

cell flattens and fills with keratin

Dendrite

Cell projection distributes melanosomes to nearby cells

Melanocyte Cell body makes melanosomes

pigment granules within organelles called melanosomes. These move along the dendrites and into nearby cells. Darker skin has larger melanocytes with more melanosomes. Lighter skin has smaller melanocytes and fewer melanosomes. Exposure to UV rays stimulates the melanocytes so that the skin darkens.

SKIN DISORDERS

SKIN CONTAINS SOME OF THE FASTEST-MULTIPLYING CELLS IN THE BODY. SEVERAL OF ITS DISORDERS, SUCH AS MOLES, RESULT FROM PROBLEMS IN THIS SELF-RENEWAL SYSTEM. THE SKIN IS ALSO SUSCEPTIBLE TO INJURY, ALLERGIC REACTION IN THE FORM OF RASHES, AND INFECTIONS.

RASHES

Some skin rashes are localized, while others are more widespread. Often, the cause of a rash is not clear. The condition may affect quality of life and require long-term control with self-help measures and medication. Psoriasis is a widespread, patchy rash that flares up at intervals. Episodes may be triggered by infection, injury, stress, or as a side effect of drug treatment. Eczema is one of the most common rashes, especially in children. It is often linked to allergic conditions such as asthma and rhinitis (hay fever). Impetigo is a blistering of the skin caused by bacterial infection, typically through a cut, a cold sore (*Herpes simplex* virus), or scratched, weeping eczema. In vitiligo, the body makes antibodies that attack the skin's pigment-making cells, or melanocytes. It occurs in patchy areas over the body; in about one-third of cases, the pigmentation spontaneously returns.



PSORIASIS

There are several types of psoriasis, mostly characterized by intermittently itchy patches of red, thickened, scaly skin, as dead epidermal cells accumulate. Common sites are the knees, elbows, lower back, scalp, and behind the ears.



ECZEMA

A typical eczema rash is inflamed and itchy, with small fluid-filled blisters or episodes of dry, scaly, thickened, and cracked skin. Common sites are the hands and creased areas of skin, such as the wrists, elbows, and knees. The condition is also known as dermatitis.



IMPETIGO

This bacterial infection is common on the face, most often around the nose and mouth. The skin develops fluid-filled blisters, which burst. This stage is followed by redness, weeping, and crusting that may itch.



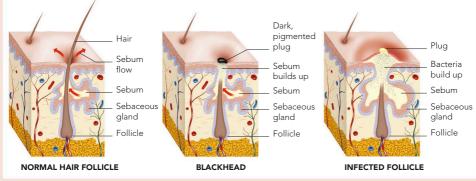
VITILIGO

Depigmented patches of skin develop over months or years, especially on the face and hands. The areas are more distinct in people with dark skin. They do not carry any medical risks to health.

SKIN DISORDERS

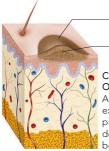
ACNE

In acne vulgaris, the sebaceous glands produce an excessive amount of the oily-waxy secretion sebum. This reacts in contact with air and forms a plug in the skin pore, which may appear dark with pigmentation (not dirt), as a blackhead or comedone, or pale, as a whitehead. A combination of trapped sebum, dead skin cells, and bacterial infection inflame the area, and a pustule develops. Acne is a common problem at puberty, when hormone surges cause increased sebum output.



MOLE

A mole, or nevus, is a localized overproduction and aggregation of the skin's pigment cells (melanocytes), with increased amounts of melanin pigment. Moles are very common—most adults have 10–20 moles by the age of 30 years. They can occur almost anywhere on the body and are variable in size, but usually less than $\frac{2}{3}$ in (1 cm) across. Rarely, moles become malignant (cancerous); any change in size or appearance, itching, or bleeding should be discussed with a doctor.



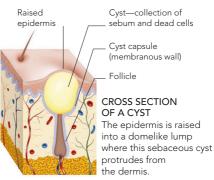
Raised pigmented area Pigment cells

CROSS SECTION OF A MOLE

Although raised to the exterior, the area of pigmentation in this mole does not extend to cells beneath the epidermis.

CYST

The most common type of cyst is a sebaceous cyst that forms in a hair follicle. A cyst contains sebaceous secretions and dead cells, which are restrained in a strong, baglike capsule. Its surface mound is usually smooth, and some cysts have a paler or darker central region. Common sites include the scalp, face, trunk, and genitals, although they can occur just about anywhere. Treatment may be needed if the cyst becomes enlarged, unsightly, painful, or infected.

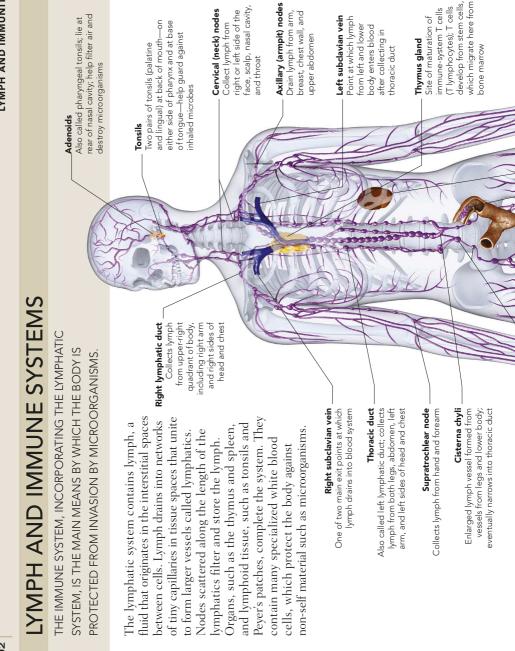




THE HUMAN BODY IS PROTECTED BOTH BY ITS SKIN AND BY THE LYMPH AND IMMUNE SYSTEMS. EVERY DAY IT IS OPEN TO ATTACK. EXTERNALLY, THERE IS THE DAILY BATTLE AGAINST PHYSICAL HARM. INTERNALLY, THERE ARE GERMS THAT HAVE GAINED ENTRY, AND THE BODY'S OWN CELLS, WHICH CAN TURN AGAINST IT. THE IMMUNE SYSTEM FIGHTS ON BOTH THESE FRONTS, CHIEFLY WITH ROVING WHITE BLOOD CELLS. THEIR TRANSPORT AND SUPPLY NETWORKS USE THE BLOOD AS WELL AS THE FLUID, VESSELS, AND NODES OF THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM.

LYMPH AND IMMUNITY





192



AUXILIARY IMMUNE SYSTEM

immune system that includes the skin, microscopic against invading microbes. They form an auxiliary Many organs have a role in protecting the body nairs, gastric enzymes, and useful bacteria.

glands Tear (lacrimal)

Tear fluid contains that flushes across the eyeball with an antibacterial enzyme, lysozyme, each blink

Respiratory tract

Nostril hairs trap mucus and cilia in ining of nose and trachea trap and airborne particles; remove dust, microorganisms, and debris

Small intestine

including those in Digestive enzymes, pancreatic juices, attack microbes that survive the stomach

Large intestine

gut flora ("friendly" The body's natural bacteria and other microorganisms) suppress unwanted, harmful microbes

Mouth, and throat

saliva, while mucus and Salivary glands (yellow) produce antibacterial saliva trap airborne particles in throat

Stomach

enzymes in the gastric Powerful hydrochloric ingested organisms iuices help destroy acid and digestive

Genitourinary tract The mucous lining

matter, and harmless growth of potentially bacteria restrict the helps trap foreign armful organisms

Skin

formed by skin is the first defense against invading The mechanical barrier against physical forces temperature, radiation and various chemicals organisms, as well as protecting the body such as extremes of



and as a major site for filtering blood Largest lymph organ; spleen acts as store for some types of lymphocyte Spleen

Peyer's patch

One of a few clusters of lymphoid intestine; helps protect against nodules in lower part of small microbes ingested in food

Deep inguinal (groin) node

abdominal wall, and external genitals Drains lymph from the legs, lower

Popliteal lymph nodes

Sited behind knees; drain lymph from lower leg and foot

Lymph capillaries

Minute microvessels that collect eventually becomes lymph fluid; arger vessels called lymphatics the interstitial fluid, which flows the lymph capillaries unite into between cells and tissues and

Lymphatics

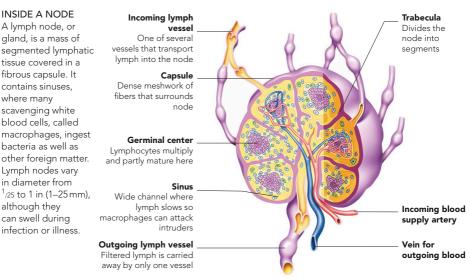
to ensure a one-way flow of lymph ymphatics have flap-type valves Similar to blood-carrying veins,

IMMUNE SYSTEM

THE COMPLEXITIES OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM CREATE THE CONDITION OF IMMUNITY, IN WHICH, AFTER THE FIRST ATTACK BY A PARTICULAR TYPE OF MICROORGANISM, THE BODY IS PROTECTED OR RESISTANT TO FUTURE INVASIONS.

LYMPH NODES

The lymph nodes produce and harbor lymphocytes that protect the body from disease. They are scattered throughout the body and are also concentrated in groups (see p.192). Small lymphatics (vessels) bring lymph to a node, while a larger vessel carries it away. The nodes filter and clean the lymph, which then drains into the venous bloodstream. Lymph vessels have valves so the fluid flows only one way.



WHITE CELL TYPES

There are numerous types of white blood cell, which are known by the general name of leukocytes. All white blood cells are derived from the bone marrow. Some of them grow and mature into other types.

Monocyte

Has a nucleus that is big and rounded, or indented; engulfs pathogens. The largest leukocytes, and the largest cells in the blood, are monocytes. The lymphocytes are the chief immune cells, and they can be either B or T cells, depending on the way the lymphocyte develops.

Lymphocyte

Both types (B and T cells) have a large nucleus that almost fills the cell.

Neutrophil

Granulocyte with many particles and multilobed nucleus; engulfs pathogens.



Basophil

Granulocyte with lobed nucleus; involved in allergic reactions.



Eosinophil

Granulocyte with B-shaped nucleus; destroys antigenantibody complexes.

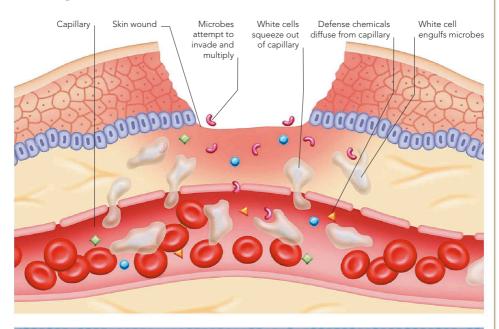


NONSPECIFIC RESPONSE

Any damage, such as burns, extreme cold, corrosive chemicals, or invading organisms, elicits a nonspecific response. The main response is inflammation (see p.198). The damaged tissue releases chemicals that attract white blood cells. Capillary walls become more permeable and porous to let these cells, along with defensive chemicals and fluids, enter and accumulate. The white cells surround, engulf, and destroy any pathogens, and the blood may clot to seal the breach.

INFLAMED TISSUE

The four common signs of inflammation are redness, swelling, increased warmth, and discomfort or pain. They occur after any form of harm in order to limit damage and initiate repair and healing.



LOCAL INFECTION

If harmful microbes enter body tissues, both the inflammatory and immune responses act swiftly to limit their spread. White blood cells, fluids, microbes, toxins, and debris accumulate as pus. An abscess forms if the pus gathers in a localized area, putting pressure on surrounding structures. This may cause discomfort and pain, especially if the surrounding tissues have no flexibility—for example, in a dental abscess.

DENTAL ABSCESS

Microbes enter through a region of decayed enamel and dentine, infect the pulp, and spread into the root, where pus collects. As pus presses on the pulp nerves, it causes the pain of toothache.

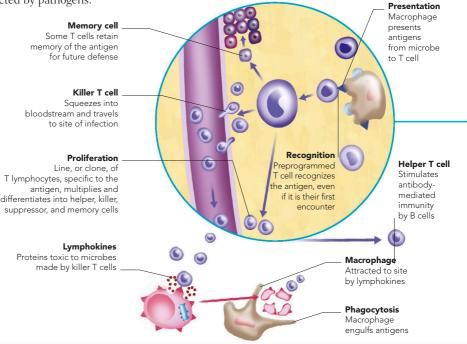


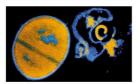
SPECIFIC RESPONSE

The two main types of specific defense—cellmediated and antibody-mediated immunity may accompany nonspecific reactions such as inflammation, or follow if infection persists. Both depend on the actions of B and T lymphocytes. B cells make protein antibodies known as gammaglobulins, which react against antigens (foreign proteins). Types of T cells multiply and attack cells infected by pathogens.

CELL-MEDIATED IMMUNITY

Once a T cell recognizes an antigen, it multiplies rapidly and its offspring form several types. Killer T cells attack and destroy infected cells, which have the antigen on their surface. Helper T cells activate both B cells to help antibody-mediated immunity and macrophages to engulf debris. Suppressor (regulatory) T cells dampen down the body's immune response after the infection has been dealt with.





LYSED BACTERIUM Complement dissolves, or lyses, invaders such as bacteria by disrupting their outer membranes (cell shown on right).

COMPLEMENT SYSTEM

More than 25 proteins and related substances in the blood form the complement system, which joins the fight against invading microbes. Once a complement reaction begins, it carries on in a "cascade," with one protein activating the next, and so on. It generally helps destroy microbes and prevent them from attacking body cells, encourages the activity of white cells, widens blood vessels, and clears away the antigen–antibody complexes.

Phagocytosis

Macrophage engulfs microorganisms and their antigens

Transport to lymph node

Macrophages travel in blood and lymph

Lymph node

Macrophages engulf microbes and debris and present antigens to T cells

Invading microbe Pathogenic (harmful) microorganisms such as bacteria

ANTIBODY-MEDIATED IMMUNITY

B cells produce Y- or T-shaped antibodies, and each type acts against a certain microorganism or "non-self" material by attaching to antigens

on its surface. The presence of antigens triggers B cells to multiply. Some develop into plasma cells, which are the main antibody-producing cells. As

Proliferation B cells specific to the antigen multiply into new cells

Recognition Preprogrammed B cell recognizes the antigen, even if it is their first encounter

Presentation Macrophage presents antigens from microbe to B cell

Antibody-antigen reaction

Antibodies stick to antigen sites on microbe, forming antibody-antigen complexes (immune complexes)

> Membrane breached Complement proteins break outer membrane

Additional help

The complement pathways can destroy microbes by disrupting their membranes in a process called lysis (see p.200) with cell-mediated immunity, memory cells are made, which can recognize the same antigen and initiate defense many years later.

Memory B cell

Some B cells retain memory of the antigen from a previous infection

Plasma cell

Produces antibodies specific to antigen protein

Antibodies Float in blood and other fluids

Macrophage Engulfs antibody– antigen complex

Complement protein binds to complex Complement attaches to antibody-antigen complex of an invading microorganism

Complement cascade Sequence of complement reactions produces more complement proteins

Swelling and bursting

Fluid rushes into microbe, which expands and bursts

197

INFLAMMATORY RESPONSE

INFLAMMATION IS THE BODY'S RAPID, GENERAL RESPONSE TO ANY KIND OF INSULT OR INJURY, SUCH AS FROM PHYSICAL WOUNDS AND FOREIGN OBJECTS, INFECTING ORGANISMS, CHEMICAL TOXINS, HEAT, OR RADIATION.

The inflammatory response is a nonspecific reaction that passes through defined phases and involves various types of white blood cells and defensive chemicals. The four cardinal signs are redness, swelling, heat, and pain. The process acts to attack, break down, and remove invading material, to dispose of the body's damaged cells and tissues, and to initiate healing.



The trachea, or windpipe, is the body's main airway Red blood cell

Cells of capillary wall **1** CAUSAL ITEMS Foreign particles such as microshards of fiberglass and airborne bacteria sweep into the trachea (windpipe) on the current of inhaled air.

3 PHYSICAL DAMAGE Sharp particles can fracture the epithelial cells, rupturing the delicate cell membranes.

CAUSE OF INFLAMMATION

The respiratory system is under constant threat from tiny inhaled particles of dust and debris and attack by infecting microbes. Here, the lining (epithelium) of the trachea (windpipe) mounts an inflammatory response to dust and bacteria. In reality, this process usually occurs alongside the specific immune response (see p.196), which targets individual foreign substances.

Tufts of cilia

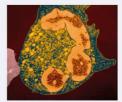
Hairlike projections borne by some cells of the tracheal lining; the cilia "beat" to remove protective mucus covering the cells

DEFENSIVE CELLS

Various types of white blood cell (leukocytes) become involved in inflammation, including the defensive cells called neutrophils and monocytes (see p.194). The monocytes are immature when they leave the blood vessels and enter the tissues. However, they rapidly develop into active cells called macrophages that replace neutrophils.

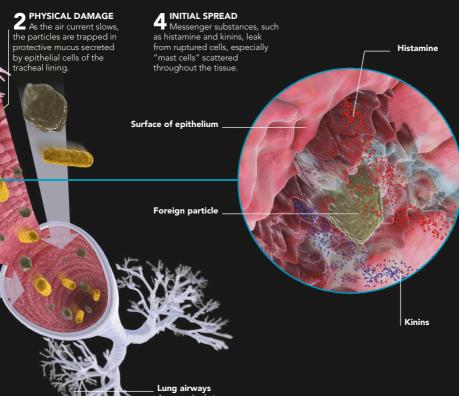


NEUTROPHILS Among the first cells to take action, these are small but capable of engulfing several pieces of damaged tissue and bacteria.



MACROPHAGE

A single macrophage, which means "big eater," can consume up to 100 bacteria or similar-sized items before dying.



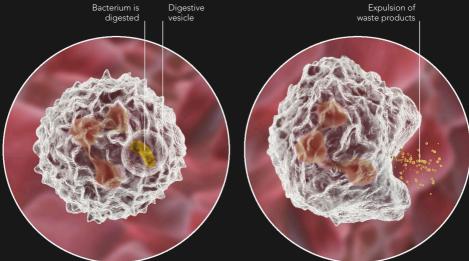
PHAGOCYTOSIS

Various kinds of white blood cells can surround, engulf, and ingest smaller items, such as bacteria and cellular debris, in a process known as phagocytosis ("cell eating"). The cell exploits its ability to change shape and move, using the intracellular components of microtubules and microfilaments (see p.26) that form its flexible, mobile, internal scaffolding. The ingestion usually takes less than one second, and the consumed material is gradually broken down by enzymes and other chemicals within the cell.

ENGULFING STAGE

The white cell extends pseudopods ("false feet") toward and around the unwanted item—here a bacterium. The pseudopods merge to engulf it.





CLYSIS STAGE

Any unwanted items are trapped in phagocytic vesicles. Together with enzyme-containing lysosomes, these digestive vesicles form phagolysosomes, in which lysis (breaking down) occurs.

D EXOCYTOSIS STAGE

• Harmless waste products of cell-eating are expelled through the membrane of the white blood cell, or in tiny, membrane-bound, exocytic vesicles, to the extracellular fluid.

INFLAMMATORY RESPONSE

CAPILLARIES DILATE

Histamine stimulates widening of capillaries (vasodilation). As their walls stretch and become thinner, narrow gaps appear and make them more permeable to fluids.

7 FLUID LEAKAGE

Increased blood flow produces redness and heat. Plasma (blood's liquid component, pictured as yellow) leaks into the space between the cells, carrying various proteins such as fibrinogen, which helps blood clot when the skin is broken.

2 FLUID ACCUMULATION

 Plasma and escaped fluids from damaged cells gather in tissue spaces, causing swelling. This presses on nerve endings, which helps cause the fourth sign of inflammation—pain.

4 **NEUTROPHILS** ARRIVE

Neutrophils press on the inner lining of capillaries, a stage called margination. They squeeze through the capillary walls in a process called diapedesis, as they leave the blood and enter the tissues.

Foreign particle

Bacterium

5 NEUTROPHILS ENTER TISSUES Neutrophils are attracted to the

damaged tissue by chemical substances the disrupted cells release. This chemically stimulated movement is termed chemotaxis.

RESPONSE

Once an inflammatory response is triggered, more blood flows to the damaged area. The capillaries widen and become more permeable, allowing plasma and fluid to leak into the space between the cells. White blood cells, such as neutrophils, leave the blood and enter the tissue, drawn to the damaged area by chemicals released from the disrupted cells.

Particle

Remains lodged at site of cell damage and continues to release histamine and kinins (see p.199), which flow into the bloodstream

Bronchial tree

May be affected by inflammation, or the problem may remain restricted to a patch of the trachea

LYMPH AND IMMUNITY

FIGHTING INFECTIONS

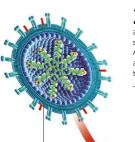
AN INFECTION OCCURS WHEN MICROORGANISMS ENTER THE BODY, THEN SURVIVE, MULTIPLY, AND DISRUPT CELL FUNCTION. THE INFECTION MAY BE LOCAL, SUCH AS IN A WOUND, OR SYSTEMIC, IN WHICH MANY PARTS OF THE BODY ARE AFFECTED.

VIRUSES

Viruses are the smallest microbes; millions would cover the head of a pin. Many types of viruses can stay inactive for long periods and survive freezing, boiling, and chemical attack. Yet they can activate suddenly when an opportunity of invading a living cell arises. Viruses are obligate parasites, which means they must have living cells, or host cells, in order to replicate themselves. The typical virus particle has a single or double strand of genetic material (nucleic acid either DNA or RNA) surrounded by a shell-like coat of protein (capsid), and sometimes a protective outer envelope.

LIFE CYCLE OF A VIRUS

Viruses have very few genes (typically 100–300) and cannot process nutrients. To build copies of itself, a virus takes over a host cell's machinery, causing the cell to die or malfunction.



FREE VIRUS PARTICLE

The complete virus particle, known as a virion, is capable of independent survival and then infection.

INSERTION OF VIRUS

Viral surface proteins attach to specific receptor sites on the host cell's surface. After attaching itself, part or all of the virus penetrates the host cell.

4 NUCLEIC ACID REPLICATION

The host cell makes many copies of the viral RNA molecule and the viral protein coat, using its raw materials and its enzymes.

YANAVA.

3 NUCLEIC ACID

Viral RNA enters the nucleus and joins the host's nucleic acid. It then replicates itself in great numbers before moving toward the cell's surface.

Genetic material

Influenza carries its genetic material as RNA rather than DNA and arranges it on eight segments

Virus in host cell

Virus sheds its protein coat so RNA can enter host nucleus

VIRUS SHAPES

There are thousands of different types of virus, with various shapes, such as balls, boxes, polygons, sausages, golf balls, spirals, and even tiny "space rockets." Viruses are classified by their size, shape, and symmetry as well as by the disease or groups of diseases they cause. Some, such as the complex virus known as the T4 bacteriophage, attack human pathogenic bacteria.

Spiral (helical)

The protein coat is corkscrewlike, with the genetic material entwined. Examples include myxoviruses and paramyxoviruses.



form a faceted container. Examples include adenoviruses and herpes viruses.

Twenty equal-sided

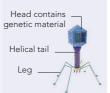
triangles connect to

Icosahedral

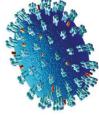


Complex

Complex viruses resemble a tiny rocket with "landing legs" that settle onto the surface of the host cell. They only attack bacteria.



D The nucleic acid (RNA) strands and protein-coat subunits join to form new virus particles. These form buds in the host cell membrane, using part of the membrane as their outer protective envelope.



RELEASE

O The buds separate as free virus particles, ready to spread and infect more cells. All eight separate segments of genetic material (RNA) must be present for the virus to successfully carry the infection further.

Infected host cell

Host cell may not die after being invaded by an enveloped virus

Viral proteins

Viral genes are "read"

Short fragments of viral RNA (genes) are read to produce viral proteins

Replication complete Duplicated viral RNA escapes

through nuclear envelope

BACTERIA

The microorganisms known as bacteria are present almost everywhere—in soil, water, air, food, drink, and on and in our own bodies. Many types of bacteria are harmless; indeed, those present naturally in the human intestines, the "gut flora," have a beneficial effect in helping extract nutrients from food. However, hundreds of types of bacteria can cause infections, ranging from mild to lethal. Bacteria are simpler than other single-cell organisms in that their genetic material (DNA) is free in the cell, rather than contained in a membrane-bound nucleus.

STRUCTURE OF A BACTERIUM

Cell wall

Usually semirigid;

made of sugars

A typical rod-shaped bacterium (bacillus) has a cell membrane enclosing cytoplasm and organelles, such as ribosomes, which are distributed in it. Unlike animal cells, it has a semi-rigid cell wall outside its cell membrane.

> Flagellum Whiplike

projection that

is swished for

movement

BACTERIAL SHAPES

There are several typical shapes for bacteria, and these, along with the way they are colored by laboratory stains, are important for classification and determination of their origins and relationships. Many thousands of bacterial types are known, with more discovered each year.

Cocci

Generally spherical, may Dividing cocci bacteria exist in clumps, chains, or pairs. Examples include Staphylococcus and Streptococcus.

Bacilli

Oval, or rodlike, with or without surface hairs or flagella. Examples include Streptobacillus.

Spirilla

Capsule

Spiral or, more accurately, helical (corkscrewlike) in shape. Examples include Leptospira and Treponema.

Nucleoid Protective Area with most outer coating of the genetic material

Open coil

Ribosome Involved in the manufacture of proteins

Pili (hairs)

on surface

Cytoplasm

Complex fluid containing many dissolved substances

Cell membrane Surrounds cytoplasm;

controls movement of chemicals, water, and waste from cell

Pilue

Rigid, tiny, hairlike structure; anchors to surfaces and takes part in genetic exchange with other bacteria

Plasmid Small loop of extra genetic material (DNA)

HOW BACTERIA CAUSE DAMAGE

Disease-causing bacteria can enter the body in several ways: via the airways or digestive tract, during sexual contact, or through broken skin. Some bacteria adhere to and invade body cells. Others produce poisonous substances called bacteriotoxins, or toxins, which may disrupt cell function. For example, the diphtheria toxin from the bacterium *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* damages heart muscle by inhibiting protein production. Some toxins are highly dangerous. A bucket of nerve toxin from *Clostridium botulinum* could kill everyone in the world.

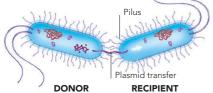
ROLE OF PLASMIDS

A plasmid may cause a bacterium to make enzymes against antibiotics, or to alter its surface receptors, where antibiotics bind. Then the plasmid duplicates itself.



7 PLASMID TRANSFER

Plasmid transfer takes place during a process known as conjugation. The plasmid copy is passed from the donor, through a pilus, to the recipient bacterium.



Released toxins Clot forming Bacterium

LEAKING VESSELS

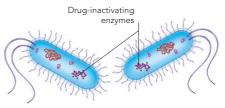
Some bacteria release toxins that cause blood to clot in small blood vessels, depriving tissues and organs of their normal blood supply.

RESISTANCE TO ANTIBIOTICS

Many bacteria become resistant to antibiotics by changing (mutating) into new strains. Their most effective mechanism is the transfer of plasmids fragments of the genetic material DNA–between bacteria. The gene for antibiotic resistance crops up by accident, and the bacterium possessing it can pass it to others.

DRUG-RESISTANT STRAINS

O Recipient bacteria inherit the resistant gene. Plasmid transfer produces populations of bacteria resistant to a range of antibiotics.



SUPERBUGS

Some bacteria pass through their life cycle in less than 20 minutes. Fast reproduction, coupled with the incredible numbers of bacteria and rapid transfer of genetic information, gives great scope for mutation (see above). Many strains of bacteria resistant to wide-acting, or broad-spectrum, antibiotics have appeared. These so-called "superbugs" may not be resistant to more specialized, narrow-spectrum, antibiotics.

MRSA

Staphylococcus aureus bacteria that are resistant to the antibiotic meticillin are known as MRSA, and are a cause of concern in hospitals.

PROTISTS (PROTOZOA)

Protists are single-celled organisms with genetic material contained in a nucleus. Animal-like protists, sometimes called protozoa, are common and usually harmless, although some, such as *Plasmodium*, cause serious diseases.

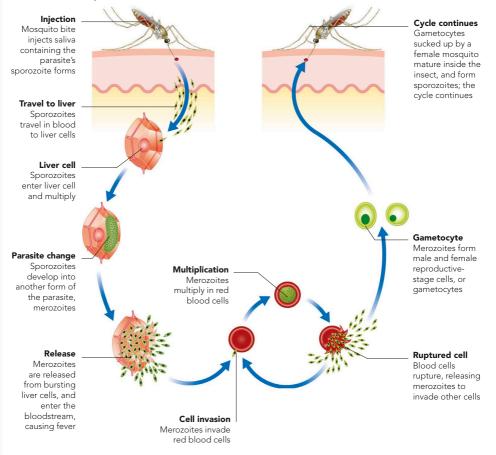
MALARIAL LIFE CYCLE

Five types of *Plasmodium* cause malaria. They are spread by the female *Anopheles* mosquito. Malaria produces chills and high fever, which can recur and prove fatal if not treated. Most *Plasmodium* have a similar life cycle (see below).



TRYPANOSOMES IN BLOOD

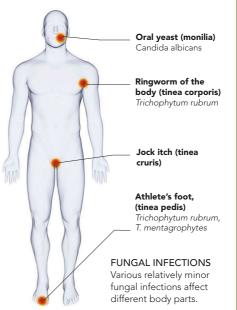
Trypanosomes are wormlike protists (purple), seen here with red blood cells. They cause a disease called trypanosomiasis, or sleeping sickness.



FUNGI

Disease-causing fungi fall into two main groups: filamentous fungi and single-celled ones. Some types—for example, yeast cause fairly harmless diseases of the skin, hair, nails, or mucous membranes. Others, such as histoplasmosis, result in potentially fatal infections of vital organs such as the lungs. Some infections may be linked to specific occupations such as farming, while others—ringworm (dermatophytosis), for example—are more likely to affect people with damaged immune systems, such as those with HIV–AIDS.





CAUSE OF ATHLETE'S FOOT

Seen here are microscopic threads of the fungus *Epidermophyton floccosum*, one cause of the white, itchy skin of athlete's foot.

HOOKWORM

This microscope image shows the head of an adult hookworm. The worm's mouth contains several toothlike structures, which it uses to cling to the intestinal lining of its host.

Toothlike hooks

PARASITIC WORMS

Humans, like most other animals, can be infested with parasitic worms that derive all their nutrients from their hosts. At least 20 types of wormlike animals may live in the body as parasites. Most spend at least part of their life cycle in the intestines. A few are members of the annelids, a group of segmented worms that includes common earthworms. Several are roundworms, or nematodes-for example, the hookworm Ancylostoma duodenale, which is ⁴/₅in (1 cm) long and lives in the gut. Another wormlike group is the flatworms; it includes tapeworms, such as *Taenia*, which live in the gut and may reach 30 ft (9 m) in length, and flukes, such as Schistosoma, which causes schistosomiasis, or snail fever.

LYMPH AND IMMUNITY

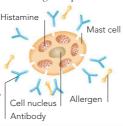
IMMUNE SYSTEM DISORDERS

THE IMMUNE SYSTEM SOMETIMES OVERREACTS, CAUSING AN ALLERGIC RESPONSE. WHEN THE SYSTEM IS WEAK, IMMUNIZATION CAN HELP BOOST IT. HOWEVER, IT MAY BECOME SO WEAK—BY AN HIV INFECTION, FOR EXAMPLE—THAT EVEN ORDINARY INFECTIONS CAN BE DANGEROUS.

ALLERGIES

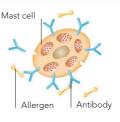
When first exposed to an allergen, such as nuts or pollen, the immune system makes antibodies to fight it. The antibodies coat the surface of mast cells in the skin, stomach lining, lungs, and upper airways. If the allergen enters the body again, these cells mount an allergic response.

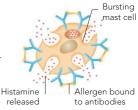
1 EXPOSURE The first time an allergen enters the body, antibodies bind to the surface of mast cells. These cells contain histamine, which normally causes inflammation.



2 ANTIBODIES When the allergen returns, the antibodies are triggered into action. If the allergen links two or more antibodies together, the cell bursts.

3 HISTAMINE As the cell bursts, it releases histamine, which causes an inflammatory response. This irritates body tissues and produces all the symptoms of an allergy.





IMMUNIZATION

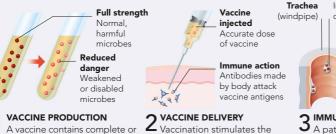
The process of becoming resistant or immune to a particular microbe as a result of infection is known as natural immunization. Resistance can also be developed artificially. In active immunization, dead or weakened versions of the microbe or its toxic products are injected into the body. The immune response occurs, with the production of antibodies,

partial microbes, or the toxins they

make. It can stimulate the immune

response but not cause symptoms.

but the illness does not develop. If urgent protection is needed, or if an immune system is weak, passive immunization can be used by injecting ready-made antibodies. These antibodies provide swift resistance against the microbes, but they gradually degenerate and are not replaced. The body has no memory for making them again.



Vaccination stimulates the body's immune system to raise antibodies against the antigens on the disease-carrying organisms. Pathogen attack Invading microbes in mucus pe) droplet in trachea

Invasion

Some pathogens invade tissues

Instant response

Antibodies launch defense against pathogens

IMMUNE RESPONSE

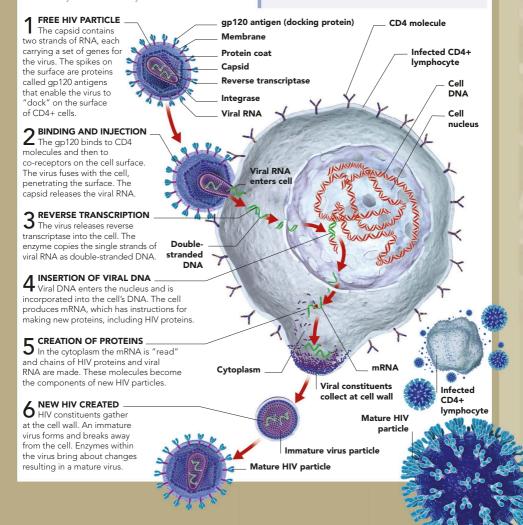
3 A pathogen against which the body has been vaccinated alerts the memory cells, and so the immune system launches an instant defense.

HIV INFECTION

HIV is carried in blood, semen, saliva, vaginal secretions, and breast milk. It is passed on when infected fluids enter the body. HIV infects cells with structures called CD4 molecules on their surface. These CD4+ cells include lymphocytes, which fight infection. The virus multiplies rapidly in CD4+ cells, destroying them in the process. If HIV goes untreated, the number of CD4+ lymphocytes eventually falls so low that the immune system is severely weakened.

AIDS

HIV can be identified by specific blood or fluid tests. Being HIV positive may lead to AIDS-related illnesses, especially opportunistic infections, caused by organisms that are harmless to healthy people but dangerous to those with reduced immunity; one example is infection by *Candida albicans*, which causes yeast. People with AIDS may also develop various types of cancer, notably Kaposi's sarcoma.





PEOPLE ARE PROBABLY MORE AWARE OF THEIR DIGESTIVE SYSTEM THAN OF ANY OTHER SYSTEM BECAUSE OF ITS FREQUENT MESSAGES. HUNGER, THIRST, GAS, AND BOWEL MOVEMENTS ALL AFFECT DAILY LIFE. EATING WELL AND REGULAR EXERCISE ARE THE BEDROCKS OF GOOD DIGESTIVE HEALTH. PLENTY OF FRESH VEGETABLES AND FRUIT, ADEQUATE FIBER, AND A LOW INTAKE OF ANIMAL FATS AND SALT ARE SIMPLE GUIDELINES FOR MAINTAINING THE WELL-BEING NOT JUST OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM BUT OF THE WHOLE BODY.

DIGESTIVE

DIGESTIVE ANATOMY

THE DIGESTIVE TRACT AND ITS ASSOCIATED ORGANS, INCLUDING THE LIVER, GALLBLADDER, AND PANCREAS, BREAK DOWN FOOD, EXTRACT NUTRIENTS, AND DISPOSE OF WASTE MATERIALS.

crushed and ground down by the teeth throat (pharynx), then travels through 30ft (9m), through various muscular or bolus, of food continues down the making salivary glands; the pancreas, embarks on a journey. It can take up iuices; and the body's major nutrient After being eaten, or ingested, food begins at the mouth, where food is during chewing. The resulting ball, stomach, small and large intestine, which produces powerful digestive molecules small enough to absorb to 24 hours to cover a distance of ubes and chambers. The process the large intestine and eliminated digested is compacted as feces in the food tube (esophagus) to the includes several glands: the spitperistalsis. The digestive system and anus. In the small intestine, chemicals break down food into through the system by a process nto the blood. What cannot be through the anus. Food travels of muscular contraction called processor, the liver.

Parotid duct

Tube that conveys parotid secretions to mouth

Mouth

Entry point of food to digestive system

Tooth

Tongue

Sublingual (left) and submandibular salivary glands Secrete saliva, which lubricates food and contains enzymes that start digestion

Trachea

Esophagus Also known as the food tube; thick-walled muscular tube, about 10in (25 cm) long, that connects pharynx with stomach

Parotid salivary gland Largest pair of

Largest pair of salivary glands

Pharynx

Passage from the mouth to the esophagus

Epiglottis Cartilage flap

that covers larynx when swallowing

Stomach

J-shaped muscular bag that churns, digests, and stores food

Liver Large organ that processes absorbed nutrients, detoxifies harmful substances, and produces bile

Gallbladder

Stores bile produced by liver

Liver

Stomach Parieta peritoneum Visceral peritoneum (mesenteries)

Esophagus

Pancreas (behind stomach)

which pour along a duct into first part of small intestine Secretes digestive enzymes,

Small intestine Major site of digestion and absorption of nutrients

Duodenum **Fransverse** colon Omentum Jejunum

Large intestine Absorbs water from food residue, and forms and stores feces

Appendix

lleum

Sigmoid Bladder

colon

whose function, if it has one,

Also called the vermiform

it can be excreted conveniently

appendix; dead-end tube

is as yet unknown Rectum Stores waste matter until

Uterus

Rectum

Anus

muscular valve that relaxes to let out digestive waste

Short, tubelike,

THE PERITONEUM

organs hang from the visceral peritoneum within The two layers of the peritoneum make a fluid to the abdomen. The omentum is a specialized reduce friction between organs. The parietal peritoneum lines the abdominal wall, and the fatty peritoneum hanging from the stomach.

MOUTH AND THROAT

DIGESTION STARTS AT THE MOUTH, WHERE FOOD IS CHEWED, LUBRICATED WITH SALIVA, TURNED INTO A SOFT, MOIST MASS CALLED A BOLUS, AND SWALLOWED.

ANATOMY OF THE MOUTH AND THROAT

The interior of the lips, cheeks, and oral cavity is lined with a tough, firmly anchored mucous membrane and a type of tissue called nonkeratinized squamous epithelium. Cells here multiply rapidly to replace those rubbed away by biting, chewing, and swallowing. The front underside of the tongue has a fleshy central ridge, the frenulum, which connects to the floor of the mouth. The tongue is the body's most flexible muscle. Within it are three pairs of intrinsic muscles: and outside, three pairs of extrinsic muscles run from the tongue to other parts of the throat and neck. The root of the tongue anchors to the lower jaw (mandible) and to the curved hvoid bone in the neck. The rear of the mouth leads to the middle part of the throat, the oropharynx. The whole throat or pharynx, from its nasal to laryngeal regions, is about 5 in (13 cm) long in a typical adult.

NOSE, MOUTH, AND THROAT

The roof of the mouth, or oral cavity, is formed by shelves of the maxillary and palatine bones of the skull (see p.49), together known as the hard palate. This extends rearward as the soft palate, which contains skeletal muscle fibers that allow it to flex when swallowing. The central posterior part of the soft palate extends into a small "finger," the uvula, which can be seen through the open mouth, dangling down from the back, where it helps direct food downward.

Uvula Soft palate

Nasal cavity Rearmost part joins

to the nasopharynx region of the throat

Tongue

Moves food around when chewing, contains taste buds, and helps form distinct words in speech

Teeth

Bite off and chew food into a moist, soft pulp, ready to be swallowed

Sublingual duct

Sublingual gland Produces viscous saliva, which contains enzymes

Submandibular duct

Submandibular gland

Mandible (lower jawbone)

Epiglottis Cartilaginous flap that blocks off the larynx entrance during swallowing

Parotid (Stensen's) duct

Opens into cheek lining, next to the upper second molar tooth

Accessory parotid gland Parotid gland Largest of three paired salivary glands; produces watery saliva

Larynx (voice box)

Esophagus (food tube)

Trachea (windpipe)

SALIVARY GLANDS

Saliva is made by three pairs of salivary glands: the parotid glands, positioned in front of and just below each ear: the submandibulars, on the inner sides of the lower jawbone (mandible); and the sublinguals, in the floor of the mouth, below the tongue. In addition, many small accessory glands are found in the mucous membranes lining the mouth and tongue. Although it is composed of 99.5 percent water, saliva also contains important solutes such as amylase, a digestive enzyme that begins the breakdown of starches, and salts. Saliva lubricates food to make chewing and swallowing easier, and it keeps the mouth moist between periods of eating.



SALIVARY GLAND STRUCTURE Many small, rounded glandular units called acini (brown), separated by connective tissue (pink), discharge their saliva into tiny central ducts. Acinar ducts converge into the main saliva-carrying glandular ducts.

TEETH

There are four types of teeth, each of which has a different role. The incisors, at the front, are chisel-shaped, with sharp edges for cutting food. The pointed canines, known as "eye teeth," are designed for tearing food. The premolars, with their two ridges, and the flatter molars, which are the largest and strongest teeth, crush and grind food. The crown is the part of the tooth above the gum, while the root is embedded in the jawbone; and where these two meet, at the gum or gingival surface, is the neck of the tooth. The outer laver of the crown is made of a bonelike enamel, which is the hardest substance in the body. Beneath it is a layer of softer but still strong tissue called dentine, which

Premolars

Canine

Incisors

absorbs shock. At the center of the tooth, the soft dental pulp contains blood vessels and nerves. Below the gum, bonelike cementum and periodontal ligament tissues secure the tooth in the jawbone.

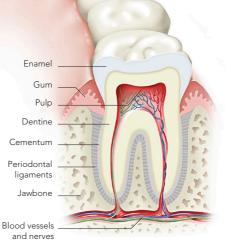


ENAMEL SURFACE This microscope image of enamel shows U-shaped enamel prisms packed with the crystalline mineral substance hydroxyapatite.



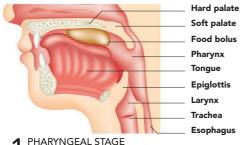
Molars

An adult typically has, in each side of each jaw, two incisors, one canine, two premolars, and three molars. This makes a total of 32 teeth. However, in some individuals certain teeth never grow or erupt out of the gum. This applies particularly to the four rearmost molars, known as "wisdom teeth."

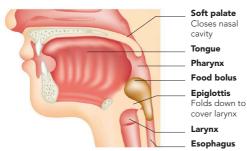


SWALLOWING

The process of swallowing begins as a voluntary action, when the rear of the tongue pushes a bolus of food to the back of the mouth. To swallow a solid item such as a tablet without chewing demands concentration. It is easier to swallow a tablet with water, because drinks are usually gulped down right after entering the mouth. Automatic reflexes control subsequent stages of swallowing, as the muscles of the throat contract and move the bolus rearward and down and squeeze it into the top of the esophagus. A flap of cartilage known as the epiglottis prevents food from going down "the wrong way" into the larvnx and the trachea, where it would cause choking.



Before the food bolus reaches the back of the mouth, the epiglottis is raised in its normal position.



7 ESOPHAGEAL STAGE

Let The larynx rises to meet the tilted epiglottis, closing the trachea. The soft palate lifts to close the nasal cavity. The bolus is pushed down the esophagus.



VIEW INTO THE LARYNX The pale, leaflike flap of the epiglottis is visible at the top of this image. Immediately below it is the inverted "V" of the vocal cords.

BREATHE OR SWALLOW

The pharynx is a dual-purpose passageway: for air when breathing, and food, drink, and saliva when swallowing. Nerve signals from the brain operate the muscles of the mouth, tongue, pharynx, larynx, and upper esophagus to prevent food from entering the trachea. If food is inhaled, irritation of the airway triggers the coughing reflex, which expels the inhaled particles and prevents choking. The complex muscle movements involved in swallowing are a voluntary reflex, and they also occur when solid matter contacts touch sensors at the back of the mouth.



DUAL INTAKE

Breathing occurs through the nose or the mouth. The passageways of both meet at the throat, and air flows into the trachea.

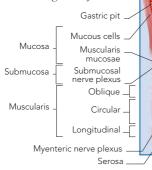
STOMACH AND SMALL INTESTINE

THE STOMACH DIGESTS FOOD CHEMICALLY AND PHYSICALLY, THE SMALL INTESTINE CONTINUES THE CHEMICAL BREAKDOWN AND ABSORBS NUTRIENTS.

STOMACH STRUCTURE

The stomach is a muscular-walled, J-shaped sac in which food is stored, churned, and mixed with gastric juices secreted by its lining. The juices include digestive enzymes and hydrochloric acid, which breaks down food and kills potentially harmful microbes. The smooth muscles of

the wall contract to combine and squeeze the semiliquid mix of food and gastric juices.



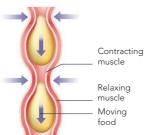
Vein Arterv

LAYERS OF THE STOMACH WALL

The stomach wall has four main layers; the mucosa, submucosa, muscularis, and serosa. The mucosa has deep infolds (gastric pits) that contain the gastric glands and cells that produce acid (parietal cells), enzymes (zymogenic or chief cells), and hormones (neuroendocrine cells).

PERISTALSIS

Waves of muscle contraction propel food through the digestive tract. The circular muscle contracts and relaxes in sequence. producing a "traveling wave" known as peristalsis.



Duodenum

First and shortest section of the small intestine, about 10 in (25 cm) long

Longitudinal

Circular

Muscle lavers

Oblique The three muscle layers cause the stomach to twist and writhe into almost any shape

00 218 Serous layer Clear membrane that covers the stomach externally

ROLE OF THE SMALL INTESTINE

The duodenum, jejunum, and ileum make up the small intestine. The duodenum receives not only processed food, known as chyme, from the stomach but also digestive secretions from the liver (including bile) and the pancreas. The jejunum and ileum are both long and coiled, but the jejunum is thicker, redder, and slightly shorter. In the small intestine, the chyme is broken down further by pancreatic juices, bile, and the intestine's own secretions, so that nutrients can be absorbed into the blood and lymph circulations.

LAYERS OF THE SMALL INTESTINE WALL

The small intestine wall has four layers. The outermost serosa is a protective coat. Next is the muscularis, which has outer longitudinal muscle fibers and inner circular smooth fibers. Inside this is the submucosa, a loose layer carrying vessels and

> nerves. The innermost mucosa forms ringlike folds, called plicae circulares, that are covered by tiny, fingerlike projections called villi.

- _ Serosa
- Muscularis
- Submucosa
- Mucosa
- Villus

Fingerlike extension of mucosa up to 1/25 in (1 mm) long

SECTION OF SMALL INTESTINE

Lacteal (lymph capillary) Blood capillary Goblet cell Villus Epithelium Lymph vessel Vein Artery

lleum

Third and longest section of the small intestine, up to $11^{1/2}$ ft (3.5 m) in length

Jeiunum

About

long

 $6^{1/2}-8 \, \text{ft}$ (2-2.5 m)

STOMACH AND SMALL INTESTINE

The stomach is situated in the upper left abdomen, protected by the lower ribs. The extensive small intestine lies looped and folded beneath it, and occupies most of the lower abdomen.

INTESTINAL VILLI

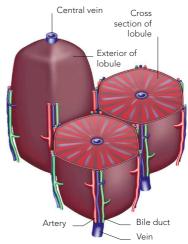
The epithelium of each villus lets digested nutrients pass into the interior, or lumen. Here, some pass into the lymph via a lacteal, and others enter the blood via a capillary and are carried to the liver. Epithelial cells have tiny microvilli, which increase the surface area of the small intestinal lining. Goblet cells scattered throughout the epithelium secrete mucus that helps the passage of food.

LIVER, GALLBLADDER, AND PANCREAS

THE LIVER IS THE LARGEST INTERNAL ORGAN AND MAKES, PROCESSES, AND STORES MANY IMPORTANT CHEMICALS. THE GALLBLADDER STORES BILE, AND THE PANCREAS SECRETES VITAL DIGESTIVE ENZYMES.

STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION OF THE LIVER

Weighing about 3¹/₃lb (1.5 kg), the dark red liver is composed of lobules; these are made up of sheets of liver cells (hepatocytes), tiny branches of the hepatic artery and vein, and bile ducts. Nutrient-rich blood arrives from the intestines via the hepatic portal system (see p.222) and filters through the lobules. The liver has many functions, the most important of which are storing and releasing blood glucose for energy; sorting and processing vitamins and minerals; breaking down toxins into less harmful substances; and recycling old blood cells.



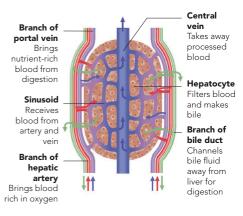
LIVER FUNCTIONS

Most of the liver's tasks are concerned with the process of metabolism. They include breaking down, storing, and circulating vital substances, and constructing complex molecules, such as enzymes.

BILE PRODUCTION	Secretes bile into ducts that lead to the gallbladder.		
NUTRIENT PROCESSING	Converts sugars into glycogen and makes amino acids.		
GLUCOSE REGULATION	Maintains the level of glucose in the blood.		
DETOXIFICATION	Removes harmful substances such as alcohol from the blood.		
PROTEIN SYNTHESIS	Makes blood-clotting proteins and proteins for blood plasma.		
MINERAL AND VITAMIN STORAGE	Stores iron, copper, and vitamins.		
BLOOD WASTE DISPOSAL	Eliminates bacteria and general foreign particles.		
RECYCLING BLOOD CELLS	Breaks down red blood cells and reuses their constituents.		

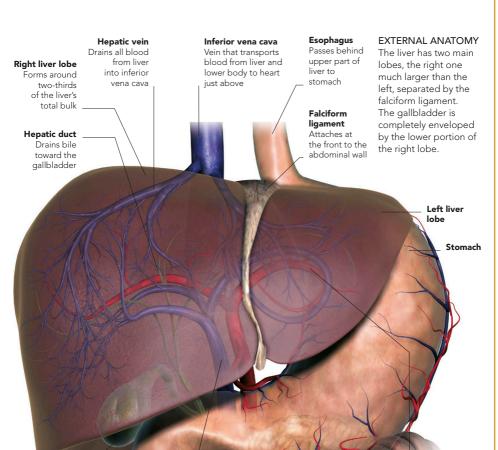
LIVER LOBULES

The six-sided lobules of the liver nestle together, each supplied with a central vein and blood vessels and bile-collecting vessels around them.



INSIDE A LOBULE

Hepatocytes filter the incoming, nutrient-rich blood into constituents that are destined for the bile ducts, storage, or waste disposal.



Hepatic artery Branch of celiac

artery from main aorta; brings one-fifth of liver's total blood supply

Transverse colon

Pancreas Hidden behind lower stomach and transverse colon

LIVER ARCHITECTURE sheets of hepatocytes can be seen radiating from the central canal. This

In this electron micrograph at a magnification of around 300 times,

Hepatic portal vein

Supplies blood from

intestinal tract to liver

canal contains the central vein.

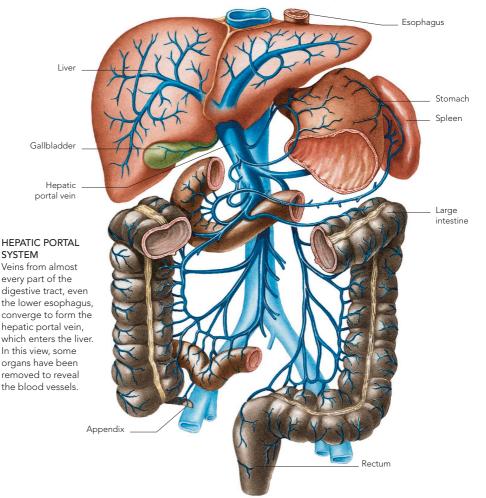
Gallbladder Storage bag for liver's bile fluid



DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

THE HEPATIC PORTAL CIRCULATION

The liver receives two blood supplies. The hepatic artery delivers oxygen-rich blood to the liver. In addition, the hepatic portal vein supplies the liver with the oxygenpoor, nutrient-rich blood that comes from the digestive tract, before this blood returns to the heart and is pumped throughout the body. This hepatic portal circulation enables the liver to stop toxins absorbed in the intestines from reaching the rest of the body. It also helps regulate the levels of many other substances in the bloodstream. Veins from several organs, including the intestines, pancreas, stomach, and spleen, drain into the hepatic portal vein. It is around 3 in (8 cm) long and supplies up to four-fifths of the blood into the liver. The flow-rate increases after a meal, but falls during physical activity as blood is diverted from the abdominal organs to skeletal muscles.

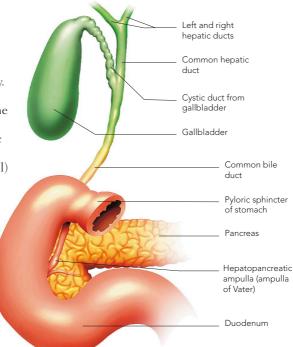


BILE TRANSPORT

Bile assists the breakdown of fats (lipids) in the small intestine. The liver secretes up to $1^{2}/_{3}$ pints (1 liter) of bile daily. The bile passes along the left and right hepatic ducts from the liver's two lobes, then along the common hepatic and cystic ducts to the gallbladder. This sac holds around $1^{2}/_{3}$ floz (50 ml) of bile and concentrates it, ready for release after a meal. The bile flows along the cystic duct to enter the first part of the small intestine. the duodenum.

DUAL DUCTS

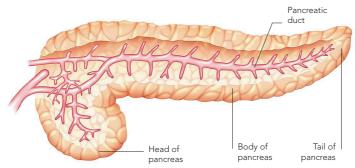
The common bile duct joins the pancreatic duct at the hepatopancreatic ampulla, which empties into the duodenum.



THE PANCREAS

The head end of this gland nestles in a loop of the duodenum, its main body lies behind the stomach, and its tapering tail sits above the left kidney, below the spleen. Each day, the pancreas produces around $2^{2}/_{3}$ pints (1.5 liters)

of digestive juice containing various enzymes that break down proteins, carbohydrates, and lipids. The fluid flows into the main and accessory pancreatic ducts, which empty the juices into the duodenum.



PANCREATIC STRUCTURE

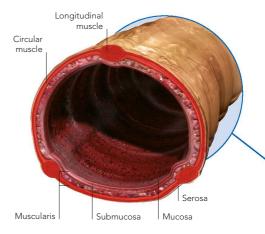
The pancreas is up to 6 in (15 cm) long, soft and flexible, and gray-pink in color.

LARGE INTESTINE

THE LARGE INTESTINE HAS THREE MAIN REGIONS—THE CECUM, COLON, AND RECTUM. THE 5FT (1.5M)-LONG COLON CHANGES LIQUID DIGESTIVE WASTE PRODUCTS INTO A MORE SOLID FORM THAT IS EXCRETED AS FECES.

ROLE OF THE COLON

Once the chemical breakdown of food in the small intestine (see pp.218-19) is complete, almost all the nutrients vital for bodily functions will have been absorbed. The waste product from this process is partially digested, liquefied food (chyme). This passes from the small intestine, through the ileocecal valve, into the cecum. From there, it reaches the first part of the colon, the ascending colon. The colon's main function is to convert the liquid chyme into semisolid feces for storage and disposal. Sodium, chloride, and water are absorbed through the lining of the colon into blood and lymph, and the feces become less watery. The colon secretes bicarbonate and potassium in exchange for sodium and chloride. There are also billions of symbiotic or "friendly" microorganisms within the colon.



LAYERS OF THE COLON WALL

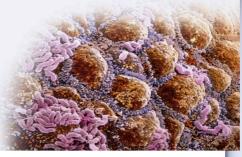
Inside the outer coating (serosa), smooth muscle fibers are responsible for colonic movements. The submucosa has many lymphoid nodules, and the mucosa produces lubricating mucus.

GUT FLORA

Trillions of microorganisms, mainly bacteria, live in the intestinal tract—chiefly in the large intestine. They are known as gut flora (or gut microbiota) and have a vital role in human health and disease. They produce enzymes that break down certain food components, such as cellulose, which human enzymes cannot digest. The gut flora also produce vitamins K and B, and hydrogen, carbon dioxide, hydrogen sulfide, and methane. They help control harmful microbes in the digestive system and promote the formation of antibodies and the activity of lymphoid tissue in the colonic lining. Overall, the gut flora and the body exist in a mutually beneficial partnership (symbiosis). At least one-third of the weight of excreted feces is composed of these bacteria.

BACTERIA IN THE COLON

This electron microscope image (magnified over 2,000 times) shows clusters of rodlike bacteria (purple) on the lining of the colon.



Ascending colon

Section of colon rising up right side of abdomen

Transverse colon

Highest section of colon, just below stomach, passing across upper abdomen

Haustra Pouches that give colon its puckered appearance

Descending colon Section of colon that passes down left side of abdomen

Feces

Taeni coli

Bands of longitudinal muscle running length of colon

Cecum Pouchlike entrance to large intestine

Ileocecal valve Controls flow of liquefied food from small intestine

Appendix (vermiform appendix)

A fingerlike, dead-end passage from the cecum. Usually thought to have no function but may have a role in maintaining normal gut flora

Sigmoid colon

Final colonic section, making an S-shaped bend to meet rectum

Rectum

Final part of large intestine, holds feces waiting to be passed out through the anus

Anus Valvelike exit from end of digestive tract

PARTS OF THE COLON

The three sections of the colon form an almost rectangular "frame," with the small intestine inside, the stomach and liver above, and the rectum below.

COLONIC MOVEMENT

The colon has three bands of muscle called taenia coli, which form pouches called haustra (see p.225). Muscular movements mix and propel feces toward the rectum. The motion of feces varies in rate, intensity, and nature, depending mainly on the stage of digestion of the contents. The three main types of motion are known as segmentation, peristaltic contractions, and mass movements. Fecal material passes more slowly through the colon than through the small intestine, enabling the reabsorption into the blood of up to 4¹/₄ pints (2 liters) of water every day.

SEGMENTATION

A series of ringlike contractions occurs at regular intervals. These churn and mix feces but do not propel them along the colon.

PERISTALTIC CONTRACTIONS

Small waves of movement called peristaltic contractions (see p.218) propel feces toward the rectum. The muscles behind the contents contract, while those in front relax.

MASS MOVEMENTS

These extra-strong peristaltic waves move from the middle of the transverse colon. They happen two or three times a day and drive feces into the rectum.







Cecum

Appendix

Ascending

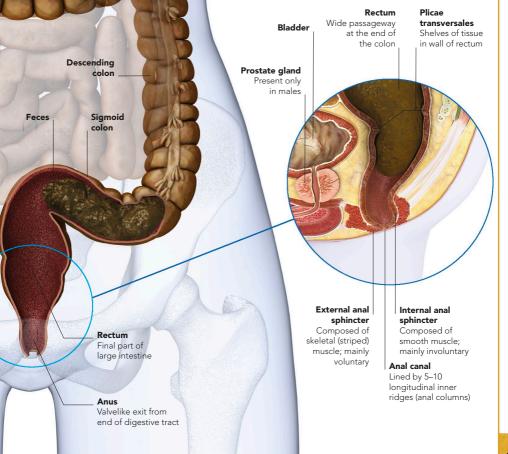
colon

THE RECTUM

The rectum is a passageway for feces and is normally empty, except just before and during defecation.

RECTUM, ANUS, AND DEFECATION

The rectum is around 5 in (12 cm) long. Belowit is the anal canal, about $1\frac{1}{2} \text{ in } (4 \text{ cm}) \text{ long.}$ In the walls of the anal canal, there are two sets of strong muscles—the internal and external sphincters. During defecation, peristaltic waves in the colon push feces into the rectum, which triggers the defecation reflex. Contractions push the feces along, and the anal sphincters relax to allow them out of the body through the anus. The defecation reflex may be aided by voluntary contraction of the abdominal muscles, or overridden by conscious control.



Transverse

colon

DIGESTION

THE DIGESTIVE PROCESS INVOLVES A SERIES OF PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL ACTIONS THAT BREAK DOWN FOOD INTO NUTRIENT PARTICLES SMALL ENOUGH FOR ABSORPTION.

Vigorous physical digestion of food—mashing and churning starts in the mouth and continues in the stomach using muscular movement. The stomach and the mouth secrete digestive chemicals (enzymes), too. By the time the pulverized food and enzymes (chyme) reach the duodenum, many food particles are already microscopically small, yet not small enough to pass across cell membranes into the body tissues. Chemical digestion in the small intestine splits large molecules into even smaller, absorbable particles that can enter the blood.

IN THE STOMACH

Peptide

Protein

The stomach lining has gastric pits that make various substances: hydrochloric acid to kill microbes in swallowed food; the enzyme gastric lipase to begin breaking down fat; mucus to protect the stomach from digestive enzymes and acid; and pepsin to digest proteins. Pepsin on its own could digest the stomach wall, so it is first released in an inactive form (pepsinogen), then activated by the stomach's acid.



PEPSIN IN ACTION

Pepsin is activated when it meets the acid of the stomach's interior. It splits protein molecules into shorter amino acid chains called peptides. **Pepsin** Protein-digesting enzyme

Gastric mucosa Stomach lining Gastric lipase Fat-digesting enzyme

Hydrochloric acid

Mucus

pit mouth to the small intestine, food is broken down into smaller and

DIGESTIVE JOURNEY As it travels from the mouth to the small

smaller particles.

Gastric pit Makes enzymes, hydrochloric acid, and mucus

DIGESTION

→ IN THE DUODENUM Bile salt Chyme is squirted into the duodenum and mixed with bile and secretions from the Smaller pancreas. These include alkalis, such as fat droplet bicarbonates, that neutralize stomach acid, and about 15 enzymes, which work on carbohydrates, proteins, and fats (lipids). BILE FUNCTION Bile contains salts that emulsify large fat Wall of duodenum Bile duct from droplets, to create an gallbladder Lined with emulsion of tiny fat droplets fingerlike villi with a large surface area Fat droplet Pancreatic Containing fat (lipid) for enzyme action. duct from pancreas Ampulla of Vater Villus Protease enzymes Bile salts Lipase Peptide Triglyceride Monoglyceride Amylase lipid Fat molecule Fatty acid Lipase Protein Protease enzyme FAT (LIPID) BREAKDOWN Lipase fat-digesting enzymes break down PROTEIN triglyceride fat (lipid) units BREAKDOWN to form two fatty acids and Protease enzymes a monoglyceride. Starch split proteins into short-chain Amylase enzyme peptides and amino acids. CARBOHYDRATE BREAKDOWN Pancreatic amylase enzyme breaks long-chain carbohydrates, such as starch, into disaccharide (double-sugar) pieces, especially maltose sugar. Maltose sugar

IN THE SMALL INTESTINE

After the duodenum, the remainder of the small intestine is the site for the final breakdown of food substances and their absorption into the blood and lymphatic fluids. The pancreatic juices and bile fluids continue to work, but the small intestine releases few further enzymes into its inner passage, the lumen. Instead, its enzymes act within the lining cells, and on their surfaces. These enzymes include lactase and maltase, which break down the double (disaccharide) sugars, lactose and maltose, into single-unit glucose and galactose. Intestinal peptidases convert short peptide chains (originally from proteins) into their subunits, amino acids. The fingerlike villi of the intestine lining have surface cells bearing smaller projections of their own (microvilli), where some of these final changes occur.

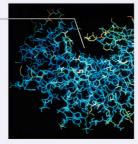
HOW ENZYMES WORK

An enzyme is a biological catalyst—a substance that boosts the rate of a biochemical reaction, but remains unchanged itself. Most enzymes are proteins. They affect the reactions of digestive breakdown, and also the chemical changes that release energy and build new materials for cells and tissues. Each enzyme has a specific shape due to the way its long chains of subunits (amino acids) fold and loop. The substance to be altered (the substrate) fits into a part of the enzyme known as the active site. In the case of digestion, the enzyme may undergo a slight change in 3-D configuration that encourages the substrate to break apart at specific bonds between its atoms.

Active site

PEPSIN

A computer model of this digestive enzyme shows the active site as the gap at the top. A protein molecule will slot in here and break apart.



VAST SURFACE AREA The internal lining of

the folded and looped small intestine has a vast surface area for absorbing nutrients. Lumen

Fluid-filled space inside small intestine

Villus

Capillary of villus

Direction of blood flow

ABSORPTION ACROSS VILLI

The fingerlike villi (left) of the small intestine lining provide a large area for the absorption of the products of digestion. These substances are shown here accumulating in the bloodstream from left to right.

> Epithelial (lining) cell of small intestine wall

Glucose

Short-chain fatty acid

Amino acid

Lipid package

Maltase enzyme Splits maltose into glucose

Glucose Passes through protein channel

Peptidase enzyme Splits peptides into amino acids

Amino acids

Pass through protein channel in twos and threes

Epithelial cell interior

Lacteal Lymph capillary of villus Wall of small intestine Fatty acid

Small intestine lumen

Epithelial cell membrane Formed into "brush" of microvilli

CLOSE-UP OF VILLUS SURFACE

Short-chain fatty acids, glucose, and amino acids pass through the epithelial cells into a capillary (red). Larger fatty acids are packaged and passed into a lymph lacteal (purple).

EXTREME CLOSE-UP OF CELL MEMBRANE

Enzymes that complete digestion are embedded in the membrane of the epithelial cells (right). The resulting sugars and amino acids pass through dedicated protein channels, while fatty acids diffuse across. Short-chain fatty acid Simply diffuses across cell membrane

Small intestine lumen

Epithelial cell membrane

NUTRIENTS AND METABOLISM

THE BODY'S INTERNAL BIOCHEMICAL REACTIONS, CHANGES, AND PROCESSES ARE TERMED METABOLISM. DIGESTION PROVIDES THE NUTRIENTS AS RAW MATERIALS, WHICH ENTER METABOLIC PATHWAYS IN ALL CELLS AND TISSUES.

TAKING IN NUTRIENTS

Carbohydrates, fats, proteins, vitamins, minerals, and other nutrients are absorbed at different stages along the digestive tract. Blood from the major absorption sites of the intestines flows along the hepatic portal vein (see p.222) to the liver. Here, nutrients are broken down, stored, and released according to the body's needs.



FAT TISSUE

Adipose tissue consists of cells replete with fat droplets that can be used as a concentrated energy store in times of need.

FINAL STAGES OF DIGESTION

The colon absorbs minerals, salts, and some vitamins, and reabsorbs a large amount of water, too. Fiber, such as pectin and cellulose, bulks up the digestive remnants as they are made into feces. Fiber helps delay the absorption of some molecules, including sugars, and spreads their uptake through time rather than in one short "rush." In addition, fiber binds with some fatty substances, such as cholesterol, and helps prevent their overabsorption.



CECUM

Each day about 3¹/₂–17 floz (100–500 ml) of digestive fluids, undigested leftovers, rubbed-off intestinal linings, and other matter enters the first chamber of the large intestine, the cecum.

Bicarbonate and potassium Secreted into lumen to replace recovered sodium

Chloride

Recovered from feces; with sodium, it maintains acid-alkali balance in tissues

> Sodium Also recovered from feces

Vitamin K Manufactured by symbiotic bacteria

B vitamins

Some types released by bacterial fermentation

Water

Large intestine reabsorbs ²/₃ of water in feces

Colon

NUTRIENTS AND METABOLISM

BREAKDOWN AND BUILDING UP

Catabolism is the breaking down of complex molecules into simpler ones during energy production. Anabolism is the building up of complex molecules from simpler ones-for example, amino acids make peptide chains, which combine to form proteins.

INTERPI AY

Metabolism is a complex interplay of construction and destruction, with many molecules being recycled as they pass between the two processes.

HOW THE BODY USES FOOD

The three major food components vield different breakdown products. Carbohydrates (starches and sugars) can be reduced to glucose; proteins to single amino acids: and fats (lipids) to fatty acids and glycerol. Glucose is the body's most adaptable and readiest source of energy. Amino acids are remade into the body's own proteins, both structural (collagen, keratin, and similar tough substances) and functional (enzymes). Fatty acids form the lipid bilayer membranes around and inside cells (see p.28). However, the body can divert nutrients to different uses as conditions dictate.

SIMPLE MOLECULES FROM DIGESTED FOOD CATABOLIC PROCESSES ANABOLIC PROCESSES Molecules with high-energy Joining of small molecules bonds, such as fats and into new, larger molecules, alucose, are broken down such as proteins and DNA COMPLEX ENERGY MOLECULES

ENERGY PRODUCTION The simple sugar glucose is the

energy source used by all cells to power their life processes. Fats, or in starvation circumstances. LIVER proteins, also suffice, either from the liver or mobilized from storage in tissues. BODY CELLS Carbohydrates Fats Proteins **DIVIDING BODY CELLS** GROWTH, RENEWAL, AND REPAIR FAT CELLS MUSCLE CELLS LIVER LOBULES

Cells are maintained using amino acids to build up different protein structures, fats to form membranes, and glucose to provide the energy. Cells that are dividing for growth or repair require increased supplies of these nutrients.

ENERGY STORAGE

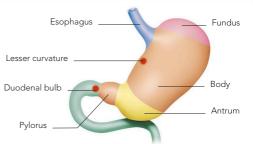
Surplus glucose is converted into glycogen, which is stockpiled in the liver and muscle cells. Fatty acids are a concentrated energy store, and they can be derived from dietary fats, excess amino acids, or glucose.

DIGESTIVE TRACT DISORDERS

LIFESTYLE FACTORS, SUCH AS EXCESSIVE ALCOHOL CONSUMPTION, A POOR OR LOW-FIBER DIET, AND FOOD SENSITIVITIES, CONTRIBUTE TO MANY DIGESTIVE TRACT DISORDERS, ALTHOUGH SOME PROBLEMS ARE RELATED TO BACTERIA OR TO A COMPROMISED IMMUNE SYSTEM.

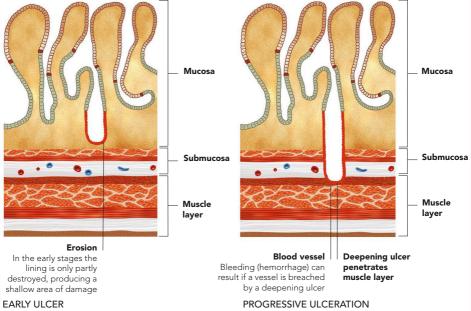
PEPTIC ULCERS

Most peptic ulcers are associated with *Helicobacter pylori* bacteria. These damage the mucous lining that normally protects against the powerful acidic juices in the stomach and first part of the duodenum. Other contributory factors include alcohol consumption, smoking, certain medications, family history, and diet. Upper abdominal pain is a common symptom. With a duodenal ulcer, this is often worse before a meal and relieved by eating; in a gastric ulcer, eating tends to aggravate the pain.



SITES OF PEPTIC ULCERS

A common site for ulcers is in the first part of the duodenum (duodenal bulb). In the stomach, most ulcers develop in the lesser curvature.

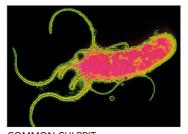


If the protective mucous barrier coating the stomach lining breaks down, gastric juices containing strong acid and enzymes come into contact with mucosal cells.

A true ulcer penetrates the entire lining (mucosal layer) as well as the submucosa and muscle layers. In severe cases, it can perforate the stomach or duodenal wall.

GASTRITIS

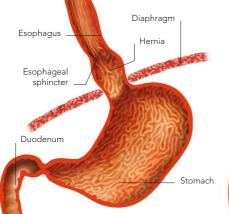
Inflammation of the stomach lining, called gastritis, causes discomfort or pain, as well as nausea and vomiting. Gastritis that comes on suddenly, known as sudden onset (acute) gastritis, may be caused by overindulging, especially in alcohol consumption, or by taking medications known for their effect on the stomach lining, such as aspirin. Chronic gastritis develops over the longer term and may be due to repeated insult to the lining by alcohol, tobacco, or drugs. Another common cause is the bacterium *Helicobacter pylori*. Gastritis usually gets better with medication and by removing the underlying cause.

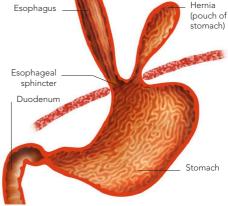


COMMON CULPRIT At least 50 percent of people have *H. pylori* in their stomach lining. If the bacteria cause symptoms, antibiotics can eradicate them.

HIATUS HERNIA

The esophagus passes through a taut gap (hiatus) in the muscular sheet of the diaphragm, which lies between the abdomen and the chest cavity. The hiatus helps the esophageal sphincter (ring of muscle at the lower end of the esophagus) prevent acidic stomach contents from passing up into the lower esophagus. In a hiatus hernia, the upper section of the stomach protrudes up through this gap. Any symptoms of a hiatus hernia are those of heartburn (gastric reflux). There are two types of hiatus hernia: sliding and paraesophageal. Sliding hernias usually have no symptoms, and it is estimated that they are present in around a third of all people over 50. In rare cases, however, paraesophageal hernias can cause severe pain and require surgery.





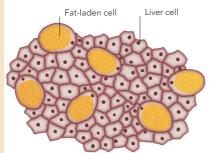
SLIDING HIATUS HERNIA

This is the most common type of hiatus hernia, and occurs when the junction between the esophagus and the stomach slides up through the diaphragm.

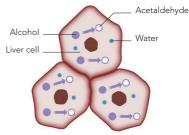
PARAESOPHAGEAL HIATUS HERNIA In about 1 in 10 hernias, a pouchlike part of the stomach is pushed upward through the diaphragm and lies adjacent to the lower esophagus.

ALCOHOLIC LIVER DISEASE

Regular, excessive alcohol consumption over many years can lead to serious liver damage. Women do not metabolize alcohol as efficiently as men and are more vulnerable to its side effects. The toxic effects of chemicals in alcohol can damage the liver in different ways and may, in some people, increase the risk of liver cancer. Almost all long-term, heavy drinkers develop a "fatty liver" because alcohol produces fat when it is broken down. If a person stops drinking, the fat disappears and the liver may eventually return to normal. However, continued heavy drinking can lead to alcoholic hepatitis, or inflammation of the liver. Symptoms vary from none at all to acute illness and jaundice. The final stage of



alcoholic liver damage is cirrhosis, which can be fatal. Often, the only treatment option at this stage is a liver transplant.



HOW DAMAGE OCCURS

Alcohol (ethanol) breaks down into acetaldehyde, which is thought to bind with proteins in liver cells and cause damage, inflammation, and fibrosis.

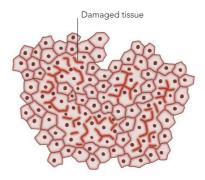
2 FATTY LIVER

Cone by-product of alcohol metabolism is fat. Liver cells in excessive drinkers swell with globules of fat that are clearly visible as yellow or white patches if the liver is cut open. The condition is reversible if drinking stops.

$\mathbf{2}$ ALCOHOLIC HEPATITIS

• Continued heavy drinking may cause fatty liver to develop into hepatitis. The liver becomes inflamed with many leukocytes. Liver cells may be severely damaged and die.



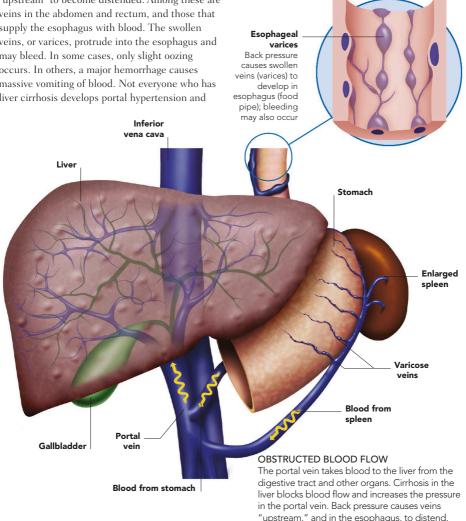


+ In this final stage of alcoholic liver disease, the permanent fibrosis and scarring of the liver tissue becomes life-threatening. Because the cells are permanently damaged, the liver is unable to carry out its normal functions.

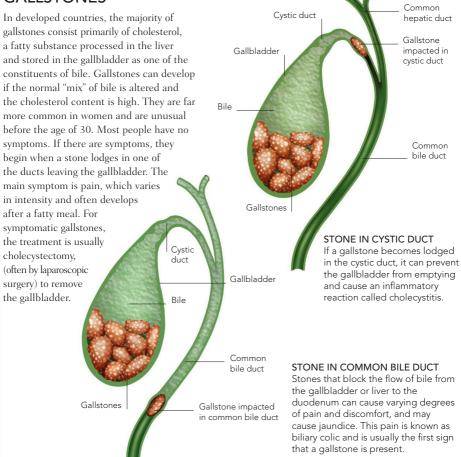
PORTAL HYPERTENSION

One of the complications of liver cirrhosis is portal hypertension. As the tissue becomes progressively scarred and fibrosed, it obstructs the flow of blood into the liver from the portal vein, a large vessel carrying blood from the digestive tract. Pressure builds up in the vein, and can cause other vessels "upstream" to become distended. Among these are veins in the abdomen and rectum, and those that supply the esophagus with blood. The swollen veins, or varices, protrude into the esophagus and may bleed. In some cases, only slight oozing occurs. In others, a major hemorrhage causes massive vomiting of blood. Not everyone who has liver cirrhosis develops portal hypertension and

esophageal varices. In those who do develop the condition, the varices can be treated with drugs to reduce the blood pressure or injected with a sclerosing (hardening) agent, much like that used to treat varicose veins.



GALLSTONES



PANCREATITIS

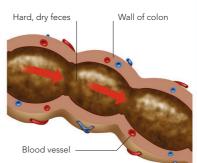
Pancreatitis is a serious inflammation of the pancreas, and can be either acute or chronic. In both types, the inflammation is triggered by the enzymes that the pancreas itself normally manufactures to aid the digestion of food when it enters the duodenum. In pancreatitis, these enzymes become activated while they are still inside the pancreas, and begin to digest the tissue. There are many causes of acute pancreatitis, the most common of which are gallstones (see above), excessive intake of alcohol, some drugs, and certain infections, such as mumps. Chronic pancreatitis is usually associated with long-term alcoholism. In both types, the main feature is pain. In acute pancreatitis, this is particularly severe and may be accompanied by nausea and vomiting.

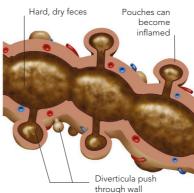
DIVERTICULAR DISEASE

In diverticular disease, patches of the colon wall bulge outward into pouches called diverticula. Most people with diverticular disease are over 50 in age and have eaten a low-fiber diet for many years, with consequent straining as they pass hard stools. The problem becomes more common with increasing age. The lowest part of the colon, known as the sigmoid colon (see p.227), is most commonly affected, but the whole colon can be involved. About 95 percent of people with diverticular disease do not show symptoms, but some people have abdominal pain and irregular bowel habits. In diverticulitis, the pouches become inflamed, causing severe pain, fever, and constipation. The pain is often in the lower left abdomen, and may fade after passing gas or stools.

1 HARD FECES

■ Soft, bulky feces are able to pass easily along the colon. If feces are hard and dry, usually due to lack of fiber or "roughage" in the diet, the contractions of the smooth muscle layers of the colon must increase in force, putting pressure on the walls of the colon.





7 POUCHES FORM

Eventually, the increased pressure pushes small areas of colon lining through points of weakness in the muscle of the wall, often near a blood vessel. The pea- to grape-sized pouches that form easily trap bacteria and may become inflamed.

COLORECTAL CANCER

Cancer of the colon, rectum, or both, is one of the most common cancers in the industrialized world. Risk factors include family history and aging. A malignant tumor in the intestinal wall can start as a polyp in the lining. A high-fat, low-fiber diet, excess alcohol, lack of exercise, and obesity can make this cancer more likely to develop. Symptoms are a change in bowel habits and stool consistency, abdominal pain, loss of appetite, fecal blood, and a sensation of not fully emptying the bowels. Colorectal cancer can be detected by screening programs, such as fecal tests for blood and endoscopic examination (sigmoidoscopy). If it is detected and treated early, the chances of survival for five years or longer are high.

Intestinal wall Artery Vein Vein

COLONIC TUMOR

Over time, malignant tumors grow and invade the intestinal wall, from where the cancer can spread to other parts of the body via the bloodstream.



THOUSANDS OF METABOLIC PROCESSES IN MYRIAD BODY CELLS PRODUCE HUNDREDS OF WASTE PRODUCTS. THE URINARY SYSTEM REMOVES THEM BY FILTERING AND CLEANSING THE BLOOD AS IT PASSES THROUGH THE KIDNEYS. ANOTHER VITAL FUNCTION IS THE REGULATION OF THE VOLUME, ACIDITY, SALINITY, CONCENTRATION, AND CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF BLOOD, LYMPH, AND OTHER BODY FLUIDS. UNDER HORMONAL CONTROL, THE KIDNEYS MONITOR WHAT THEY RELEASE INTO THE URINE TO MAINTAIN A HEALTHY CHEMICAL BALANCE.

URINARY SYSTEM



URINARY ANATOMY

BLADDER, AND A URETHRA. IT REGULATES THE VOLUME AND COMPOSITION OF BODY FLUIDS AND EXPELS WASTE AND EXCESS WATER FROM THE BODY. THE URINARY SYSTEM IS COMPOSED OF TWO KIDNEYS, TWO URETERS, A

The two kidneys are reddish organs resembling beans in shape. They are situated on either side of the abdomen, just above the waist and toward the back of the body. Each kidney contains many microscopic filtering units that remove unwanted waste, minerals, and excess water from the blood as urine. A ureter transports the urine to the bladder, which gradually becomes spherical, then pear-shaped, as it fills up. Eventually, stretch receptors in the bladder wall initiate a conscious desire to urinate. The urethra then conducts urine from the bladder to the outside.

Aorta

Inferior vena cava

Kidney

Each is about 4–5 in (10–12.5 cm) long, and contains about 1 million filtering units

Renal pelvis

Funnel-shaped chamber in which urine collects before passing down the ureter

Renal artery

Renal vein



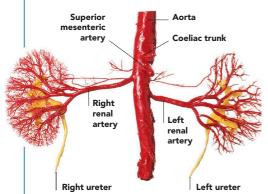
Ureters	Vessels conveying urine from kidneys to bladder; a muscular layer in their walls contracts to propel urine to the bladder, and a mucosal layer secretes mucus to prevent its cells from coming into contact with urine Opening of ureter	 Bladder lining Becretes mucus to isolate body tissues from urine; contains many folds when bladder is empty; these smooth out as bladder fills Bladder wall Contains three indistinct layers of muscle fiber, jointly called the detrusor muscle 	Femoral artery Urethra	Bladder outlet Prostate gland Involved in semen production as part of the reproductive system; encircles the urethra of urethra	Spongy part of urethra Penis MALE URETHRA A male's urethra conveys both semen and urine along the length of the penis.	
				E		243

KIDNEY STRUCTURE

THE KIDNEYS ARE A PAIR OF ORGANS SITUATED EITHER SIDE OF THE SPINAL COLUMN AND AT THE UPPER REAR OF THE ABDOMINAL CAVITY. THEY FILTER WASTE PRODUCTS FROM THE BLOOD AND EXCRETE THEM, ALONG WITH EXCESS WATER, AS URINE.

INSIDE THE KIDNEY

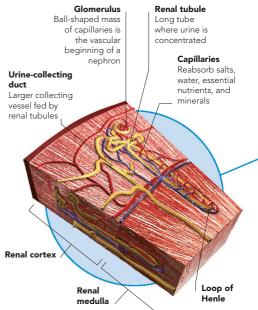
Each kidney is protected by three outer layers: a tough external coat of fibrous connective tissue, the renal fascia: a laver of fatty tissue, the adipose capsule; and inside this, another fibrous layer, the renal capsule. The main body of the kidney also has three layers: the renal cortex, which is packed full of knots of capillaries known as glomeruli and their capsules; next, the renal medulla, which contains capillaries and urine-forming tubules; and a central space where the urine collects, known as the renal pelvis. The glomeruli, capsules, and tubules are the constituent parts of the kidney's million-plus microfiltering units, called nephrons.



BLOOD SUPPLY TO THE KIDNEYS

The left and right renal arteries are branches of the aorta, which carries blood directly from the heart. The arteries leave the celiac trunk of the

aorta just below the superior mesenteric artery. The renal arteries form a branching network that supplies blood to the kidneys.



NEPHRON

Each microfiltering unit, or nephron, spans the cortex and medulla. The glomerulus, capsule, proximal and distal tubules, and the smaller urine-collecting ducts are in the cortex. The medulla contains mainly the long tubule loops of Henle and the larger urine-collecting ducts.



GLOMERULUS

This microscope image shows the tangled system of a glomerulus (pink). A filtrate fluid oozes from the glomerulus and is collected by the cuplike Bowman's capsule (brown).

KIDNEY CROSS SECTION

This cutaway shows the kidney's main layers: the cortex and the medulla, which forms segments known as renal pyramids. The renal artery and vein circulate huge amounts of blood—about $2^{1}/_{2}$ pints per min (1.2 liters per min) at rest, which is up to one-quarter of the heart's total output.

Renal cortex

Outer region of kidney; packed with microscopic structures called glomeruli, which make it look granular

Renal medulla

Region of capillaries around loops of tubules

Renal artery

Supplies blood to kidney; branches from the aorta

Renal column Tissue between

renal pyramids

Renal pyramid Cone-shaped

region of renal medulla

Major calyx

Several minor calyces merge to form a major calyx

Minor calyx

Cuplike cavity that receives urine from the renal papilla

Renal pelvis

Funnel-shaped tube into which the major calyces merge

Renal capsule

Thin covering of white fibrous tissue around the whole kidney

Renal vein

Removes cleaned blood, which then drains into inferior vena cava

Renal hilus

Junction where renal blood vessels and ureter pass into kidney

Renal papilla Apex of the renal pyramid

Arcuate arteries and veins

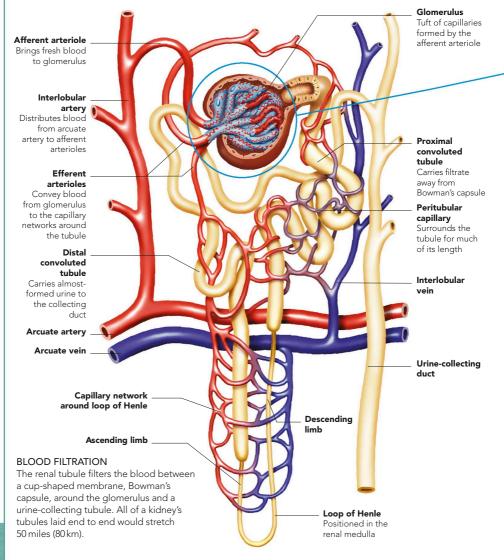
Vessels forming archlike links between the cortex and medulla

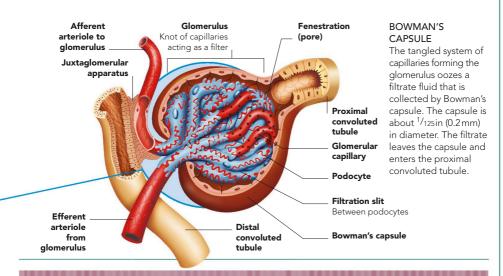
Interlobular arteries and veins

Branches of the renal artery and vein

STRUCTURE OF A NEPHRON

Each nephron consists of two tubes: one for carrying blood and one for forming urine. Both have convoluted routes between the renal cortex and medulla. The blood vessel starts as the afferent arteriole and finishes as a venule that carries the blood away. The renal tube starts at Bowman's capsule around the glomerulus, and leads into the proximal convoluted tubule, which dips into and out of the medulla as the loop of Henle. Eventually, it feeds urine into a large urine-collecting duct.



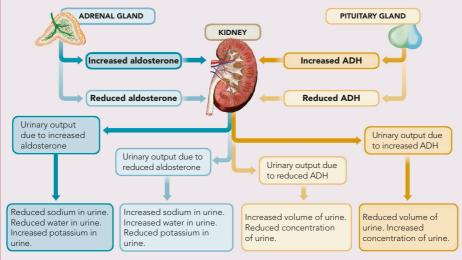


REGULATION OF URINE PRODUCTION

The amount, composition, and concentration of urine is determined principally by two hormones: ADH (antidiuretic hormone, or vasopressin) and aldosterone. ADH, released by the pituitary gland, acts on the kidneys to reduce urine volume and increase its concentration. Aldosterone, released by the adrenal glands, acts on the kidneys to reduce sodium and water in the urine and increase potassium.

HORMONAL CONTROL

Levels of the hormones ADH and aldosterone are altered so that the amounts of water, solutes, and wastes in urine are increased or decreased as needed to maintain a constant environment.



URINARY DISORDERS

PARTS OF THE URINARY TRACT ARE SUSCEPTIBLE TO INFECTIONS, RESULTING IN CONDITIONS SUCH AS CYSTITIS, SOME CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASES ARE ALSO CAUSED BY INFECTION. COMMON SYMPTOMS, SUCH AS INCONTINENCE, CAN BE VERY TROUBLESOME.

URINARY TRACT INFECTIONS

The urine flowing through the urinary tract moves in one direction-from the kidneys through the ureters to the bladder, and then through the urethra to leave the body. During urination, the flow from the bladder is rapid and copious, but for long periods urine remains stagnant in the bladder. Infections can enter the body through the urethra and spread to the bladder, and sometimes up the ureters to the kidneys. The adult female urethra is $1^{1/2}$ in (4 cm) long,

compared to the male's of 8 in (20 cm). This short length and the proximity of its outlet to the anus (allowing bacteria from the anal area to enter the urethra) together account for females' greater susceptibility to urinary infection. One of the most common urinary infections is inflammation of the bladder, known as cystitis. The main symptoms of cystitis are burning pain and a frequent need to urinate, but often with little urine on each occasion.

SITES OF DISORDERS

Each of the urinary organs is affected by its own characteristic diseases. However, a disorder of any single organ can affect other parts of the system.

Pyelonephritis

An acute infection of the urine-collecting system of the kidney

Diabetic nephropathy

Changes to capillaries in the kidneys, which may lead to kidney failure; caused by long-term diabetes mellitus

Glomerulonephritis

Inflammation of the filtering units of the kidney (alomeruli): often related to an autoimmune process

Reflux

Forcing of urine up the ureters by back pressure; can be caused by a blockage of the urethra

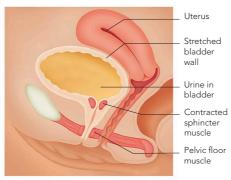
CYSTITIS

This micrograph shows cystitis affecting a bladder lining. Bacteria (vellow rods) colonize the lining's inner surface (blue), causing inflammation.



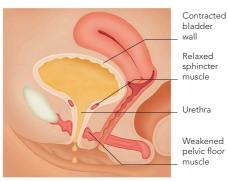
INCONTINENCE

A tendency to leak urine, incontinence most commonly occurs in women, elderly people, and those with brain or spinal cord damage. Women after childbirth may be susceptible because their pelvic floor muscles may be weak. There are different types, such stress incontinence (see below). In urge incontinence, irritable bladder muscle causes the bladder to contract and expel all its urine. In total incontinence, a nervous system disorder such as multiple sclerosis causes total loss of bladder function.



NORMAL BLADDER

A healthy bladder expands like a balloon as it fills with urine. The sphincter muscles and surrounding pelvic floor muscles keep the exit closed. Nerve signals from stretch sensors in the bladder wall travel to the brain, signaling the need for emptying.



STRESS INCONTINENCE

To empty the bladder, the sphincter and pelvic floor muscles relax, and the detrusor muscle in the bladder wall contracts, forcing urine along the urethra. In incontinence, weak muscles may allow this to happen without proper control, so urine leaks out.

KIDNEY STONES

Kidney stones are solid, mineral-rich objects formed from chemicals, such as calcium salts, in urine. They can take years to form, and grow in various shapes and sizes. A stone may stay in the kidney and cause few problems, but it can increase the risk of urinary tract infection.

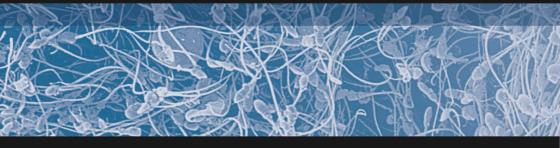
CRYSTALS

Kidney stones are usually formed from the mineral salt calcium oxalate, when it crystallizes from the urine. Crystals of this salt are shown here.



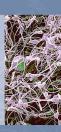
WHERE KIDNEY STONES FORM

iects Kidney stones can occur in any of the urine-collecting parts of the kidneys, such as the calyx or the renal pelvis. e Kidney stone Minor calyx Major calyx Renal pelvis



IN BIOLOGICAL TERMS, THE PRIMARY FUNCTION OF THE HUMAN BODY IS TO REPLICATE ITSELF, AND THE SEXUAL AND PARENTING INSTINCTS ARE AMONG THE STRONGEST OF OUR BASIC DRIVES. AS SCIENCE WIDENS THE GAP BETWEEN SEX AND REPRODUCTION, WE CAN NOW CHOOSE TO HAVE ONE WITHOUT THE OTHER. GENES, WHICH WE INHERIT FROM OUR PARENTS THROUGH THE PROCESS OF SEXUAL REPRODUCTION, INFLUENCE NOT ONLY OUR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS BUT ALSO OUR SUSCEPTIBILITY TO PARTICULAR DISEASES.

REPRODUCTION AND LIFE CYCLE

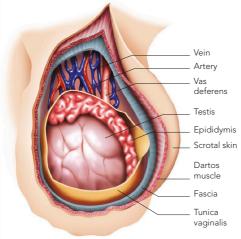


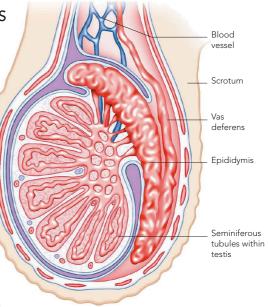
MALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

THE MALE SYSTEM PRODUCES SEX CELLS (GAMETES) CALLED SPERM. UNLIKE FEMALE EGG MATURATION, WHICH OCCURS IN CYCLES AND CEASES AT MENOPAUSE, SPERM PRODUCTION IS CONTINUOUS, DECREASING GRADUALLY WITH AGE.

THE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS

The male reproductive organs include the penis, two testes, several storage and transport ducts, and supporting structures. The oval-shaped testes lie outside the body in a pouch of skin called the scrotum, where they maintain the optimum temperature for making spermapproximately $5^{\circ}F(3^{\circ}C)$ lower than body temperature. Testes are glands responsible for making sperm and the sex hormone testosterone. From each testis, sperm pass into a coiled tube-the epididymis-for the final stages of maturation. They are stored in the epididymides until they are either broken down and reabsorbed, or ejaculated-forced by movement of seminal fluid from the accessory glands (see p.254) down a duct called the vas deferens.





INSIDE THE SCROTUM

The scrotum contains two testes, where sperm are manufactured within tubes called seminiferous tubules, and the two epididymides, where sperm are stored. Each epididymis is a tube about 20ft (6 m) long, which is tightly coiled and bunched into a length of just 2 in (4 cm).

SCROTAL LAYERS

Each testis is covered by a thin tissue layer, the tunica vaginalis, and a layer of connective tissue called fascia. An outer layer called the dartos muscle relaxes in hot weather, dropping the testes to keep them cool, and draws them up in cold weather so they do not become too chilled. The spermatic cord suspends each testis within the scrotum: it contains the testicular artery and vein, lymph vessels, nerves, and the vas deferens.

MALE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS

A midline section through the male lower body shows how the penis and scrotum hang outside the abdomen. Inside, is a complex system of ducts, tubes, and glands where sperm mature and are stored before being ejaculated in semen.

Vas deferens

Thick-walled duct, with narrow central space (lumen) that carries sperm

Ureters

Carry urine from kidneys to bladder; part of the urinary system

Spongy erectile tissue within penis

Bladder Cartilage of pubic symphysis Joint at midpoint of front of pelvis

> **Corpus spongiosum** Spongy erectile tissue within penis

Urethra

Corpus cavernosum

Conveys sperm from testes, or urine from bladder

Glans penis

Sensitive, enlarged fleshy end of the penis

Prepuce (foreskin)

Loosely fitting skin sheath that protects the glans penis

Testis

Produces sperm continuously, about 50,000 per minute

Scrotum Skin pouch that

suspends testes away from body and keeps them cool



12100 10

121000

Prostate gland

Surrounds ejaculatory ducts and first portion of urethra; produces fluid for semen

Rectum

Anus

Seminal vesicle

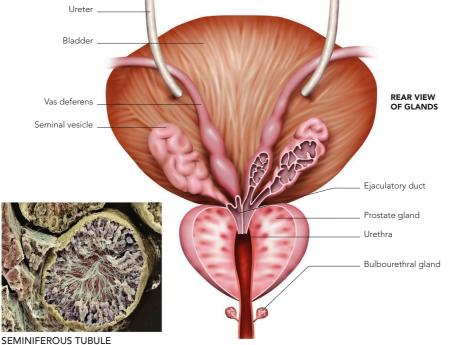
Produces bulk of seminal fluid, including energy sources for sperm

Ejaculatory duct

Conveys sperm and seminal vesicle secretions to urethra

ACCESSORY GLANDS

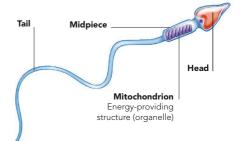
The seminal vesicles and the prostate and bulbourethral glands are together termed the accessory glands. Their secretions are added to sperm during ejaculation. Fluids from the seminal vesicles makes up about 60 percent of semen by volume, and contain sugar (fructose), vitamin C, and prostaglandins. Prostate secretions account for about 30 percent of semen, and include enzymes, fatty acids, cholesterol, and salts to adjust the semen's acid-alkali balance. Secretions from the bulbourethral glands make up 5 percent of semen, and neutralize the acidity of urine traces in the urethra.



SEMINIFEROUS TUBULE This cross section of a seminiferous tubule shows sperm and their long tails as they move toward the center.

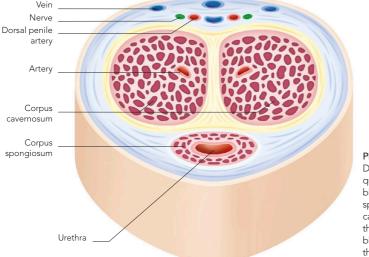
MAKING SPERM

Each testis is a mass of more than 800 tightly looped and folded seminiferous tubules. Here, sperm begin as bloblike cells called spermatogonia lining the inner wall. As they mature, they develop tails and move steadily toward the middle of the tubule. Thousands of sperm are produced every second, each taking about two months to mature.



PATHWAY FOR SPERM

During ejaculation, waves of muscle contraction squeeze the sperm in their fluid from the epididymis along the vas deferens. This tube is joined by a duct from the seminal vesicle to form the ejaculatory duct. The left and right ejaculatory ducts join the urethra within the prostate gland. In the male, the urethra is a dual-purpose tube that carries urine from the bladder during urination and sperm from the testes. During ejaculation, however, the sphincter at the base of the bladder is closed because of high pressure in the urethra, preventing the passage of urine.



PENILE ERECTION

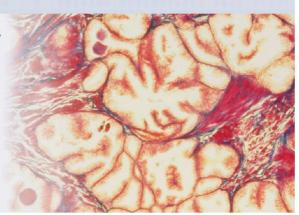
During arousal, large quantities of arterial blood enter the corpus spongiosum and corpus cavernosum, compressing the veins. As a result, blood cannot drain from the penis and it becomes hard and erect.

SEMEN

Seminal fluid, or semen, is sperm mixed with fluid added by the accessory glands (see opposite), including the prostate gland. The prostate secretes fluid through tiny ducts to mix with sperm as they are ejaculated down the urethra. The final mix has around 300–500 million sperm in $\frac{1}{15}-\frac{1}{6}$ floz (2–5ml) of fluid.

PROSTATE GLAND

This microscopic view of a section of prostate gland tissue shows a number of secretory ducts (orange and white).



FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

THE FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS RELEASE AN EGG AT REGULAR INTERVALS AND, IF IT IS FERTILIZED, PROTECT AND NOURISH THE EMBRYO AND FETUS.

REPRODUCTIVE TRACT

The female reproductive glands (ovaries) lie within the abdomen. From puberty, they mature and release the female sex cells (gametes), known as egg cells or ova. This release occurs roughly once a month as part of the menstrual cycle (see p.283). The ripe egg travels along the fallopian tube to the uterus, the muscular sac in which, if fertilized, it develops into an embryo and then a fetus. Unfertilized eggs and the uterine lining are shed via the vagina. The ovaries also make the female sex hormone estrogen.

REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS

A cross section through the female lower abdomen reveals the reproductive structures and organs. The ovaries sit against the abdominal wall. The fallopian tubes arch from them, opening into the muscular, thick-walled womb (uterus).



ENDOMETRIUM

This electron micrograph shows the thick, folded, glandular endometrium (the lining of the uterus). The tissue shown is very rich in blood and ready to receive a fertilized egg.

Rectum Last section of large intestine



FALLOPIAN TUBE LINING

This electron micrograph shows cilia (dark pink) on the fallopian tube lining. They waft a current of fluid to help move an egg to the uterus.

Fallopian tube

Also called the oviduct, or egg tube; carries ripe eggs from ovary to uterus

Fimbriae

Fingerlike flaps that embrace ovary; they oscillate to guide the ovulated egg into the fallopian tube

Ovary

Produces a ripe egg with each menstrual cycle

Uterus

Also called the womb; protects and nourishes the developing baby before birth

Bladder

Pushes uterus up slightly as it fills with urine

Pubic symphysis

Cartilage forming the junction of the two pubic bones

Cervix

Narrow, protruding, collarlike neck of the uterus

Pelvic floor muscles

Hold and support the organs above

Clitoris

Urethra

Carries urine from bladder to outside; opens into front part of vulva

Vagina

Receptacle for sperm, exit for menstrual blood, and passageway for the baby

VULVA

The external genital parts of the female are together known as the vulva. They are sited under the mons pubis, a mound of fatty tissue that covers the junction of the two pubic bones, the pubic symphysis. On the outside are the flaplike labia majora, and the smaller, foldlike labia minora lie within them. The labia majora contain sebaceous glands, smooth muscle, and sensory nerve endings. At puberty, their exposed surfaces begin to grow hairs. Within the vulva are the openings to the vagina and the urethra. At the front end of the labia minora is the clitoris. Like the male penis, it is sensitive and engorges with blood when aroused.



EXTERNAL GENITALS

The external genitals have a protective role, preventing infection from reaching the urethra or vagina, but allowing urine to exit.

OVULATION

An ovary contains thousands of immature egg cells. During a menstrual cycle, follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) causes one egg to develop inside a primary follicle. As the follicle enlarges, it moves to the ovary's surface and produces more estrogen. At ovulation, a surge of luteinizing hormone (LH) causes this secondary follicle to rupture and release the ripe egg. The lining of the empty follicle thickens into a corpus luteum–a temporary source of hormones.

Primary follicle Early development; contains primary oocyte (unripe egg cell)

Secondary follicle Mature stage of development, containing secondary oocyte (ripened egg)

Ovarian ligament Stabilizes position of ovary within abdomen .

EGG RELEASE

This colored electron micrograph shows an egg (red) as it is being released from its follicle into the abdominal cavity. Tendrils (fimbriae) at the end of each fallopian tube guide the egg into the tube.



INSIDE AN OVARY

The ovary contains eggs that are undeveloped, eggs inside follicles at various stages of maturation, and empty follicles forming corpora lutea. The glandular tissue around these follicles is known as the stroma.

Corpus luteum

An empty follicle, filled with hormoneproducing cells

BREASTS

Breasts contain modified sweat glands called mammary glands, which produce milk at childbirth. A breast contains 15–20 lobes of compound areolar glands, each lobe resembling a bunch of grapes on a long stalk. The cells of the glands secrete milk, which flows along merging lactiferous ducts toward the nipple. The breast also contains a widespread drainage system of lymph vessels (see p.192).

Blood vessel

Lobule

One of the groups of milk-producing glands

Lactiferous

ampulla (sinus) Widened portion of lactiferous duct that stores milk

Nipple

Contains connective tissue, smooth muscle, 15–20 lactiferous duct openings, and nerve endings

Areola

Dark area around the nipple

Lactiferous ducts

Carry milk from glandular tissue to nipple

Pectoral muscle

Rib

Lung

Fatty (adipose) and connective tissue

BREAST CROSS SECTION

Each breast rests on the pectoralis major and minor muscles, and is given shape and support by internal suspensory ligaments.

CONCEPTION TO EMBRYO

THE EMBRYONIC CELLS REPEATEDLY DIVIDE, AND BECOME IMPLANTED INTO THE UTERUS LINING.

The first eight weeks in the uterus are known as the embryo stage, in which the fertilized egg becomes a tiny human body, no larger than a thumb. The fertilized egg develops into an enlarging cluster of cells, the blastocyst. Some cells will form the baby's body, while others become the protective membranes or the placenta, which nourishes the embryo and removes waste products. Morula _ Fallopian _ tube lining Cilia

3 MORULA A cluster of 16–32 cells, the morula leaves

morula leaves the fallopian tube and enters the uterus about 3–4 days after fertilization.

Fallopian tube

Fimbriae

Ovary

Ovarian ligament

Fallopian tube

Conveys zygote toward uterus

First cleavage

Large zygote splits itself into two cells

Cilia Microhairs waft the zygote along

> Goblet cells Secrete fluid into tube

The fertilized egg passes along the fallopian tube. Within 24–36 hours it has divided into two cells, then 12 hours later into four cells, and so on. This process is known as cleavage. At each stage the resulting cells become smaller, gradually approaching normal body cell size.

FERTILIZATION

Fertilization takes place in the fallopian tube, when the head of the sperm cell, or spermatozoon, penetrates the much larger ripe egg cell, or mature ovum. This forms a single cell—the fertilized egg, or zygote, which contains 23 pairs of chromosomes (see p.286).

Ovum (egg cell)

Up to 1/250 in (0.1 mm) across (huge compared to other cells); contains 23 maternal chromosomes

Corona cell

Secretes chemicals to aid egg development

Tail of sperm

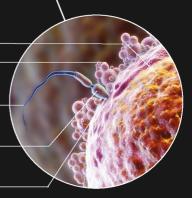
Lashes to propel sperm toward egg

Sperm head

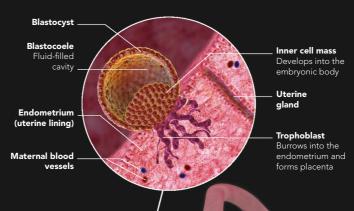
Contains 23 paternal chromosomes

Acrosome

"Cap" of sperm head, which penetrates egg cell membrane

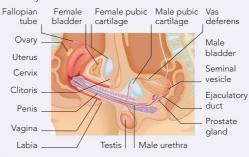


BLASTOCYST About six days after fertilization, the cell cluster forms a hollow cavity known as a blastocyst. It floats within the uterus for around 48 hours before landing on the thick uterus lining (endometrium), which softens to aid implantation (burrowing of the blastocyst into the endometrium). The inner group of cells will become the embryo itself.



SEXUAL INTERCOURSE

During sexual intercourse, more than 300 million sperm are ejaculated into the vagina. Fewer enter the cervix; fewer still reach the fallopian tubes. A few hundred may reach the egg, but only one can fertilize it.



Myometrium

 Endometrium (lining of the uterus)

Cervix

Vagina

EMBRYONIC DISK

Within the inner cell mass, an embryonic disk forms. This separates the cell cluster into the amniotic cavity, which develops into a sac that will fill with fluid and fold around to cover the embryo, and the yolk sac, which helps transport nutrients to the embryo during the second and third weeks. The disk develops three circular sheets called the primary germ layers–ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm–from which all body structures will derive.

EARLY DEVELOPMENT

As soon as implantation has taken place in the lining of the uterus, development begins. The embryonic disk forms the three germ layers, and the placenta starts to form from the trophoblast.

Endometrium Blood-rich uterine lining

Maternal blood sinus . Loose, saclike space filled with the mother's blood

Trophoblast

Mass of embryonic cells that extends into uterine lining to become the placenta

Endoderm

Forms linings of digestive, respiratory, and urogenital tracts, some glands such as thyroid, and the ducts of liver and pancreas

Ectoderm

Develops into skin epidermis, hair, nails, tooth enamel, central nervous system, and sense organ receptor cells

Mesoderm

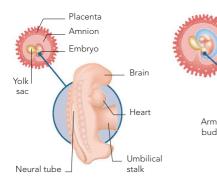
Forms skin dermis, bone, muscle, cartilage, connective tissue, heart, cells and vessels of blood and lymph, also spleen and some glands Yolk sac

Embryonic disk

Amniotic cavity Implantation scar

GROWING EMBRYO

In general, development is from the head down: the brain and head take shape early, then the body, arms, and lastly the legs. Eight weeks after fertilization, all major organs and body parts have formed. From this time on, the baby is known as a fetus.



THREE WEEKS

The embryo is $\frac{4}{50-5}$ (50 in (2–3 mm) long. The neural tube forms. It will become the spinal cord, with a brain at one end. A tubelike heart pulsates.

FOUR WEEKS

The embryo is about ¹/s in (4–5mm) long. A four-chambered heart beats, sending blood through simple vessels. Intestines, liver, lungs, and limb buds can be seen.

Umbilical

cord

EIGHT WEEKS

Face formed

Limb able

Developina

eye

Developing

ear

The embryo is around 1-1 ^{1/5} in (25–30 mm) long. The face, neck, fingers, and toes can be seen.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE PLACENTA The placenta derives from the Embryonic Maternal arterv cells extend trophoblast-the outer layer of Trophoblast Maternal blood sinus into uterine the blastocyst (the mass of cells Maternal vein blood vessels, so that results from the fusion of that maternal Lining of uterus egg and sperm). It begins to form (endometrium) blood flows into soon after the fertilized egg spaces (sinuses) implants in the uterine lining Embryonic within the (see opposite), and becomes cells trophoblast. almost fully developed by the fifth month of pregnancy. Endometrium Maternal blood Maternal chamber blood sinus (lacuna) Chorionic Chorionic villus villus Fetal arterv Umbilical cord Fetal vein vessel Fingerlike projections, called chorionic villi, The villi branch further and the maternal blood grow and are surrounded by maternal blood sinuses enlarge into lacunae ("lakes"), supplying sinuses. Later, fetal blood vessels grow into the villi. the placenta with oxygen and nutrients.

263

FETAL DEVELOPMENT

FROM THE EIGHTH WEEK, WHEN THE BABY STARTS TO BE KNOWN AS A FETUS, ITS BODY GROWS LARGER AND STRONGER.

CHANGES IN THE FETUS

By 12 weeks, the fetus has a large head compared with the rest of its body, and all major internal organs have developed. By around 16 weeks, the fetus can move its limbs vigorously. As its growth continues, the fetus becomes leaner, but by the seventh to eighth month, it starts to accumulate fat and to assume the "chubby" appearance of the newborn.

Umbilical cord

Immunological, nutritional, and hormonal link with the mother

Amnion Strong, transparent sac within the chorion: it encloses amniotic fluid

> Amniotic fluid Shock-absorbing liquid in which the fetus "floats"

> > Chorion Main protective sac around the fetus

Cervical plug Plug of thick mucus that blocks the cervix to prevent infection

36 WEEKS

The fetus is now somewhat restricted by the uterus. The side of the placenta facing the fetus is smooth and circular in outline. with the umbilical cord attached at the center

Cervix Lower part of the uterus that extends into the vagina; it stays tightly closed until birth is near

> Vagina Birth canal

Chorionic villi

Wisps of placental tissue; bunches of villi create large area for gas, nutrient, and waste exchange

Maternal lacunae

Pools of maternal blood that surround the chorionic villi

Fetal blood vessels

Umbilical arteries that branch in placenta to the chorionic villi

Maternal blood vessel

Permeates uterine lining near the placenta

Endometrium

Thick, blood-infused inner layer of uterus

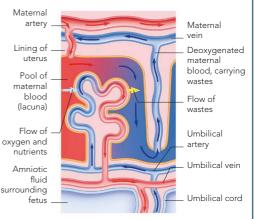
Myometrium

Powerful, muscular outer layer of uterus

Umbilical arteries Carry waste-laden blood to placenta

Umbilical vein

Takes filtered, nutrient-rich blood back to the fetus



HOW THE PLACENTA WORKS

Oxygen, nutrients, and antibodies pass from the

passes to the mother in the umbilical arteries.

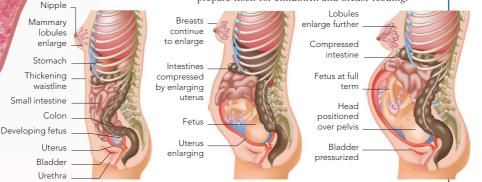
mother to the fetus in the umbilical veins: fetal waste

EXCHANGE OF OXYGEN AND NUTRIENTS

A thin barrier of cells in the chorion allows the exchange of gases, nutrients, and waste between mother and fetus.

CHANGES IN THE MOTHER

Pregnancy is divided into trimesters, each lasting about three calendar months. During this time, the mother's body changes to support the fetus and to prepare itself for childbirth and breast-feeding.



FIRST TRIMESTER

Breasts become tender and larger, with darkened areolas; nausea and vomiting are common.

SECOND TRIMESTER

Enlarging uterus shows; heart rate increases; forehead and cheek skin may temporarily darken.

THIRD TRIMESTER

Abdominal skin stretches; fatigue, back pain, heartburn, and some breathlessness may occur.

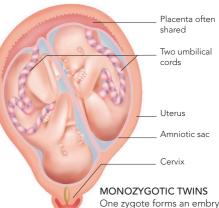
PREPARING FOR BIRTH

CHANGES DURING LATE PREGNANCY SIGNAL THE APPROACH OF CHILDBIRTH. THE HEAD OF THE FETUS DROPS LOWER INTO THE PELVIS; THE EXPECTANT MOTHER MAY EXPERIENCE WEIGHT LOSS; AND THERE MAY BE EARLY UTERINE CONTRACTIONS.

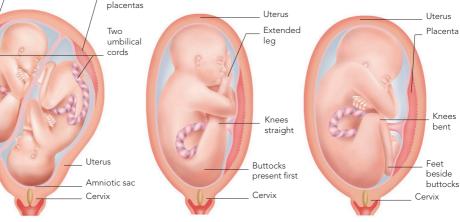
MULTIPLE PREGNANCY AND FETAL POSITIONS

The presence of more than one fetus in the uterus is called a multiple pregnancy. Twins occur in approximately one in 80 pregnancies, and triplets in about one in 8,000. After about 30 weeks, the most common fetal position is head down, facing the mother's back, with the neck flexed forward. Such a position eases the baby's passage through the birth canal. However, about 1 in 30 full-term deliveries is breech, in which the baby's buttocks emerge before the head.

Two



One zygote forms an embryo that develops into two fetuses that have the same genes and sex and often share one placenta. They are "identical" twins.



DIZYGOTIC TWINS

Two zygotes develop separately, each with its own placenta. They may be different or the same sex. They are "fraternal twins" and are like any brothers and sisters.

FRANK BREECH

The baby fails to turn head-down in the uterus. The hips are flexed and the legs are straight, extending alongside the body so that the feet are positioned beside the head.

COMPLETE BREECH

The legs are flexed at the hips and knees, so the feet are next to the buttocks. The incidence of breech delivery is much higher among premature babies.

CHANGES IN THE CERVIX

The cervix is the firm band of muscle and connective tissue that forms the necklike structure at the bottom of the uterus. In late pregnancy, it softens in readiness for childbirth. Sporadic uterine tightenings,

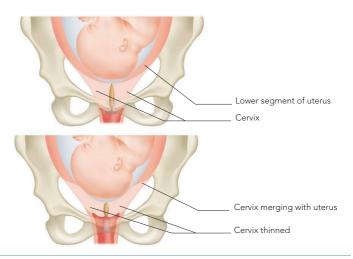
known as Braxton–Hicks contractions. help thin the cervix so that it merges with the uterus's lower segment. These are usually painless and become noticeable only after the middle of pregnancy.

CERVIX SOFTENING

As labor nears, the cervix tissues lose their firm consistency. They become softer and more spongy, affected by natural substances in the blood called prostaglandins.

CERVIX THINNING

The cervix becomes wider and thinner, and merges smoothly into the uterus wall above. The process of softening and thinning is known as effacement.

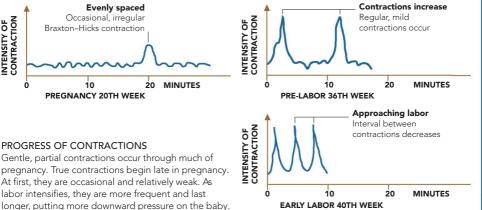


CONTRACTIONS

The shortening of uterine muscles, with the eventual aim of expelling the fetus, are called contractions, which are regular and become steadily more frequent, more



painful, and longer lasting. The main area of contraction is in the muscles of the uterine fundus (upper uterus), which stretches, causing the lower uterus and cervix to thin.



LABOR

LABOR USUALLY MEANS THE FULL PROCESS OF GIVING BIRTH. IT CAN BE DIVIDED INTO THREE PHASES OR STAGES: ONSET OF CONTRACTIONS TO FULL DILATION OF THE CERVIX; DELIVERY OF THE BABY; AND DELIVERY OF THE PLACENTA (AFTERBIRTH).

ENGAGEMENT

Toward the end of pregnancy, the part of the baby that will emerge first—usually the head—descends into the pelvic cavity. This is called engagement. Many women feel a sensation of dropping and "lightening" as it happens because the movement of the



BEFORE THE HEAD ENGAGES Before engagement, the top of the uterus reaches the breastbone. The baby's head has yet to pass through the inlet of the pelvis into the cavity.

baby lowers the upper uterus, relieving the pressure on the diaphragm and making it easier for the mother to breathe. Engagement usually takes place at about 36 weeks during a first pregnancy and at the onset of labor during subsequent pregnancies.



AFTER ENGAGEMENT

The baby's head descends into the pelvic cavity. The overall position of the uterus drops, and the baby's head rests against the uterine cervix.

CERVICAL DILATION

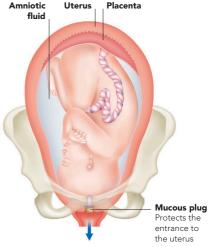
Labor begins with the onset of regular, painful contractions, which dilate the cervix. These occur mainly in the upper uterus, which shortens and tightens, pulling and stretching the lower uterus and cervix. For a first baby, the cervix dilates at about ¹/₂in (1 cm) per hour on average; progress is usually quicker for subsequent babies. In most women, the cervix is fully dilated when it opens to around 4 in (10 cm).



SIGNS OF EARLY LABOR

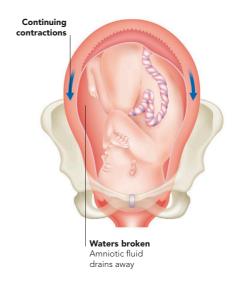
Every woman's personal experience of childbirth is different, but generally there are three particular signs that labor is starting. First there is a "show," followed by contractions, and finally the water breaks. Before labor begins (usually less than 3 days), the mucous plug in the cervix, which has been acting as a seal during pregnancy, is passed as a blood-stained or brownish discharge (the "show"). As the contractions of the uterus become stronger and more regular, the membranes that retain the amniotic fluid rupture (break), allowing the fluid (water) to leak out via the birth canal.

Fundus



THE "SHOW"

For most of the time during a pregnancy, the mucous plug in the cervix prevents microbes from entering the uterus. As the cervix widens slightly, the plug loosens and falls out.



WATER BREAKS

3 WATER BREAKS The amniotic sac (membrane) around the baby ruptures, or breaks, allowing colorless amniotic fluid to pass out through the birth canal.



CONTRACTIONS

Coordinated muscular contractions are generated in the upper part of the uterus, called the fundus. This helps gradually open, or dilate, the cervix.

LABOR

DELIVERY

THE CULMINATION OF PREGNANCY AND LABOR, DELIVERY OF THE BABY AND THE PLACENTA, INVOLVES A COMPLEX SEQUENCE OF EVENTS THAT ULTIMATELY SEPARATES CHILD FROM MOTHER, ALLOWING THE START OF THEIR INDEPENDENT RELATIONSHIP.

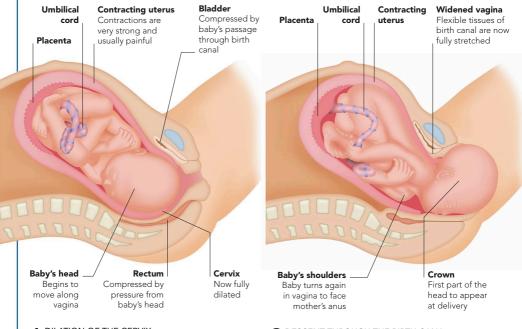
THREE STAGES OF CHILDBIRTH

During the first stage, the cervix dilates and the water breaks (see p.269). The second stage, delivery, sees uterine contractions synchronize with shifts in the baby's position as it fits its large head into the birth canal and then travels along it to the outside world. In the third stage, the placenta, or "afterbirth," is delivered, often with the help of an obstetrician or a midwife gently pulling on the cord.



NORMAL DELIVERY

Newborn babies are usually covered with a combination of blood, mucus, and vernix (the greasy covering that protected the fetus in the uterus). This baby's umbilical cord has not vet been clamped and cut.



DILATION OF THE CERVIX

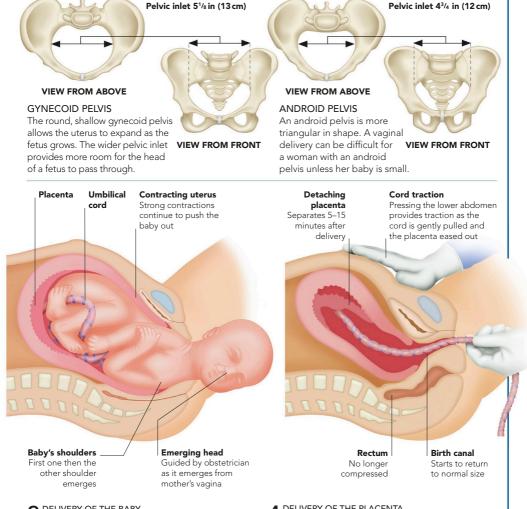
When the cervix is fully dilated, the baby turns so that the widest part of its skull aligns with the widest part of the mother's pelvis. As the baby tucks in its chin, it starts moving out of the uterus.

DESCENT THROUGH THE BIRTH CANA

The top of the baby's head appears ("crowning"). Usually, the baby faces the mother's anus, allowing the emerging head to negotiate the bend in the fully stretched vagina. Birth is usually imminent at this point.

DELIVERY

A woman's pelvis is adapted to child-bearing and delivery, but it varies greatly in shape. Some shapes make childbirth easier than others. The classic "female pelvis" (gynecoid) has a generous capacity, and usually results in few problems. A pelvis that is more like a man's (android) is less spacious and can cause difficulties at childbirth.



3 DELIVERY OF THE BABY

O The obstetrician checks the cord is not around the baby's neck, and clears mucus from its nose and mouth. The baby rotates again so the shoulders can slip out easily, one shoulder quickly followed by the other.

DELIVERY OF THE PLACENTA

+ The uterus mildly contracts soon after the baby is born, sealing any bleeding blood vessels. The placenta separates from the uterus and is eased out by gently pulling the cord while pressing on the lower abdomen.

AFTER THE BIRTH

OVER 40 WEEKS, THE FERTILIZED EGG HAS CHANGED FROM EMBRYO TO NEWBORN BABY. ALL ORGAN SYSTEMS ARE IN PLACE—SOME QUICKLY ADAPT TO LIFE WITHOUT AN UMBILICAL CORD, WHILE OTHERS DO NOT DEVELOP FULLY UNTIL ADOLESCENCE.

NEWBORN ANATOMY

Special features in a baby's anatomy help it grow and develop outside the uterus. Fontanelles allow the skull to expand as the brain grows; they become bone by the time the child is about six years old. Cartilage in the joints and at the end of long bones allows the skeleton to grow rapidly. In the fetus, the liver produced all the red blood cells, but this task is now taken over by the bone marrow.

Jaw

Contains fully formed primary (milk) teeth within jawbone; in most cases, teeth do not start to erupt until the baby is six months old

Heart

Changes in structure at birth to enable blood to circulate through the lungs rather than through the placenta

Lung

With the first breath, the baby's lungs fill with air, expand, and regular breathing (respiration) begins

Intestines

Excrete the first fecal material as a thick, sticky, greenishblack mixture of bile and mucus, called meconium

Femur

Long bone of the thigh; only the shaft has hardened into bone at birth; the ends are still cartilage to allow for growth

Foot

At birth, most of the bones in the foot are cartilage, and the foot may be turned in or out depending on baby's position in the uterus

Fontanelle -Flexible, fibrous joint between skull bones; fontanelles allow changes in skull shape, facilitating the passage of the baby through the birth canal

Thymus gland Part of the immune

system; is large at birth, because the immune system is maturing rapidly

Liver

Relatively large at birth since it is the major site of blood production in the fetus

Pelvis

Primarily made of cartilage at birth; hardens to bone tissue (ossifies) during childhood

Genitals

Large in both sexes; girls may have a slight vaginal discharge

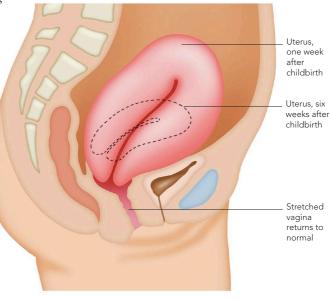
CHANGES IN THE MOTHER

Many physiological changes take place in the mother after birth, for which her body has prepared during pregnancy. The process of enhancing breast tissue in anticipation of breastfeeding begins early in pregnancy: the breasts enlarge visibly, and the alveoli in each of the milk-producing glands (lobules) swell and multiply. From three months into

the pregnancy, the breasts can produce colostrum, a fluid rich in antibodies (which help protect a

UTERUS SHRINKS

After delivery of the baby and the placenta in the second and third stages of labor, hormones in the mother's body cause her uterus and vagina to shrink back to their normal size and position in her body. newborn from allergies and respiratory and gastrointestinal infections), water, protein, and minerals. After the birth, colostrum supplies a breast-fed baby with nutrition until the mother's milk begins to flow several days later. Soon after birth, the uterus begins to shrink to its prepregnancy size—a process that is helped by breastfeeding.



LACTATION

During pregnancy, lobules (milk-producing glands) increase in size and number in preparation for breastfeeding the baby. By the end of the first trimester, they can produce colostrum, the yellow fluid that provides antibodies to protect against allergies and gastrointestinal and respiratory infections in the newborn.



BEFORE PREGNANCY



DURING PREGNANCY AND LACTATION

CIRCULATION IN THE UTERUS

As the placenta provides oxygen and nutrients, the fetal circulation has anatomical variations ("shunts") that bypass the not-yet-functioning liver and lungs. The ductus venosus shunts incoming blood through the liver to the right atrium, which shunts it through a gap, the foramen ovale, to the left atrium (mostly bypassing the right ventricle) and onward to the body. Any blood that enters the right ventricle passes into the pulmonary artery but is shunted into the aorta by the ductus arteriosus, thus bypassing the lungs.

Blood supply from upper body parts

Right atrium

Foramen ovale Window between atria, which forms a shortcut for blood passing from placenta to fetus

Pulmonary artery

Ductus venosus Connects umbilical vein to inferior vena cava

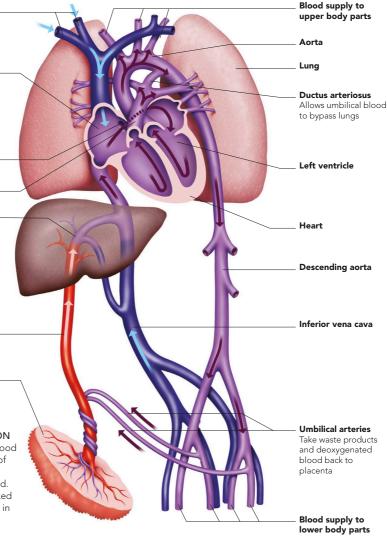
Umbilical vein Carries all nourishment and dissolved gases from the placenta

Placenta

Links blood supplies of mother and baby

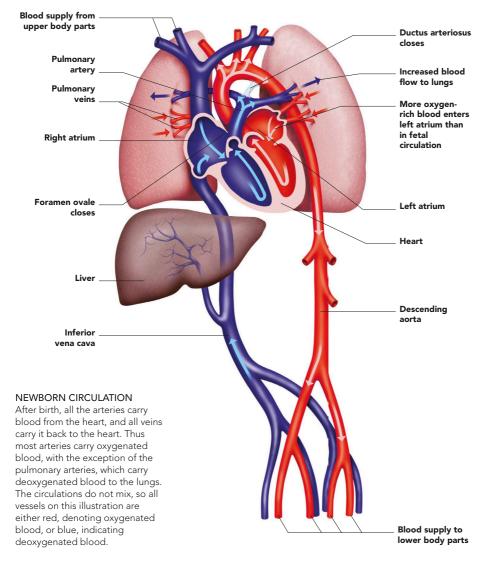
FETAL CIRCULATION

Much of the fetal blood supply is a mixture of oxygenated and deoxygenated blood. Vessels carrying mixed blood are indicated in purple on this illustration.



CIRCULATION AT BIRTH

At birth, the baby takes its first breaths and the umbilical cord is clamped. This forces the circulatory system into a monumental response: to convert itself immediately to obtain its oxygen supply via the lungs. Blood is sent to the lungs to retrieve oxygen, and the pressure of this blood returning from the lungs into the left atrium forces shut the foramen ovale between the two atria, thus establishing normal circulation. The ductus arteriosus, the ductus venosus, and the umbilical vein and arteries close up and become ligaments.

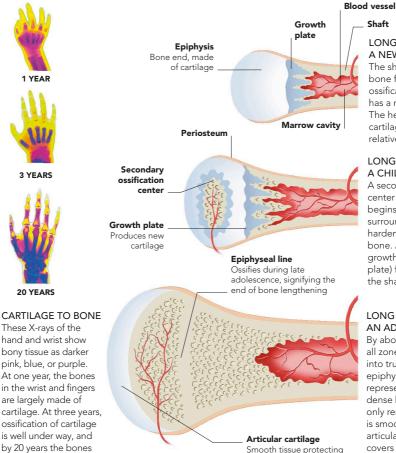


GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT

YOUNG CHILDREN DEVELOP BASIC PHYSICAL SKILLS AND THEN BECOME MORE AGILE, WITH INCREASED INTELLECTUAL ABILITIES. PHYSICAL GROWTH RATE IS RAPID DURING INFANCY, AND THEN IS FAIRLY STEADY UNTIL IT SPEEDS UP AGAIN AT PUBERTY.

BONE GROWTH

Body growth depends on the increasing size of the skeleton. The long leg bones provide most of the increase in height. Many long bones develop from cartilage precursors, by a sequence of changes (ossification) that starts before birth at primary centers in the bone shafts. After birth, secondary centers develop near the bone ends. Growth ceases once ossification is complete, at 18–20 years of age.



the bone end

LONG BONE OF A NEWBORN

The shaft turns to hard bone from the primary ossification center, and has a marrow cavity. The head is all cartilage, and is relatively soft.

LONG BONE OF A CHILD

A secondary ossification center inside the end begins to change the surrounding cartilage to hardened, mineralized bone. An elongating growth area (growth plate) forms between the shaft and the end.

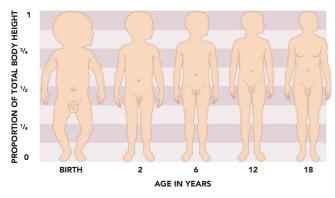
LONG BONE OF AN ADULT

By about 18–20 years, all zones have hardened into true bone, with the epiphyseal growth plate represented by a line of dense bony tissue. The only remaining cartilage is smooth and slippery articular cartilage, which covers the head of the end inside the joint.

are fully formed

CHANGING PROPORTIONS

A newborn's head is relatively large, being wider than the shoulders and representing about a quarter of the baby's total height; the legs are about three-eighths of this height. As the child grows, the arms and legs "catch up." At two years, the head is about a sixth of the total height. When final adult size is reached during adolescence, the head is only about an eighth of the body length, and the legs one-half.

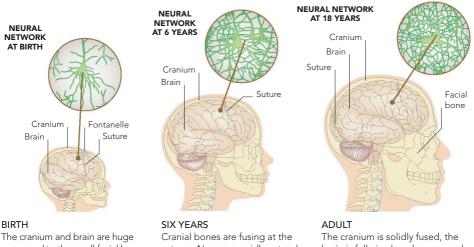


HEAD-BODY PROPORTIONS

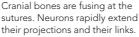
If the body's height at different ages is superimposed onto a grid, the changes in headbody proportions that take place from birth to adulthood are clearly shown. The overall growth trend is for the head to lead, growing first and fastest. Then the other regions of the body catch up: first the torso, followed by the arms, and finally the leqs.

SKULL AND BRAIN

At birth, the brain is a quarter of its adult size. It has almost its full complement of neurons, but they have yet not made many interconnections. Gaps (fontanelles) and seams (sutures) between the skull bones allow for expansion. By two years, the brain is four-fifths of its adult size, and neurons are forging links into networks.



compared to the small facial bones. The neurons make limited links.



The cranium is solidly fused, the brain is full-sized, and new neural links are made less often.

DENTAL

The first set of teeth, known as the primary or deciduous dentition, erupts through the gums in a set order from about six months into the third year. In general, apart from the canines, the teeth appear from the front to the back. However, the exact times and order vary between individuals, and occasionally a baby is born with one or more teeth. Primary teeth loosen and fall out as the adult, or permanent, dentition erupts through the gums. This usually starts at about six years of age. The set of 32 permanent teeth is complete once the third molars (known as wisdom teeth) appear in the late teens or early twenties. In some people, however, the third molars never make an appearance above the gum.

TOOTH ERUPTION In this color-enhanced X-ray, a permanent, or adult, tooth (green) is shown erupting under a child's baby, or deciduous, teeth.

STAGES OF DEVELOPMENT

Babies are born able to see, hear, and perform reflex actions, such as grasping, urination, and defecation. Gradually, the infant learns to bring these reflexes under conscious control. As the eyes develop the ability to focus clearly, the baby watches his or her hands, and learns how conscious movements formulated in the brain result in actual physical movement. During early childhood, these basic motor skills are refined further. The child also gains a range of social developmental skills, such as smiling, to elicit a response from those nearby. For most children, development takes place in a fairly

MOTOR SKILLS

Basic motor coordination starts by "trial and error." An infant learns to associate a movement pattern with its mental intention to make the movement. Muscles gradually become coordinated as the brain learns to combine patterns of movements by reinforcing and linking the neural pathways that control them.

VISION AND MANUAL DEXTERITY

A new baby can focus clearly on objects up to a yard away. After six months, items several yards away are clear. The eyes are more coordinated, rather than occasionally squinting. Handeye coordination soon develops as the baby watches its fingers and senses what they touch.

SOCIAL AND LANGUAGE

After a few weeks, a baby starts to turn toward sounds. Language develops from listening and associating sounds with objects, and by practicing first words. In the second year, a child learns words at an astonishing rate. Social skills develop in tandem with language skills.

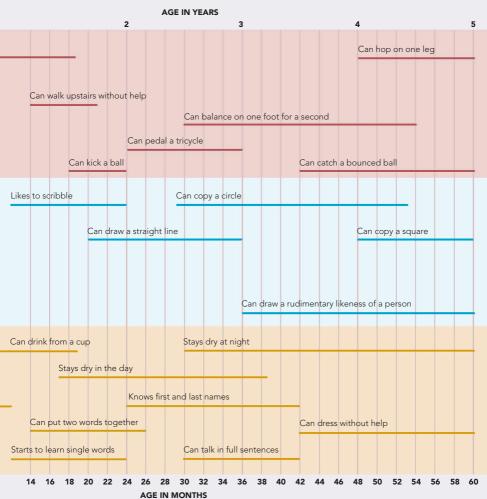


predictable sequence: for example, standing must occur before walking. However, there is great variation in the ages at which stages are reached; acquiring a skill early does not always mean the skill will improve later. Some babies and children miss stages and go straight on to the next ones.

NEONATAL GRASP

A newborn's grasp, when its palm is touched, is one of the primitive reflexes, which disappear in a few months.





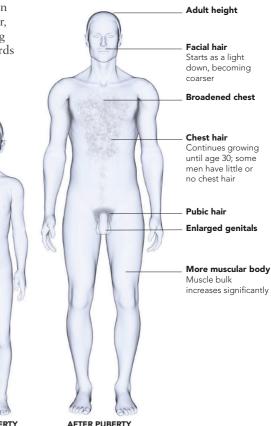
PUBERTY

AT PUBERTY, A NUMBER OF HORMONAL CHANGES STIMULATE PHYSICAL GROWTH AND THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE SEX ORGANS. IN BOTH SEXES, EMOTIONAL, BEHAVIORAL, AND PSYCHOLOGICAL CHANGES ALSO OCCUR.

MALE PUBERTY

In boys, the physical changes of puberty start later than in girls, around age 12 or 13. Most show signs of development by age 14, and complete the changes of puberty by age 17 or 18. The testes and penis get bigger first, then hair grows in the pubic area and armpits. Muscles increase in bulk, and some breast tissue might also develop. The hormone testosterone causes cartilage in the voice box to grow larger and thicker, which results in the vocal cords getting longer and thicker. This causes the cords to vibrate at a lower frequency, so the voice becomes deeper. Finally,

facial hair appears, which may be accompanied by acne. Boys are more likely than girls to experience problems with perspiration and oily skin. The sign of sexual maturation for boys is ejaculation. Although they are capable of having an erection from birth, boys only produce sperm when testosterone begins circulating in their bodies. It is then that they are able to ejaculate for the first time.



CHANGES IN THE BODY

Boys start growing later than girls. Once they begin growing, however, they grow faster and for a longer period, thus attaining a greater adult height. At age 14 or 15, the average boy is taller, heavier, and stronger than an average girl and is still growing.

BEFORE PUBERTY

SPERM PRODUCTION

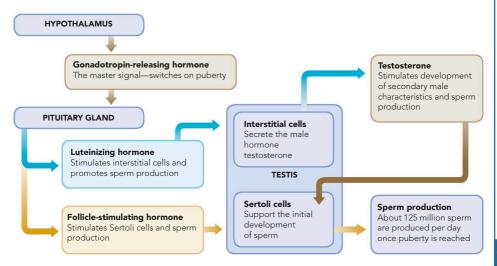
Sperm develop in the seminiferous tubules of the testes. Sperm cells gradually move away from the supporting cells and mature as they pass through the seminiferous tubule and epididymis. The process takes about 74 days.

MATURING SPERM

This cross section through several seminiferous tubules in the testis shows maturing sperm with tails in the center (blue).

MALE HORMONE CONTROL

Hormone production is often regulated by feedback (see p.139), when the amount of a substance controls how much of it is made. The testes, hypothalamus, and pituitary gland control production of sperm and male hormones in this way. Gonadotropinreleasing hormone (GnRH) from the hypothalamus stimulates the pituitary to control testis function via follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH). High levels of testosterone act on the pituitary to slow the release of LH and FSH.



FEMALE PUBERTY

Changes to the female body are caused by the hormones estrogen and progesterone. The first sign of puberty is the development of breasts, which starts around 10–11 years. Then hair grows in the armpits and pubic area. Leg hair thickens, and body shape



FOLLICLE IN AN OVARY At puberty, the ovary starts to form mature follicles each containing a single egg (red). changes as body fat increases. Hair and skin become oily, which may cause acne. Periods tend to begin at 12 to 13 years. Girls may experience mood swings and irritability.

CHANGES IN THE BODY Growth rate peaks at about age 12, when girls grow up to 3¹/₂ in (9 cm) a year. Growth usually stops by the age of 16. **BEFORE PUBERTY**



Adult height

The growth spurt at puberty begins earlier in girls than in boys

Armpit hair

Breast development

Area around nipple swells, with a small amount of breast tissue underneath

Broadened hips

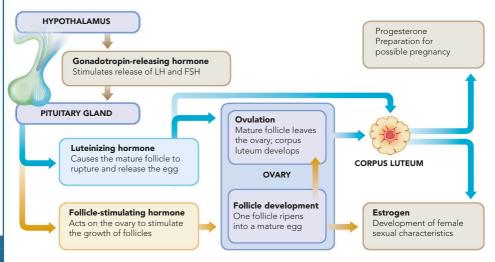
Pelvis and hips widen and waist narrows due to fat redistribution

Pubic hair

AFTER PUBERTY

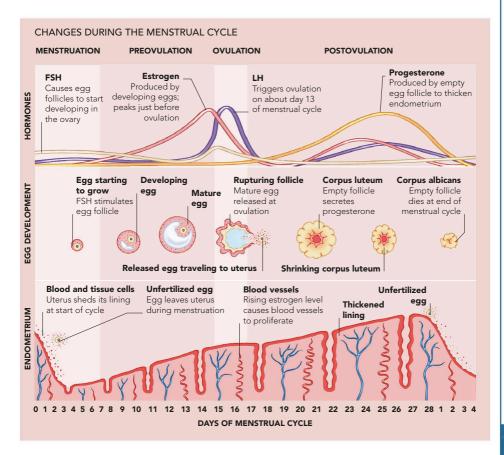
FEMALE HORMONE CONTROL

In the menstrual cycle, the hypothalamus releases gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) to trigger the pituitary to secrete luteinizing hormone (LH) and folliclestimulating hormone (FSH). These hormones control the activity of the ovaries and female hormones, and also send feedback (see p.139) to the hypothalamus and the pituitary gland.



THE MENSTRUAL CYCLE

For a few days each month, the lining of the uterus is shed and blood passes out through the vagina. The lining thickens again to prepare for the implantation of a fertilized egg. This is the menstrual cycle. It starts when the pituitary gland releases FSH (see opposite), which stimulates egg follicles in the ovary. The follicles secrete estradiol, a form of estrogen. This triggers the release of LH, which matures the egg and weakens the follicle wall, allowing the release of the mature egg (ovum). Whether the right or left ovary ovulates is entirely random. If fertilized, the embryo is implanted into the uterine wall, and signals its presence by releasing human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG), the hormone measured in pregnancy tests. This signal maintains the corpus luteum and enables it to continue producing progesterone. In the absence of a pregnancy and without HCG, the corpus luteum dies and progesterone levels fall. Progesterone withdrawal leads to menstrual bleeding and, as FSH levels rise, a new crop of follicles is formed—the cycle begins again.



AGING

THE BRAIN, MUSCLES, JOINTS, EYES, AND OTHER ORGANS ALL DECLINE WITH AGE, BUT CHANGES ARE USUALLY SMALL UNTIL AFTER THE AGE OF 60. GENETICS AND LIFESTYLE ARE MAJOR CONTRIBUTORS TO A PERSON'S LIFESPAN.

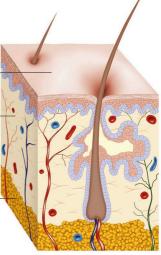
CELLULAR DETERIORATION

Cells divide a fixed number of times and then stop functioning properly. Connective tissue becomes increasingly stiff, making the organs, blood vessels, and airways more rigid. Changes in cell membranes impede the delivery of oxygen and nutrients and the removal of carbon dioxide and wastes, causing an increase in pigments and fatty substances inside cells. How quickly a person's cells deteriorate, and therefore how long he or she lives, is a balance between how fast things go wrong with cells and how efficiently the body functions to prevent damage from building up.

Epidermis Thick layer confers strength

Dermis Well supplied with elastic and collagen fibers

Fatty layer Gives strong support to upper skin layers



Liver spots

Pigmentation patches in areas exposed to sun

Wrinkles

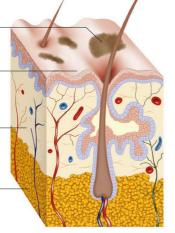
Creased, sagging skin that gives a lined appearance

Dermis

Thinner; contains fewer collagen fibers, causing reduced elastic recoil

Fatty layer

Thicker relative to dermis, although may also be thinner with age



OLDER SKIN

A thinner outer layer, and fewer elastic fibers and collagen in the deeper layers, result in skin that appears loose, with deeper creases and wrinkles.

YOUNG SKIN

A thick top layer, many elastic and collagen fibers in the deeper layers, good layers of supporting fat, and plenty of sebaceous glands producing oil all help maintain the smoothness and suppleness of young skin.



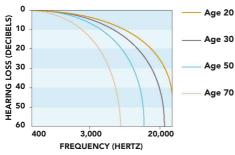
AGING GRACEFULLY Skin wrinkling is one of the most visible signs of aging. Creased and sagging skin, seen as wrinkles, can be predetermined by genes.

NERVOUS SYSTEM

As people age, the brain and nervous system undergo changes, losing nerve cells. Messages are transmitted more slowly, and the senses may be affected.

HEARING

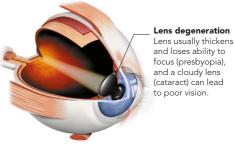
More than half of people over 60 have hearing difficulties. Problems are caused by changes in the cochlea in the inner ear (see p.117). At birth, there are about 15,000 hair cells in the inner ear, but they gradually reduce with age, and the body is unable to generate new cells.



Reflexes may be lost, leading to problems with movement and safety. Waste products may collect in the brain tissue. Some slowing of memory and thinking occurs.

VISION

Older people are susceptible to a number of visual disorders (see p.129). In a cataract, for example, the normally transparent lens of the eye becomes cloudy. Meanwhile, macular degeneration can affect the retina, causing detailed vision to deteriorate.



HIGH-FREQUENCY DROP-OFF

Aging usually causes a loss of sensitivity to sounds; they may become dull or distorted so that speech is difficult to follow. The first sign is often difficulty hearing high-frequency sounds. Hearing aids may enhance the ability to understand speech.

COMMON EYE PROBLEMS

A range of eye and visual disorders, particularly those involving the ability of the lens to focus, is more likely to occur with increasing age. Presbyopia, in which people lose the ability to adjust their eyes so they can see nearby objects, is almost universal.

MENOPAUSE

Menopause results from decreased production of sex hormones. Symptoms include hot flashes, insomnia, night sweats, and headaches. Falling estrogen levels can also cause depression. Menstruation may be irregular for several years up to menopause, which is complete once a woman has not had a period for one year. The average age for menopause in developed countries is 51 years.



PREMENOPAUSAL

fluids are secreted

Before menopause, the vaginal

lining is thick and well lubricated;

the walls stretch easily and mucous

VAGINA

POST MENOPAUSAL VAGINA

Declining estrogen levels cause a reduction in vaginal mucus production; the vagina walls lose some elasticity and become thinner.

INHERITANCE

THE PASSING OF GENETIC INFORMATION FROM PARENT TO CHILD IS KNOWN AS INHERITANCE. THE INFORMATION IS CONTAINED IN CHEMICAL CODES CARRIED BY DEOXYRIBONUCLEIC ACID (DNA) IN THE SEX CELLS (EGGS AND SPERM).

INHERITANCE OF GENES

Everything that specifies a person is found in the genes. Each gene carries a "blueprint" to make a particular product, some of which affect appearance or biology—skin pigment, for instance. Other gene products combine to produce a complex trait, such as athletic ability. Simple features controlled by single genes are inherited in predictable patterns (see pp.290–93). However, complex traits, such as height, are controlled by many genes.

CELL

The genetic information of DNA is based in the cell's nucleus. Almost every type of body cell carries DNA, but a few specialized types, such as red blood cells, lose it as they mature.

Sent -a m as Vetic Chromosome 12 Contains 1-4.5% of total genomic DNA; carries 1,00-1,300 genes

GENOME

Nucleus

The full complement of genetic instructions, known as the human genome, is carried by 23 pairs of chromosomes (see p.34). They represent about 20,000 protein-coding genes—a relatively low number for an organism as complex as the human being. The tiny fruit fly *Drosophila*, long used for genetic experiments, has 13,600 genes.

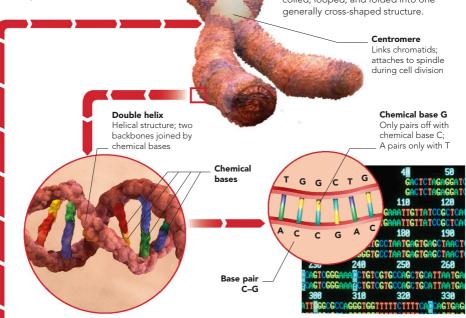
SEQUENCING THE GENOME

By 2003, the Human Genome Project identified all 3 billion base pairs in the full set of human DNA. In 2012, it was realized that a large portion of the DNA instructs for building RNA rather than proteins. A major technique used in DNA sequencing is gel electrophoresis. DNA is extracted from cells, purified, and broken into smaller fragments of known length by chemicals known as restriction enzymes. The DNA fragments are separated out and stained with dye, showing up as dark stripes, like bar codes (see right). Computers can read these bar codes and reveal the sequences of base pairs.



CHROMOSOME

Each chromosome is an immensely long, thin molecule of DNA. When ready for cell division, it duplicates itself as a doublechromosome consisting of two identical sister chromatids, in which the DNA is coiled, looped, and folded into one generally cross-shaped structure.



GENETIC CODE

Chromatids

Replicated twins

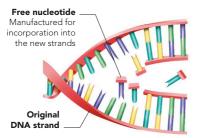
DNA consists of two spiral backbones joined by cross-rungs, which are pairs of chemical bases. The bases are adenine (A), thymine (T), guanine (G), and cytosine (C).

GENETIC SEQUENCE

The order of base pairs on DNA represents the coded genetic information. Using chemicals to identify the bases, DNA-sequencing machines can show the data on screen as lists of letters.

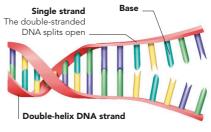
DNA REPLICATION

Apart from carrying genetic information in chemically coded form, as its sequences of base pairs. DNA has another key feature. It can make exact copies of itself, a process known as replication, by separating the two backbone strands and the bases attached to them, at the bonds between the base pairs. Then each strand acts as a template to build a complementary partner strand. DNA replication takes place before cell division (see right).



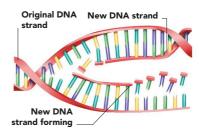
BASES JOIN

Z Free nucleotides, each one a base combined with a portion of DNA backbone, join to the two sets of exposed bases. This can only happen in the correct order, since A always pairs with T, and C with G.



SEPARATION

The two strands of the double helix separate at the base pair links. Each base is exposed, ready to latch onto its partner in the newly constructed strand.

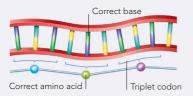


TWO STRANDS FORM

3 More nucleotides join, linked by a new backbone. Each strand now has a new "mirror-image" partner, giving two double helices, which are identical to each other and to the original.

MUTATIONS

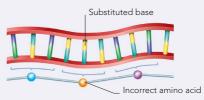
DNA replication usually works well. However, factors such as radiation or certain chemicals may cause a fault, where one or more base pairs do not copy



NORMAL GENE

Each set of three base pairs (a triplet codon) specifies which amino acid should be added to the series of amino acids that make the normal protein for that gene.

exactly. This change is a mutation. The new base sequence may produce a different protein, which could cause a problem in the body.



MUTATED GENE

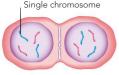
In a point mutation, one base pair has become altered and substituted. A different amino acid may be specified, which will disrupt the protein's eventual shape and function.

MAKING NEW BODY CELLS

Cell division (mitosis) produces new cells for growth, maintenance, and repair. First, all the DNA replicates and the chromosomes

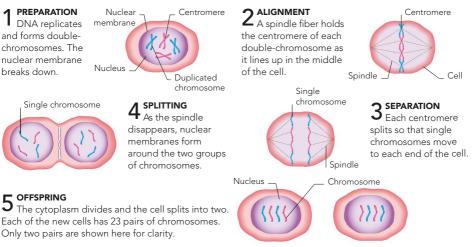
PREPARATION DNA replicates and forms doublechromosomes. The nuclear membrane breaks down.

Nuclear Centromere membrane Nucleus Duplicated chromosome



SPLITTING As the spindle disappears, nuclear membranes form around the two groups of chromosomes.

are duplicated. These double-chromosomes form a line and then migrate away from each other as the cell splits in two.



Only two pairs are shown here for clarity.

C OFFSPRING

MAKING SEX CELLS

Sperm and egg cells divide by meiosis, into four sex cells (eggs or sperm) that have only one member of a chromosome pair. At

PREPARATION

DNA strands replicate and coil up in the nucleus, forming X-shaped doublechromosomes.

Duplicated

SECOND SEPARATION

chromosome splits, each

half moving to one end

of the dividing cell.

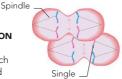
J The double-

chromosomes



TWO OFFSPRING

Each cell has one double-chromosome of each pair, as a random choice during separation.



chromosome

fertilization, when egg and sperm unite, the full set (23 pairs) is restored and all subsequent cell divisions are by mitosis.

PAIRING

their genetic

composition.

The matching (homologous) pairs align, make contact, and exchange genetic material.

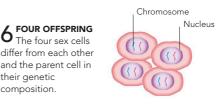


Matching pair of chromosomes

FIRST SEPARATION

5 A threadlike spindle pulls one of each pair to each end as the cell splits.

Chromosome pair separates



PATTERNS OF INHERITANCE

GENES ARE PASSED FROM ONE GENERATION TO THE NEXT, IN A VAST SEQUENCE OF INHERITANCE. THEY ARE RESHUFFLED AT EACH STAGE SO THAT OFFSPRING ARE UNIQUE, BUT THERE ARE PATTERNS IN THE MODE OF INHERITANCE.

VERSIONS OF GENES

Each cell in a body contains a double set of genetic material, in the form of 23 pairs of chromosomes. One chromosome of each pair, and the genes on it, come from the mother. The other chromosome is from the father. So there are, in effect, two versions of every gene in the set-one maternal and one paternal. These versions of genes are called alleles. Inheritance patterns vary depending on how these two versions interact, because they may be identical or slightly different.

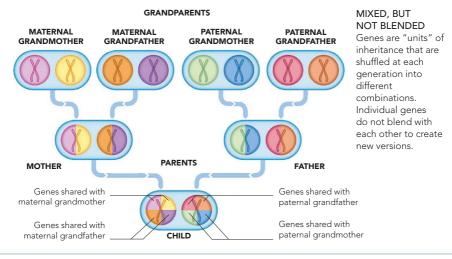
TWO BY TWO

Chromosome pairs have the same sets of genes. But the individual allele on one chromosome may differ slightly from its equivalent allele on the other chromosome.

PATTERNS OF INHERITANCE

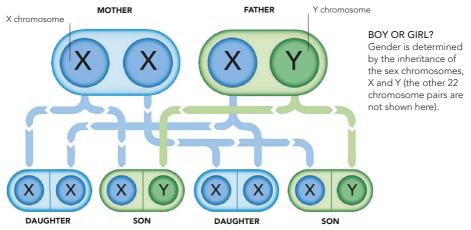
GENERATIONAL SEQUENCE

The two versions of the genes (alleles) are mixed, or reshuffled, as they are inherited at each generation. In effect, a child inherits one-quarter of its total genes from each grandparent. The child's inherited features strongly resemble a mixture of those from his or her parents, but the features from the grandparents appear to be less marked.



INHERITANCE OF GENDER

Gender depends on which sex chromosome–an X or a Y–is inherited. Females have two X chromosomes; males have an X and a smaller Y, with male genes. A woman's egg cells all contain an X, whereas half a man's sperm cells contain an X and the other half a Y. Thus, the gender of offspring is always determined by the father.



RECESSIVE AND DOMINANT GENES

Each gene in a cell exists in two versions, one inherited from each parent. In some cases these gene versions, or alleles, are different, and produce slightly different

Recessive allele

for blue eves

results. One allele may be dominant and "overpower" the other, which is recessive. An example is eye color, although this is not as simple as depicted below.

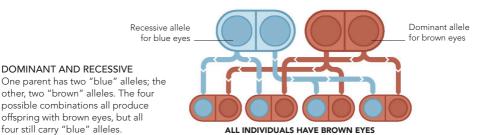
Recessive allele for blue eves RECESSIVE AND RECESSIVE Each parent has two alleles for eye color. Here, both parents have only "blue" alleles. When both alleles are the same, the individual is said to be "homozygous." Their children can only inherit "blue" alleles, so all have blue eyes. ALL INDIVIDUALS HAVE BLUE EYES BLUE EYES BROWN EYES Recessive Dominant allele for allele for brown eyes blue eyes RECESSIVE AND MIXED One parent has two "blue" alleles; the other, one "blue" and one "brown" allele. "Brown" is dominant and takes over when it occurs with "blue." So the chance is 1 in 2 that each offspring has brown eyes. BLUE EYES BROWN EYES BLUE EYES BROWN EYES

BLUE EYES

Dominant allele _ for brown eyes

MIXED AND MIXED

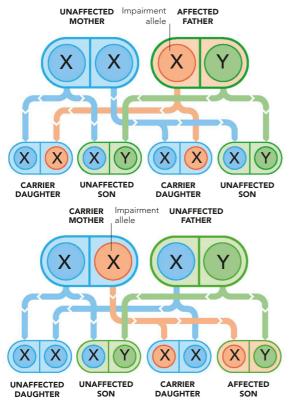
Each parent has a "brown" and a "blue" allele. Individuals who carry two different alleles are "heterozygous." Only one of the four possible combinations leads to offspring with blue eyes.



BLUE EYES BROWN EYES BROWN EYES BROWN EYES

SEX-LINKED INHERITANCE

The pattern of inheritance changes when alleles for a body feature are carried on the sex chromosomes. If an allele on a man's X chromosome does not have its equal on the Y chromosome, or vice versa, only one allele can determine the feature. For example, the problem allele for colorimpaired vision is on the X chromosome.



COLOR-BLIND FATHER AND UNAFFECTED MOTHER

Sex chromosomes combine in four possible ways, governed by chance. Here, any daughter will inherit the color-impairment allele, and will be a carrier, but she also has the normal allele on her other X chromosome, to give normal vision. No sons can be affected, nor can they be carriers.

CARRIER MOTHER AND UNAFFECTED FATHER

The four possible combinations give a one-in-four-chance each for unaffected sons and daughters. There is also a one-in-four chance that an offspring will be a carrier daughter or son who has inherited the color-impairment allele. He has no second X chromosome and therefore no normal allele, so the result is impaired color vision.

MULTIPLE-GENE INHERITANCE

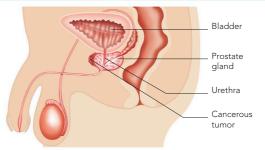
Some body traits follow clear single-gene inheritance patterns. However, the situation becomes more complex in two ways. First, there may not be only two alleles of a gene with a simple dominant–recessive interaction between them. There may be three alleles or more in existence in the general population, although each person can have only two of them. An example is the blood group system, with alleles for A, B, and O. Second, a trait may be influenced by more than one gene. These two situations mean that a trait can be governed by multiple genes, and for each of these genes, by multiple alleles of the gene—added to which, the genes may interact in different ways, according to which alleles are present in each of them. In such cases, the numbers of possible combinations multiply, consequently making multi-gene inheritance exceptionally difficult to unravel.

MALE REPRODUCTIVE DISORDERS

DISORDERS AFFECTING THE EXTERNAL PARTS OF THE MALE REPRODUCTIVE TRACT ARE USUALLY APPARENT AT AN EARLY STAGE; THOSE AFFECTING INTERNAL PARTS, SUCH AS THE PROSTATE GLAND, MAY NOT BE NOTICED UNTIL LATER, WHEN SUCCESSFUL TREATMENT MAY BE HARDER TO ACHIEVE.

PROSTATE DISORDERS

Conditions that affect the prostate gland range from inflammation and benign enlargement to serious disorders such as cancer. Prostate disorders are very common and tend to occur in the middle and later years of a man's life. Prostate cancer, although potentially lifethreatening, tends to occur most commonly in elderly men, in whom it often grows slowly and may not cause symptoms. New diagnostic techniques are detecting the condition in much younger men, who do need treatment. Enlargement of the prostate is extremely common and is considered part of the aging process; most men over age 50 have it to some degree. If the enlarged gland constricts the urethra, it can cause distressing urinary symptoms, including frequent urination, delay in starting to urinate, weak flow, dribbling, and a feeling of incomplete bladder emptying. Prostatitis (see below) is a common condition, often caused by infection.



PROSTATE CANCER

A cancerous tumor of this size on the prostate gland is unlikely to cause immediate problems, but as it grows it may press on the urethra, and may spread to other parts of the body.

A normal prostate gland fits snugly around the urethra and

abuts the bladder; enlargement can squash the urethra.

NORMAL PROSTATE

ENLARGED PROSTATE

ENLARGED PROSTATE



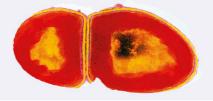
Enlarged prostate presses on urethra

PROSTATITIS

Inflammation of the prostate gland, or prostatitis, can be acute or chronic. The acute type is less common; severe symptoms such as fever and pain in the lower back come on suddenly, but usually clear up quickly. Chronic prostatitis features long-standing but often mild symptoms that are difficult to treat, such as groin and penis pain, pain on ejaculation, blood in semen, and painful urination. Possibly caused by a bacterial infection from the urinary tract, both types are most common in men between 30 and 50 years old.

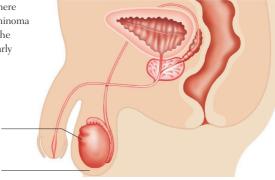
CAUSATIVE BACTERIUM

This electron micrograph shows the bacterium *Enterococcus faecalis*, implicated in prostatitis. It is a normal, harmless inhabitant of the human gut.



TESTICULAR CANCER

Cancer of the testis is one of the most commonly occurring cancers in men between the ages of 20 and 40. Although it is curable if discovered early, the cancer can spread to lymph nodes and to other parts of the body if not treated. Symptoms of testicular cancer include a hard, painless lump in the testis; a change in the size and appearance of the testis; or a dull ache in the scrotum. There are two main types of testicular cancer, seminoma and non-seminoma. They develop from the sperm-producing cells of the testis. As early treatment of the cancer is vital and has a very high cure rate, all men should regularly examine their testes; any swellings or changes in the scrotal skin should be reported immediately. Soft lumps or painful swellings are likely to be caused by a cyst or infection, but should still be checked.



TUMOR ON TESTIS

A tumor of this size on the outer wall of the testis would be clearly felt through the thin outer skin and layers of the scrotum. **Tumor** Tiny growth on the testis

Scrotum

HYDROCELE

Each testis is surrounded by a double-layered membrane, which under normal conditions contains a small amount of fluid. In a hydrocele, an excessive amount of fluid forms, causing the testis to appear swollen. The condition occurs most frequently in infants and elderly people. The cause of hydrocele is not usually known, although infection, inflammation, or injury to the testis are possible triggers. A hydrocele does not usually cause any pain, but may result in a dragging sensation due to the increased size and weight of the scrotum. In younger people with hydrocele,

SWOLLEN TESTIS

A hydrocele is the result of excess fluid filling the double-layered membrane that surrounds the testis; it causes the scrotum to appear swollen.

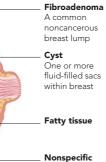
Scrotum _ Testis _ Fluid _ Fluid accumulates around the testis the condition often gets better without the need for treatment. However, if the condition is causing discomfort, the hydrocele may be surgically removed or, for those who are not fit enough for surgery, the fluid may be drained from the area using a needle and syringe.

FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE DISORDERS

MANY FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE DISORDERS ARE HARMLESS, AND SOME ARE EVEN SYMPTOMLESS. HOWEVER, WIDE HORMONAL FLUCTUATIONS AND PHYSIOLOGICAL STRESSES CAN LEAD TO MORE SERIOUS DISORDERS, INCLUDING VARIOUS TYPES OF CANCER.

BREAST LUMPS

A breast lump is a solid or swollen area that can be felt or seen in the tissue of the breast. General lumpiness is common as breasts change shape during puberty, pregnancy, and prior to menstruation. Nonspecific lumpiness usually relates to the hormonal fluctuations of the menstrual cycle. A single lump may be an overgrown lobule, and a more defined one may be a cyst. Only a small percentage of lumps are a symptom of breast cancer. All women should familiarize themselves with the shape of their breasts during the menstrual cycle, so that they can look and feel for abnormal changes, and immediately report them to their doctor. From the age of around 50, women are invited to attend regular screening.



lumpiness Usually related to menstruation; often called fibrocystic disease

BREAST CANCER

Cancer of the breast is the most common female cancer. The risk increases with age, doubling every 10 years. The causes are unclear, but risk factors have been identified. Women with higher exposure to estrogen—for example, through having an early puberty, late menopause, or no children—have a higher risk. Age is significant, with many more cases occurring over the age of 50. Faulty genes are also a known cause. A breast lump, usually painless, is often the first sign of breast cancer.

ENDOMETRIOSIS

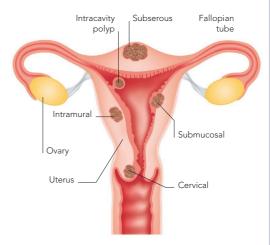
Endometriosis is a common condition, affecting many women of childbearing age. It can cause debilitating pain and very heavy periods; in severe cases, the condition can lead to fertility problems. The endometrium, the lining of the uterus, is shed approximately once every month as part of the menstrual cycle. Endometriosis is when small areas of endometrial tissue grow outside the uterus, most commonly on the ovaries and in the pelvis. These pieces of tissue respond to hormonal changes and bleed during menstruation. Since the blood cannot leave the body through the vagina, its normal exit, it irritates nearby tissues, causing pain and eventually forming scars. The cause of the disorder is unknown.

FIBROIDS

Fibroids are very common, occurring in about one third of women of childbearing age. They can occur singly or in groups, and can be the size of a pea or as large as a grapefruit. Small fibroids are unlikely to cause any problems. Larger ones may result in prolonged and heavy menstrual bleeding, and increasingly severe period pain. Large fibroids can distort the uterus, which may cause infertility, or put pressure on other organs, such as the bladder or rectum.

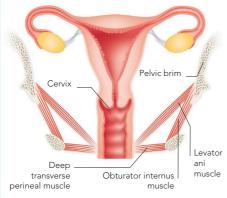
SITES AND TYPES OF FIBROIDS

Fibroids can occur in any part of the uterus wall and are named according to their site for example, in the cervix—or in the tissues they occupy, such as submucosal fibroids.

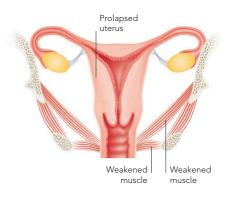


PROLAPSED UTERUS

Prolapse of the uterus is more likely to occur after menopause, when low estrogen levels affect the ability of the ligaments to retain the uterus. Childbirth, obesity, and straining while coughing or opening the bowels are contributing factors.



The uterus protrudes down into the vagina, and in severe cases may reach as far as the vulva. Symptoms may include a feeling of fullness in the vagina, pain in the lower back, and difficulty urinating or passing feces.



NORMAL UTERUS

The uterus is kept in place by muscles and ligaments. Regular Kegel exercises are important to maintain their strength and avoid prolapse.

PROLAPSED UTERUS

In this case of uterine prolapse, the uterus has slipped down into the vagina because of weakened muscles. The wall of the vagina may also prolapse.

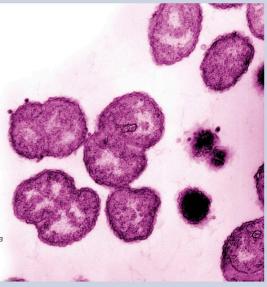
SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED INFECTIONS

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED INFECTIONS (STIS), ALSO KNOWN AS SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES (STDS), ARE INFECTIONS THAT ARE PASSED FROM PERSON TO PERSON BY SEXUAL ACTIVITY. GENITAL, ANAL, AND ORAL SEX CAN ALL PASS AN INFECTION ON TO ANOTHER PERSON.

GONORRHEA

Although gonorrhea tends to be more prevalent among males, it can also affect women. The main sites of infection are the urethra and, in women, the cervix. The symptoms often do not appear, but if they do they commonly include a discharge of pus from the penis or vagina and pain on urination. Women may also experience lower abdominal pain and irregular vaginal bleeding. Occasionally, the infection spreads to other parts of the body, such as the joints (via the bloodstream). If the disease is left untreated, it can cause infertility in women.

> **GONORRHEA BACTERIA** An electron micrograph of Neisseria gonorrhoeae, which is responsible for the STI gonorrhea.



PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)

PID is a common cause of pelvic pain in young women; other possible symptoms are fever, heavy or prolonged periods, and pain during sexual intercourse. Sometimes, there are no symptoms. Usually, PID is the result of an STI such as chlamydial infection or gonorrhea. Infection after childbirth or a pregnancy termination are also possible causes.

The inflammation starts in the vagina and spreads to the uterus and fallopian tubes. In severe cases, the ovaries are also infected. Left untreated, PID can lead to damage in the fallopian tubes, which may cause infertility and an increased risk of ectopic pregnancy (see p.302).



REPRODUCTION AND LIFE CYCLE

INFECTED PARTS

NONGONOCOCCAL URETHRITIS

Nongonococcal urethritis (NGU) is one of the most common STIs affecting men. Typically, it features inflammation of the urethra, with or without a discharge of pus; inflammation and soreness at the end of the penis; and pain on urinating, particularly when the urine is concentrated first thing in the morning. In about half of all cases, the agent responsible is *Chlamydia trachomatis*, a bacterium that can also infect women, leading to chlamydial infection. Other possible causes of NGU include the bacterium *Ureaplasma urealyticum;* the protozoan *Trichomonas vaginalis;* the fungus *Candida albicans;* the genital warts virus (human papillomavirus, HPV); and the genital herpes viruses. It is important for both partners to seek treatment to avoid reinfecting each another. To prevent STIs, sexually active people should limit their sexual partners, and use a condom for penetrative sex.

SYMPTOMS OF NGU

Inflammation of the urethra causes pain and soreness at the external opening on the penis, and painful urination. If the infection spreads, the epididymides and the testes may also become swollen. Urethra Inflammation of urethra causes pain on

urination **Testis** May become swollen if infection spreads

Epididymis Sometimes also becomes inflamed

SYPHILIS

Syphilis can affect both men and women. It is caused by Treponema pallidum, a bacterium that enters the body via the genitals. It first affects the organs of reproduction, and spreads to other parts of the body. An infectious sore (chancre) appears on the penis or vagina, lymph nodes swell, and then a rash and wart-like patches develop on the skin. With no treatment, it can proceed to a final, possibly fatal, stage characterized by personality changes, mental illness, and nervous system disorders. Today, the disease rarely progresses to this stage.

CHLAMYDIAL INFECTION

Chlamydial infection is a very common STI and occurs only in women. It is caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis*, which inflames the reproductive organs, and causes symptoms including vaginal discharge, a frequent urge to urinate, lower abdominal pain, and pain during intercourse. Chlamydial infection can lead to PID (see opposite), if left untreated, and may then cause infertility.

BACTERIA IN CERVICAL SMEAR

This micrograph (x400) of a cervical smear shows *Chlamydia trachomatis* bacteria (pink cells within large blue cell).

Chlamydia Epithelial bacteria cells invade the lining cells

INFERTILITY DISORDERS

IF A COUPLE IS UNABLE TO CONCEIVE AFTER A YEAR OF HAVING UNPROTECTED SEX, ONE OR BOTH PARTNERS MAY HAVE A FERTILITY PROBLEM. THE LIKELIHOOD OF FERTILITY DISORDERS INCREASES WHEN COUPLES WAIT UNTIL THEY REACH THEIR 30S OR 40S TO START A FAMILY.

DAMAGED FALLOPIAN TUBE

The fallopian tube may become blocked as a result of endometriosis (see p.296), in which fragments of the uterine lining (endometrium) become embedded in the tube tissue. Pelvic inflammatory disease (see p.298), which is often caused by a sexually transmitted infection such as chlamydia (see p.299), may go unnoticed at the time of infection, but scarring due to the inflammation can cause problems with fertility later. An intrauterine contraceptive device can increase the risk of PID developing. Usually, only one tube is affected, which means that a woman's chance of conceiving is halved.

Blocked fallopian tube

ENDOMETRIOSIS

Fragments of endometrium start growing in one tube, causing blockage and distortion, and rendering the tube useless as a passageway for eggs to the uterus.

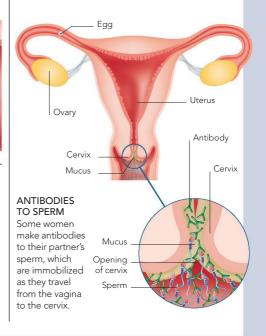


OVULATION PROBLEMS

Any deviation from the normal ovulation pattern can cause problems with fertility. The precise problem can range from complete absence of egg release to infrequent release. Factors that can lead to ovulation problems include pituitary and thyroid gland disorders, polycystic ovary syndrome, long-term use of oral contraceptives, being very over- or underweight, stress, excessive exercise, and premature menopause.

CERVICAL PROBLEMS

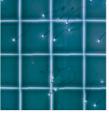
The cervix, or neck of the womb, produces mucus that is usually thick; just before ovulation, when the level of estrogen increases, the mucus becomes less viscous to allow sperm to penetrate. If estrogen levels are low or if there is infection within the reproductive tract, the mucus may remain thick and impregnable to sperm. Another problem that may make the cervix inhospitable is that sometimes a woman's immune system forms antibodies to her partner's sperm, which will then damage or kill the sperm in the cervix. Polyps, fibroids (see p.297), narrowing (stenosis), and distortion are other problems of the cervix that may lead to infertility.



PROBLEMS WITH SPERM PRODUCTION

A man may produce sperm in low quantities, or his sperm may be deformed or unable to swim properly. All these problems reduce the likelihood that his sperm can contribute to conception. Huge numbers of sperm must be produced in order for fertilization to occur; men in whom this does not happen have a low sperm count. Microscopic examination can reveal this problem and can also look at the size, shape, and movement (motility) of individual sperm. Problems in any of these areas can cause reduced fertility. If only a small volume of semen is produced per ejaculation, fertility may also be reduced.





NORMAL SPERM COUNT

LOW SPERM COUNT

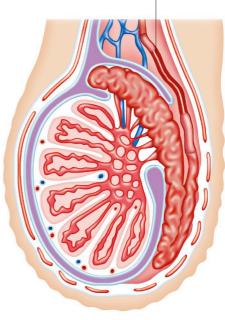
EJACULATION PROBLEMS

A number of ejaculation problems prevent sperm from arriving in the vagina by the normal means, making fertilization impossible. The most common is erectile dysfunction (the difficulty in achieving or maintaining an erection). This condition may be a result of diabetes mellitus (see pp.142–143), a spinal cord disease, impaired blood flow, certain drugs, or psychological problems. Another problem, retrograde ejaculation, causes semen to flow back into the bladder because of faulty valves; this can be a complication of surgery for partial or complete removal of the prostate gland. Various treatments are available that can help reduce erectile dysfunction, depending on the nature and cause of the problem.

DIFFICULT PASSAGE OF SPERM

Sperm has a long and tortuous journey from its source in the testis until it is ejaculated. Narrowing, blockage, or other distortion of any of the tubes, including the epididymis and vas deferens, that make up this network can slow or completely block the passage of sperm. Causes of this problem are various, but infection of the male reproductive system is most likely. Some sexually transmitted infections (STIs, see p.298), most notably gonorrhea, can cause inflammation of the tubes, which leaves scar tissue that can distort their structure and affect their sperm-carrying ability.

> Narrowed lumen of vas deferens



INFLAMED VAS DEFERENS

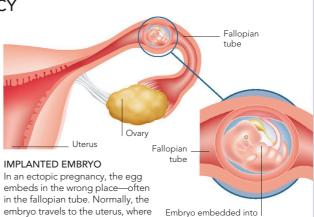
Damage to the vas deferens, one of the tubes that transports the sperm, can prevent or slow down its passage. Infection, usually by a sexually transmitted organism, can be responsible for such damage.

PREGNANCY AND LABOR DISORDERS

PROBLEMS CAN ARISE IN NORMALLY HEALTHY WOMEN DURING PREGNANCY AND LABOR, WHICH MAY ENDANGER BOTH THE MOTHER'S AND THE BABY'S HEALTH. FEW DISORDERS OF PREGNANCY AND LABOR HAVE ANY PERMANENT PHYSICAL EFFECT ON EITHER MOTHER OR BABY.

ECTOPIC PREGNANCY

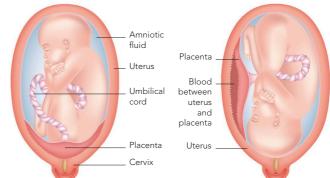
About 1 percent of pregnancies are ectopic; they are more common in women under the age of 30. The fertilized egg does not implant in the uterine lining, which is the normal place, but develops in one of the fallopian tubes or, more rarely, in another area altogether. The embryo does not develop normally, so the pregnancy usually fails. The embryo must be surgically removed to avoid rupture of the fallopian tube and to prevent internal bleeding.



Embryo embedded into fallopian tube lining

PLACENTAL PROBLEMS

Two main problems can affect the placenta: placenta previa, in which the placenta covers the opening to the cervix; and placental abruption, in which the placenta separates from the uterine wall. The degree of severity in placenta previa depends on how much of the cervix is covered. If completely covered, the condition is serious. Placental abruption often comes on suddenly, and can threaten the fetus because essential blood supplies are compromised. Both conditions can cause vaginal bleeding, but in less severe cases, symptoms may go unnoticed.



PLACENTA PREVIA

In complete placenta previa, as shown here, the placenta entirely covers the cervix. In a less severe form, the placenta only partially obstructs the exit from the uterus.

growth and maturation occur.

PLACENTAL ABRUPTION

Premature separation of the placenta from the uterus may be concealed, as shown here, in which case blood collects between the uterus and placenta.

MISCARRIAGE

Miscarriage, or spontaneous abortion, is the unintended end of a pregnancy before week 24. It is very common, occurring in 25 percent of all pregnancies. Most miscarriages occur in the first 14 weeks of pregnancy; over half of them are due to a genetic or fetal abnormality. Later miscarriages have various causes, ranging from physical problems with the cervix or uterus to severe infection. Smoking, alcohol, or drug abuse may also be factors. If three or more occur consecutively, it is known as recurrent miscarriage.



THREATENED MISCARRIAGE

The fetus remains alive and the cervix is closed, although there is some blood loss. It may proceed to full miscarriage, when the fetus dies, or a successful birth.

PRETERM LABOR

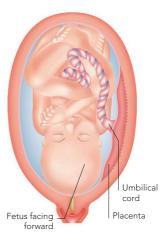
Most pregnancies last for about 40 weeks, but delivery during the final three weeks is considered to be full term. Labor that occurs before 37 weeks is known as preterm and results in a premature baby. Premature labor rarely causes maternal problems, but the earlier the birth, the greater the problems encountered by the baby. The cause is not always known, but multiple births, urinary tract infection, and fetal abnormalities are known to be trigger factors. Sometimes, premature labor can be halted or delayed, giving the baby more time in the womb.



PREMATURE BABY This premature baby is being fed through a nasogastric tube because his sucking reflex has yet to develop and his swallowing ability is poor. Other features are his tiny size, wrinkled and yellow skin, and disproportionately large eyes.

ABNORMAL PRESENTATION

Eighty percent of babies adopt the normal delivery position for birth with the head down and facing toward the mother's back. The baby usually achieves this position by about week 36. Other babies are in a position that may cause problems during labor. Breech (see p.266) and occipitoposterior positions (see right) are the most common of these abnormal presentations. In a breech birth, the baby's buttocks present first. Some presentations may allow the umbilical cord to drop through the birth canal and cause fetal distress. The cervix and vagina are more vulnerable to tears if the presentation is abnormal.



OCCIPITOPOSTERIOR POSITION

Although the baby's head is facing down, as is normal, the baby is turned 180° toward the front, instead of facing the mother's back.

INHERITED DISORDERS

INHERITED DISORDERS ARE CAUSED BY DEFECTIVE GENES OR ABNORMAL CHROMOSOMES. IN CHROMOSOME DISORDERS, THERE IS A PROBLEM IN THE NUMBER OR STRUCTURE OF CHROMOSOMES, WHEREAS IN GENE DISORDERS, THERE IS A FAULT IN ONE OR MORE GENES.

CHROMOSOME DISORDERS

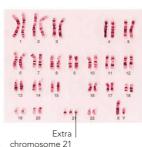
Two-thirds of chromosome disorders are numerical-egg or sperm cells have either too many or too few chromosomes. In many cases, they result in a miscarriage. In a few exceptions, the fetus survives. The most common is Down syndrome, in which there is an extra chromosome 21. Abnormalities in the sex chromosomes have a less severe effect on the embryo, and there may not be any obvious signs of a problem. A girl with an extra X chromosome or a boy with an extra Y chromosome will probably go unnoticed. However, a boy who is born with an extra X chromosome (XXY) will have Klinefelter's syndrome, which becomes apparent at puberty when secondary sexual characteristics fail to develop. A girl who is born with only one X chromosome will have Turner's syndrome.

7	2)(1	5
))	ļ		9	10	11	12
13	14	15		26	17	18
19	8 6		21	22	×	

Missing X chromosome

DOWN SYNDROME

This chromosome set from a male shows an extra chromosome 21. He has Down syndrome, and will have a distinct physical appearance and learning difficulties.



TURNER'S

SYNDROME

This chromosome set from a female shows only one

X chromosome.

She has Turner's

syndrome, and

will be short in stature and

probably infertile.

CYSTIC FIBROSIS

Cystic fibrosis is a gene disorder in which mucus glands produce abnormally thick secretions that cause repeated lung infections and problems digesting food. Weight gain is reduced, growth is slow, and life expectancy is shortened. Cystic fibrosis is caused by an abnormal gene that has to be received from each parent. Prenatal genetic testing and genetic counseling will be Sinuses offered to parents of one Recurrent affected child if they want sinusitis to have more children Lungs Luna infections. constant cough, and breathlessness Pancreas Lack of enzymes means digestion is inefficient Intestines Poor absorption of nutrients and intestinal blockage Testes Infertility as vas deferens and epididymis fail to develop properly EFFECTS OF CYSTIC FIBROSIS Many parts of the body are affected by excess mucus, causing poor health and slow physical development with intermittent episodes of serious illness

CANCER

CANCER IS NOT A SINGLE DISEASE, BUT A LARGE GROUP OF DISORDERS WITH DIFFERENT SYMPTOMS. NEARLY ALL CANCERS HAVE THE SAME BASIC CAUSE: CELLS MULTIPLY UNCONTROLLABLY BECAUSE THE NORMAL REGULATION OF THEIR DIVISION HAS BEEN DAMAGED.

CANCEROUS (MALIGNANT) TUMORS

A cancerous (malignant) tumor is a mass of abnormal cells that divide excessively quickly and do not carry out the normal functions of their tissue. These cells are often irregular in size and shape, and bear little resemblance to the normal

MALIGNANT TUMOR GROWTH

A cancerous tumor grows and spreads by forcing its way between other cells and infiltrating the tissues, eventually interfering with their function.

Cancerous cell

These are often larger than normal cells, with big nuclei (control centers) cells from which they arose. This irregular appearance is often used to diagnose cancer during microscopic examination of a small sample of tissue taken from a tumor. The tumor gradually enlarges, crowding out normal cells, pressing on nerves, and infiltrating blood and lymph vessels. It is important to distinguish a malignant tumor from a nonmalignant one, because cancerous cells can spread to other parts of the body.

Dividing cancer cell

Rapidly dividing abnormal cells force their way between normal ones

Normal cell These remain between the cancerous cells **Ulcerated area** Tumor may erode the epithelial layer to form an ulcer

Epithelial layer

Covers and lines tissues and organs; tumors often form in this layer

Bleeding

Cancerous cells disrupt and breach tiny blood vessels

Nerve

Pressure on the nerves may cause the tumor to become painful to surrounding tissues

Lymph vessel

Like blood vessels, lymphatic vessels provide a route for cancer cells to spread

Calcium deposits

Hard deposits of calcium minerals may build up in tumors

Blood vessel

Blood circulation is one major route for the spread of cancerous cells

Tumor outgrowth Cancerous cells form outgrowths that infiltrate surrounding tissues



GLOSSARY

Terms in **bold italics** refer to other entries that appear in the glossary.

Accommodation

The process by which the eyes adjust to focus on nearby or distant objects.

Adenoids

Clusters of lymphoid **tissue** on each side of the back of the upper part of the throat.

Adipose tissue

Tissue made of specialized cells that store fatty (*lipid*) substances for energy, for protective "padding," and to provide heat insulation.

Allele

Form or version of a *gene*. For example, the gene for eye color has blue and brown alleles.

Alveolus (pl. alveoli) One of many tiny air sacs at the ends of the airways in the lungs. Gases diffuse in and out of blood through the alveolar walls.

Amino acid One of about 20 kinds of buildingblock subunits of *protein*.

Antibody

A soluble **protein** that attaches to body invaders, such as **bacteria**, and helps destroy them.

Aorta

The central and largest *artery* of the body. It arises from the left *ventricle* of the heart and supplies oxygenated blood to all other arteries except the pulmonary artery.

Aortic valve

A triple-cusped valve at the origin of the *aorta* that allows blood to leave the left *ventricle* of the heart but prevents backward flow.

Appendix

The wormlike, dead-ended structure attached to the large intestine. Its function, if it has one, is as yet unknown. Aqueous humor The fluid filling the front chamber of the eye, between the back of the *cornea* and front of the iris and *lens*.

Arteriole

A small terminal branch of an *artery* leading to even smaller *capillaries*, which link to the *veins*.

Artery

An elastic, muscular-walled tube that transports blood away from the heart to other body parts.

Atrium (pl. atria) One of two thin-walled, upper chambers of the heart.

Autonomic nervous system (ANS) The portion of the nervous system controlling unconscious functions such as heartbeat and breathing.

Axon

The long, fiberlike process of a *nerve* cell that conducts nerve impulses away from the cell body.

B

Bacterium (pl. bacteria) A type of microorganism with one cell. Only a few of the many species of bacteria cause disease.

Base

In *nucleic acids* (DNA, RNA), a nitrogen-containing chemical unit or nitrogenous base (adenine, thymine, guanine, cytosine, uracil), the order of which carries genetic information.

Bile

A greenish-brown fluid secreted by the *liver* that is concentrated and stored in the *gallbladder*, released following food intake to help the digestion of fats.

Biliary system The network of *bile* vessels formed by the ducts from the *liver* and the *gallbladder*, and the gallbladder itself.

Bone marrow Fatty *tissue* within bone cavities that may be red or yellow. Red bone marrow produces red blood cells.

Brainstem

The lower part of the brain; houses the centers that control vital functions, such as breathing and the heartbeat.

Bronchus (pl. bronchi) One of the larger air tubes in the lungs. Each lung has a main bronchus that branches into smaller and smaller airways.

C Capillary

One of the numerous tiny blood vessels that link the smallest *arteries* and smallest *veins*.

Cardiac Relating to the heart.

Cartilage Type of connective *tissue* that is tough and resilient, and often flexible: forms some structural

flexible; forms some structural parts, such as the ear and nose, and lines bone ends inside joints.

Central nervous system (CNS) The brain and spinal cord; receives and analyzes sensory data, and initiates a response.

Cerebellum

A region of the brain located behind the **brainstem**. It is concerned with balance, posture, and the control of fine movement.

Cerebrospinal fluid A watery fluid that bathes the brain and spinal cord.

Cerebrum

The largest part of the brain; made up of two cerebral hemispheres. It contains the *merve* centers for thought, personality, the senses, and voluntary movement.

Chromosome

A threadlike structure, present in all nucleated body cells, that carries the genetic code for the formation of the body. Chromosomes coil into "X" shapes. A normal human body has 23 pairs of chromosomes.

Cochlea

The coiled structure in the inner ear that contains the organ of Corti, which converts sound vibrations into *nerve* impulses for transmission to the brain.

Collagen

The body's most important structural *protein*, present in bones, *tendons*, *ligaments*, and other connective *tissues*.

Colon

The part of the large intestine that extends from the cecum to the rectum. Its main function is to conserve water by absorbing it from the bowel contents.

Cornea

The transparent dome at the front of the eyeball that is the eye's main focusing *lens*.

Coronary

A term meaning "crown." Refers to the arteries that encircle and supply the heart with blood.

Corpus callosum The wide, fan-shaped band consisting of about 20 million *nerve* fibers that connects the two hemispheres of the *cerebrum*.

Cortex

Outer layer in various **organs**, such as the cerebral cortex (brain), **renal** cortex (**kidney**), and adrenal cortex (hormone-producing gland on top of the kidney).

Cranial nerves

The 12 pairs of *nerves* emerging from the brain and *brainstem*. They include the nerves for smell, sight, eye movement, facial movement and sensation, hearing, taste, and head movement.

Cytoplasm Watery or jellylike fluid that fills the bulk of a cell; it contains many **organelles**.

D Dermis

The thick inner layer of skin, made of connective **tissue**; contains structures such as sweat glands.

Diaphragm

The dome-shaped muscular sheet that separates the chest from the abdomen. When the muscle contracts, the dome flattens, increasing chest volume and drawing air into the lungs.

Diastole

The period in the heartbeat cycle when all four chambers are relaxed and the heart is filling with blood. See *systole*.

Digestive system The mouth, *pharynx*, *esophagus*, stomach, and intestines. Associated *organs* are the *pancreas*, *liver*, and *gallbladder*.

DNA (Deoxyribonucleic acid) A chemical with a double-helix structure that carries genetic information in the sequence of its paired subunits (*bases*); packaged into *chromosomes*.

Duodenum

The C-shaped first part of the small intestine, into which the stomach empties. Ducts from the *gallbladder*, the *liver*, and the *pancreas* all enter the duodenum.

Ε

Eardrum

The membrane separating the outer ear from the *middle ear* that vibrates in response to sound.

Embryo

The developing baby from conception until the eighth week of pregnancy. See *fetus*.

Endocrine gland

A gland that produces **hormones** (chemical messenger substances) that are released directly into the bloodstream rather than along tubes or ducts.

Endorphin

A morphinelike substance produced naturally by the body in times of pain and stress, and also activated during exercise.

Enzyme A *protein* that accelerates chemical reactions within cells.

Epidermis

The outer layer of the skin; its box-shaped cells become flatter and scalier toward the surface.

Epiglottis

A leaflike flap of *cartilage* located at the entrance of the *larynx*, which covers the opening of the airways during swallowing and helps prevent food or liquid from entering the windpipe (*trachea*).

Epithelium

Specialized covering or lining *tissue* that forms sheets and layers around and within many *organs* and other tissues.

Esophagus

The muscular tube, also known as the food tube, that connects the *pharynx* with the stomach.

Estrogen

A sex hormone that prepares the uterine lining for an implanted, fertilized egg and stimulates the development of a female's secondary sexual characteristics.

Eustachian tube

Tube connecting the back of the nose to the *middle ear* cavity; allows air pressure to equalize on either side of the eardrum.

F

Fallopian tube

One of the two tubes along which an **ovum** travels to the **uterus**, after release from an **ovary**; its fingerlike projections help sweep the ovum into the tube.

Fertilization

The union of a sperm and an egg, after sexual intercourse or artificial insemination, or in a test tube.

Fetus

The developing baby from about the eighth week after *fertilization* until the time of birth. See *embryo*.

G Gallbladder The fig-shaped l

The fig-shaped bag lying under the *liver*, into which *bile* secreted by the liver passes to be stored.

GLOSSARY

Gastric juice Liquid produced by the stomach lining that contains hydrochloric acid and digestive enzymes.

Gastrointestinal tract The muscular tube that extends from the mouth, through the *pharynx*, esophagus, stomach, and intestines, to the rectum. Also known as the digestive tract.

Gene

A distinct section of a *chromosome* that is the basic unit of inheritance. Each gene consists of a segment of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) containing the code that governs the production of a specific *protein*.

Genome

The full set of genes, or hereditary information, for a living organism; the human genome consists of 20,000-25,000 genes.

Gray matter

The darker-colored regions of the brain and spinal cord that comprise mainly neuron cell bodies as opposed to their projecting fibers, which form white matter.

Hair follicle A pit on the surface of the skin from which hair grows.

Heart valve

One of four structures in the heart that allow the passage of blood in one direction only.

Hemoglobin

The protein in red blood cells that combines with oxygen to carry the gas from the lungs and distribute it around the body.

Hepatic Concerning the *liver*.

Hepatocyte A type of *liver* cell with many functions, including making bile.

Hippocampus A structure in the *limbic system* in the brain concerned with learning and long-term memory.

Hormone

A chemical released by the endocrine glands and some tissues. Hormones act on specific receptor sites in other parts of the body.

Hypothalamus

A small structure located at the base of the brain, where the nervous and hormonal systems of the body interact. It is linked to the **thalamus** above and the pituitary gland below.

I_K lleum

The final segment of the small intestine, where most absorption of nutrients takes place.

Kidnev

One of two bean-shaped organs in the back of the abdominal cavity that filter blood and remove wastes. particularly urea.

Killer T cells

White blood cells that can destroy damaged, infected, or malignant body cells by using proteins called lymphokines.

Larynx

The structure in the neck at the top of the trachea, known as the voice box, that contains the **vocal cords**.

Lens

The internal lens of the eye, also called the crystalline lens; it fine-focuses vision by adjusting its curvature. The outer lens is called the *cornea*.

Ligament

A band of tissue consisting of collagen-a tough, fibrous, elastic protein. Ligaments support bones, mainly in and around joints.

Limbic system

A collection of structures in the brain that plays an important role in the automatic (involuntary) body functions, instinctive behavior, emotions, and the sense of smell.

Lipid Fatty or oily substance, insoluble in water, with varied roles in the body,

including formation of *adipose tissue*, cell membranes (phospholipid), and steroid hormones.

Liver

The large organ in the upper right abdomen that performs vital chemical functions, including detoxification of poisons and conversion of waste products to urea.

Lobe

A rounded projection or subdivision forming part of a larger structure such as the brain, lung, or *liver*.

Lymphatic system

An extensive network of transparent lymph vessels and lymph nodes. It returns excess **tissue** fluid to the circulation and combats infections. and cancer cells.

Lymph node

A small, oval gland packed with white blood cells that acts as a barrier to the spread of infection. Nodes occur in series along lymph vessels.

Lymphocyte

White blood cell that is part of the immune system; it protects against virus infections and cancer.

IV

Medulla

The inner part of an **organ**, such as the *kidneys* or adrenal glands. Also refers to the part of the brainstem lying immediately above the start of the spinal cord, just in front of the cerebellum.

Meninges

Three membrane layers around the brain and spinal cord: the pia mater on the inside, the arachnoid and the dura mater next to the skull.

Meniscus

A crescent-shaped, shock-absorbing pad of *cartilage* found in the knee and some other joints.

Menopause

The end of the reproductive period in women, when the ovaries have ceased their production of eggs and menstruation has stopped.

Metabolism The sum of all the physical and chemical processes that take place in the body.

Middle ear The air-filled cleft within the temporal bone between the *eardrum* and the outer wall of the inner ear; contains *ossicles*. Also called the tympanic cavity.

Mitochondrion (pl. mitochondria) A cell *organelle* involved in the production of energy for cell functions. It contains genetic material (mitochondrial DNA) derived solely from the mother.

Mitral valve The valve that lies between the left *atrium* and left *ventricle* of the heart.

Motor neuron A *nerve* cell that carries the impulses to muscles that cause movement.

Mucous membrane The soft, mucus-secreting epithelial layer lining the tubes and cavities of the body.

Myocardium The special muscle of the heart. The fibers form a network that can contract spontaneously.

Myofibril Cylindrical element within muscle cells (fibers) consisting of thinner filaments that move to produce muscle contraction.

N

Nephron

The *kidney's* filtering unit, consisting of a filtration capsule (glomerulus) and a series of tubules, that reabsorbs or excretes water and wastes to control fluid balance.

Nerve

Bundle of threadlike projections from individual *neurons* (nerve cells), held together by a fibrous sheath. Nerves carry electrical impulses to and from the brain and spinal cord and other body parts.

Neuron

A single *nerve* cell with long projections, the function of which is to transmit electrical impulses.

Nociceptor A *nerve* ending responding to painful stimuli.

Nucleic acid Deoxyribonucleic acid (**DNA**) or ribonucleic acid (**RNA**): chains of **mucleotides**, with genetic information in the order of the bases of the **mucleotides**.

Nucleotide Building-block subunit of a *nucleic acid* (DNA, RNA), consisting of a sugar, phosphate, and a nitrogen-containing *base*.

Nucleus (pl. nuclei) Control center of a cell, containing the genetic material **DNA**.

Olfactory nerve

One of two **nerves** of smell that run from the olfactory bulb in the roof of the nose directly into the underside of the brain.

Optic nerve

One of the two **nerves** of vision. Each one has about one million nerve fibers running from the **retina** to the brain, carrying visual stimuli.

Organ

Discrete body part or structure with a vital function: for example, the heart, *liver*, brain, or *spleen*.

Organelle

A tiny structure inside a cell that has a specific role. The *nucleus*, *mitochondrion*, and ribosomes are examples.

Ossicle

One of three tiny bones (the incus, malleus, and stapes) of the *middle ear* that convey vibrations from the *eardrum* to the inner ear.

Ossification

The process of formation, renewal, and repair of bone. Most bones in the body develop from *cartilage*.

Osteon

The rod-shaped unit, also called a Haversian system, that is the building block of cortical bone.

Ovary

One of two structures lying at the end of the *fallopian tubes* on each side of the *uterus*. They store ovarian follicles, release the mature *ova*, and produce the female *sex hormones (estrogen* and *progesterone)*.

Ovulation

The release of an **ovum** from a mature follicle in the **ovary** about midway through the menstrual cycle; if not fertilized, the egg is shed during menstruation.

Ovum (pl. ova)

The egg cell; if *fertilization* occurs, the ovum may implant in the *uterus* and develop into an *embryo*.

Ρ

Pancreas A gland behind the stomach that secretes digestive *enzymes* and also *hormones* that regulate blood glucose levels.

Parasympathetic nervous system

Óne of the two divisions of the autonomic nervous system. It maintains and restores energy—for example, by slowing the rate and strength of the heartbeat.

Parathyroid glands

Two pairs of yellowish *endocrine glands*, located behind the thyroid gland, that help control the level of calcium in the blood.

Parotid glands

The large pair of salivary glands situated, one on each side, above the angles of the jaw just below and in front of the ears.

Pelvis

The basinlike ring of bones to which the lower end of the *spine* is attached and with which the thigh bones articulate. The term also refers to the general lower abdominal area.

Pericardium

The layers of membrane surrounding the heart. The outer fibrous sac encloses the heart and the roots of the major blood vessels emerging from it. The inner layer attaches to the heart wall.

GLOSSARY

Periosteum

The tough *tissue* that coats all bone surfaces except joints and from which new bone can be formed: contains blood and lymphatic vessels and nerves.

Peripheral nervous system All the *nerves* that fan out from the brain and spinal cord, linking these parts with the rest of the body. The system consists of cranial nerves and spinal nerves.

Peristalsis

A coordinated succession of contractions and relaxations. of the muscular wall of a tubular structure, such as the intestines. that moves the contents along.

Peritoneum

The double-layered membrane that lines the inner wall of the abdomen. The peritoneum covers and partly supports the abdominal *organs*. It also secretes a fluid that lubricates the movement of the intestines.

Phagocyte

A white blood cell or similar cell that surrounds and engulfs unwanted matter, such as invading microbes and cellular debris.

Pharynx

The passage leading down from the back of the nose and the mouth to the esophagus; it consists of the nasopharynx, the oropharynx, and the laryngopharynx.

Pituitary gland

A pea-sized gland hanging from the underside of the brain. The pituitary secretes hormones that control many other glands in the body, and is regulated by the *hypothalamus*.

Placenta

The disk-shaped organ that forms in the *uterus* during pregnancy. It links the blood supplies of the mother and fetus via the umbilical cord and nourishes the growing fetus.

Plasma

The fluid part of the blood from which all cells have been removed; it is mostly water, but contains some proteins, salts, and various nutrients, including glucose.

Platelet

Tiny fragment of a type of large cell manufactured in bone marrow and known as a megakaryocyte. Platelets are vital for blood clotting.

Pleura

A double-layered membrane, the inner layer of which covers the lung while the outer laver lines the chest cavity. A layer of fluid lubricates and enables movement between the two.

Progesterone

A female sex hormone secreted by the ovaries and placenta that allows the *uterus* to receive and retain a fertilized egg.

Prostaglandins

A group of fatty acids, made in the body, that have various functions and influence some hormones.

Prostate gland

A male accessory sex gland situated at the base of the bladder and opening into the *urethra*. It secretes some of the fluid in semen.

Protein

Huge molecule composed of chains of amino acids; the basis of many structural materials (keratin, collagen), enzymes, and antibodies.

Pulmonary artery

The large *artery* that conveys deoxygenated blood from the right ventricle of the heart to the lungs to be reoxygenated.

R

Red blood cells Biconcave, disk-shaped cells, without nuclei, that contain hemoglobin. There are 4-5 million red cells in ^{1/500} pint (1 milliliter) of blood.

Renal

Relating to the *kidneys*.

Respiration

1. Body movements of breathing.

- 2. Gas exchange of oxygen for
- carbon dioxide in the lungs. 3. Similar gas exchange in the

tissues (cellular respiration). 4. Breakdown of molecules such as glucose to release their energy for cellular functions.

Retina

A light-sensitive layer lining the inside of the back of the eve; it converts optical images to nerve impulses, which travel to the brain via the optic nerve.

RNA

Ribonucleic acid, a substance present in cells; different forms carry out various functions, including the manufacture of proteins.

S Saliva

A watery fluid secreted into the mouth by the salivary glands to aid tasting, chewing, and digestion.

Sex hormones

Steroid substances, including testosterone in males and estrogen and progesterone in females, that bring about the development of sexual characteristics. Sex hormones also regulate sperm and egg cell production and the menstrual cycle.

Sphincter

A muscle ring, or local thickening of the muscle coat, surrounding an opening in the body, such as the anus or the urethra.

Spinal nerves

The 31 pairs of combined motor and sensory *nerves* that emerge from and enter the spinal cord.

Spine

The column of 33 ringlike bones, called *vertebrae*, that divides into seven cervical vertebrae. 12 thoracic vertebrae, five lumbar vertebrae, and the fused vertebrae of the sacrum and coccyx.

Spleen

A lymphatic organ, situated on the upper left of the abdomen. that destroys worn-out red blood cells, filters out impurities from the blood, and helps fight infection.

Stem cell

Generalized type of cell, usually fast-dividing, with the potential to become many different kinds of specialized cells.

Sympathetic nervous system One of the two divisions of the *autonomic nervous system*. It prepares the body for action for example, by constricting blood vessels in the intestines and skin.

Synapse

The junction between two *nerve* cells, or between a *nerve* cell and a muscle fiber or a gland. Chemical messengers are passed across a synapse to produce a response in a target cell.

Synovial fluid Thin, slippery, lubricating fluid within a joint.

Synovial joint A mobile joint with a membrane that produces a lubricating fluid.

Systole

The period in the heartbeat cycle during which first the *atria* and then the *ventricles* contract to force blood out of the heart. See *diastole*.

Taste bud

A spherical nest of receptor cells found mainly on the tongue; each bud responds most strongly to a sweet, salty, sour, or bitter flavor.

Tendon

A strong band of *collagen* fibers that joins muscle to bone and transmits the pull caused by muscle contraction.

Testis (pl. testes) One of a pair of the sperm- and *hormone*-producing sex glands in the scrotum.

Testosterone The principal male sex hormone; produced in the testis and in small amounts in the adrenal gland on top of the kidney, and in the ovary.

Thalamus

A mass of *gray matter* found deep in the brain, on top of the *brainstem*. The thalamus receives and processes sensory information.

Thorax

The part of the trunk between the neck and the abdomen that contains the heart and the lungs.

Tissue

Body structure made of similar cells that perform one main function; types include muscle and connective tissues.

Tonsils

Oval masses of lymphoid tissue on the back of the throat. They help protect against childhood infections by attacking microorganisms that enter through the nose and mouth.

Trachea

A muscular tube lined with *mucous membrane* and reinforced by about 20 rings of *cartilage*.

U

Umbilical cord The structure that connects the *placenta* to the *fetus*. It provides the immunological, nutritional, and hormonal link with the mother.

Urea

A waste product of the breakdown of *proteins*; the nitrogen-containing component of urine.

Ureter Tube through which urine passes from each *kidney* to the bladder.

Urethra

The tube that carries urine from the bladder to the exterior; much longer in the male than in the female.

Urinary tract The system that forms and excretes urine; made up of the *kidneys*, *ureters*, bladder, and *urethra*.

Uterus A hollow muscular structure in which the *fetus* grows until birth.

V Vagina

The muscular passage from the **uterus** to the outside of the body; it stretches during sexual intercourse and childbirth.

Vagus nerves

The tenth pair of *cranial nerves*; helps control automatic functions such as heartbeat and digestion.

Vas deferens

One of a pair of tubes that lead from the *testes*; each tube carries sperm, which mix with fluid before entering the *urethra*.

Vein

A thin-walled blood vessel that returns blood at low pressure from body *organs* and *tissues* to the heart.

Vena cava

One of the two large **veins**, the superior and inferior vena cavae, that empty into the right **atrium** of the heart.

Ventricle

A chamber or compartment, usually fluid-filled. Examples include two *cardiac* ventricles in the heart.

Vertebra (pl. vertebrae) One of the 33 bones of the vertebral column (*spine*).

Virus

The tiniest form of infectious microorganism (germ). It takes over a cell to produce copies of itself.

Vocal cords One of two sheets of *mucous membrane* stretched across the inside of the *larynx* that vibrate to produce voice sounds when air passes between them.

W-Z White blood cell Any of the colorless blood cells that play a role in the immune system.

White matter

Nerve tissue in the brain and spinal cord formed mainly of the projecting fibers, or *axons*, of *neurons* (nerve cells).

Zygote

The single cell produced when an *ovum* is fertilized by a sperm; it contains the genetic material (**DNA**) for a new person.

Page numbers in **bold** type indicate main references.

abortion, spontaneous 303 abscesses 126, 195 Achilles tendon 67, 75 acids, digestion 228 acne 189, 280 acromegaly 140 "Adam's apple" 171 adenine 30, 31, 287 adenoids 192 adipose cells 27, 37 adrenal glands 133, 134, 136, 138 adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) 134, 138 afterbirth see placenta aging 128, 129, 284-285 AĬDŠ 209 air, breathing 162, 168–170, 217 airway see bronchi; trachea alcohol, liver disease 236 alleles, genes 290–291, 292–293 allergies 173, 188, **208** alveoli 164, 167 emphysema 175 gas exchange 162, 164, 166 Alzheimer's disease 125 amine hormones 139 amino acids 233 digestion 229, 230, 231 manufacture of 32 amniotic fluid 264 ampulla, balance 119 amygdala 94, 111 amylase 215, 229 anabolism 233 anatomy 10-11 see also individual organs and systems androgens 133, 137 angina 156 angiography 12 ankle 44, 55, 59 antibiotics, resistance to 205 antibodies 148, 172, 196, 197 allergic response 208 in colostrum 273 fertility problems 300 immunization 208 antidiuretic hormone (ADH) 135 antigens 196, 197, 208 anus 212, 213, 227 aorta 150, 151, 153 appendix 213, 225 arachnoid 88, 98, 100 areola, nipples 259 arms: blood vessels 146 bones 40 elbow joint 44 lymphatic system 192 muscles 64, 66 nervous system 78 arrhythmia, heart 159 arteries 146, 149 in brain 86

cerebrovascular disorders 124 coronary arteries 150, 153 coronary artery disease 156 imaging 12, 13 in newborn baby 275 pulmonary artery 151 respiratory system 163 thrombosis 158 arterioles 179 arthritis 60-61 articular cartilage 46 asthma 173 astrocytes 83 atherosclerosis 156, 157 athlete's foot 207 atria, heart 151, 152, 154 atrial fibrillation 159 atriopeptin 132 atrioventricular valves, heart 152 autoimmune disorders 61, 141, 142 autonomic nervous system (ANS) 78, 106-109

axons, neurons 80, 82, 85

В

B lymphocytes 172, 194, 196-197 babies: birth 268-271 blood circulation 275 gender 291 growth and development 276-279 newborn 272, 274-275 premature 303 bacilli 204 back: muscles 66, 68 see also spine bacteria 204-205 antibiotics 205 digestive disorders 234, 235 gut flora 193, 204, 224 inflammatory response 198-201 prostatitis 294 sexually transmitted infections 298-299 urinary tract infections 248 balance 119 ball-and-socket joints 45 basal ganglia 92, 109 bases, DNA 30, 32, 287, 288 basophils 194 bicarbonate, digestive system 232 biceps muscles 73 bile 213, 219, 220, 223, 229 bile duct 220 binocular vision 122 bipolar neurons 82 birth 268-271 disorders 303 preparing for 266-267 bladder: anatomy 242, 243 cystitis 248 epithelial cells 184 incontinence 249 blastocyst 260, 261, 263 bleeding: in brain 124 menstrual cycle 283 blood 21, 148 cardiovascular system 146 clotting 148

heartbeat 154-155 hormones in 20, 132 plasma 21 respiratory system 163, 167 urine production 247 blood cells 27, 37 liver functions 220 production in bone marrow 42 see also red blood cells; white blood cells blood clots: embolism 124, 158 heart attack 156 inflammatory response 201 skin repair 180 thrombosis 124, 158 blood groups, genetics 293 blood pressure, hypertension 159 blood sugar see glucose blood vessels **149** aging 284 in brain 86 cardiovascular system 146 cerebrovascular disorders 124 embolism 158 in fetus 265, 274 heart 150, 151 imaging 12, 13 kidneys 244, 246 liver 220, 222 lungs 153 menstrual cycle 283 in newborn baby 275 in skin 178, 179, 183 temperature regulation 181 vasodilation 201 see also arteries; capillaries; veins body fat: cells 27, 35, 37 obesity 143 subcutaneous fat 179 body hair, puberty 280, 282 body temperature, regulation 23, 181 bone marrow 42, 43 bones 19, 38-61 ankle and foot 55 cells 42 disorders 56-58 in ear 49, 116, 118 fractures 56-57 growth 42, 134, 276 imaging 12 ioints 44-47 as levers 72 ligaments 55 in newborn baby 272 osteoporosis 56, 58 pelvis 53 repair 57 rib cage 52 shapes 41 skeleton 14, 40-41 skull 48-49 spine 50-51 structure 42-43 tendons 72 tissue 37 wrist and hand 54 Bowman's capsule 244, 246, 247 bovs: gender 291

puberty 280-1 brain 78, 86-97 aging 285 anatomy 86-87 autonomic nervous system 108 blood supply 86 cranial nerves 102-103 disorders 124-126 growth and development 277 infections 126 information processing 20 memories, thoughts, and emotions 110-111 nerve damage 83 primitive brain 94-95 protection 88 scanning 13 sense of taste and smell 113 sense of touch 115 sleep cycles 97, 138 stroke 157 structures 86-87, 90-91 tissues 36 vision 120, 122 brainstem 87, 90, 93, 96 breastbone 40, 52 breastfeeding 273 breasts 259 disorders 296 milk production 135 in pregnancy 265 in puberty 282 breathing 166-170, 217, 272 see also respiratory system bronchi 162-165 bronchioles 162-165, 167, 173 bronchitis 173, 175

Ċ

calcium 42, 58, 137 cancer 305 breast 296 colorectal 239 lung 174 prostate 294 . skin 12, 187 testicular 295 Candida albicans 207, 209, 299 canine teeth 216, 278 capillaries 146, 149 lymphatic system 192, 193 in skin 179 vasodilation 201 carbohydrates 229, 232, 233 carbon dioxide: aging 284 in blood 21 cardiovascular system 146 gas exchange 164, 166-167 cardiac muscle 67 angina 157 heart attack 156 heartbeat 155 cardiac skeleton 150 cardiovascular system 15, 144-159 anatomy 146-147 blood and blood vessels 148-149 disorders 156-159 heart 150-151 heartbeat 154-155

in newborn baby 275 carpal bones 40, 44, 54 carpal tunnel syndrome 75 cartilage 43 bone development 42, 276 cells 36 ears 116 intervertebral disks 50 joints 44, 46, 47 larynx 171 in newborn baby 272 osteoarthritis 60 rib cage 52 torn cartilage 59 catabolism 233 cataracts, eyes 285 cecum 224, 225, 232 cells 10, 24-37 aging 284 anatomy 27 blood 148, 194 bone 42 cancer 305 cell membrane 26, 27, 28 cellular respiration 166 development of embryo 260-263 division 289 DNA 30-31, 286 egg cells 256 epithelial tissues 184 genetic control 35 growth, renewal, and repair 233 inflammatory response 198-201 muscle 70 neurons 80-81 sex cells 289 skin renewal 178 sperm 252 tissues 36-37 types 27 central nervous system (CNS) 78 centriole, cells 26 cerebellum 86, 87, 90-91, 109 cerebral cortex 90, 92, 109, 113 cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) 83 brain 88, 89, 91 spinal cord 98, 100 cerebrum 86, 87, 90-91, 92 cervical vertebrae 41, 44, 51 cervix 257, 264 birth 270 fertility problems 300 menopause 285 placenta previa 302 preparation for birth 267, 268-269 chemotaxis 201 chest: breathing 168-170 muscles 64, 66 nervous system 78 children: growth and development 276-279 puberty 280-283 chlamydia 298, 299 chloride, digestive system 232 choking 217 cholesterol: atherosclerosis 157 in blood 148 in colon 232 gallstones 238 chondrocytes 36, 43

homeostasis 23

chromosomes: cell division 289 disorders 304 DNA 30-31, 33 fertilization of egg 289 and gender 291 genome 34-35, 286-287 patterns of inheritance 290-291 sex cells 289 chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) 175 chyme 219, 224, 228, 229 cilia 28, 184, 198, 260 circle of Willis 86 circulatory system see cardiovascular system cirrhosis, liver 236, 237 clavicle 40, 45 clitoris 257, 258 clots see blood clots cocci 204 coccyx 41, 50, 51, 53 cochlea 116-118, 128, 285 cold, common 172 cold sores 188 collagen 44, 55, 284 collarbone 40 colon 213, 224-227, 232, 239 color: color blindness 293 eves 33, 292 skin pigmentation 187 colostrum 273 columnar cells 184 communication: facial expressions 68 see also speech compact bone 42, 43 complement system, immune system 196-197 computerized tomography (CT) 13 conception 260, 289 cone cells, retina 120 conjunctiva, eye 121 connective tissue 36, 37 aging 284 cartilage 43 joints 46 tendons 72 contractions, labor 267-270 cornea 120, 121, 129, 185 coronary arteries 150, 153 coronary artery disease 156 coronary veins 150 corpus callosum 87, 92 corpus luteum 258, 283 cortex, brain 110, 111 coughing 171, 217 cranial nerves 102-103, 113 cranium 48, 277 cuboidal cells 185 cystic fibrosis 304 cvstitis 248 cvsts 189, 296 cytoplasm 21, 26, 29 cytosine 30, 31, 287 cytoskeleton, cells 26

\supset

deafness 128, 285 defecation 227 defenses: immune system **194–209** skin and hair **186–187**

delivery, birth 270-271 dementia 125 dendrites 80, 85 dentine 216 dermatomes 105 dermis 36, 37 aging 284 skin structure 178, 179 touch sensors 182, 183 diabetes mellitus 142-143 diabetic nephropathy 248 diaphragm 163 breathing 168-169, 170 hiatus hernia 235 diet, nutrients 232-233 digestive system 17, 24, 210-239 anatomy 212-213 digestion 228-231 disorders 234-239 homeostasis 23 hormones 133 immune system 193 large intestine 224-227 liver 220-223 mouth and throat 214-217 nutrients and metabolism 232-233 stomach and small intestine 218-219 diphtheria 205 diseases: bacteria 204-205 cancer 305 imaging the body 12-13 immunization 208 lymphatic system 192 sexually transmitted infections 298-299 see also individual diseases disk prolapse 57 diverticular disease 239 DMARDs 61 DNA 30-35 in bacteria 204 genome 34, 286-287 mitochondrial DNA 35 mutations 288 noncoding and "junk" DNA 34 replication 288 in viruses 202, 209 dominant genes 292-293 Down syndrome 304 dreams 97 duodenum 218-219, 223 digestion 229 functions 219 ulcers 234 dura mater 88, 98, 100

E

eardrum 117, 118, 128 ears 116–119 aging 285 balance 119 bones 49, 116, 118 disorders 128 ectopic pregnancy 302 eczema 188 egg cells (ova) 27, 256 ectopic pregnancy 302 fertilization 260, 289 and inheritance of gender 291 meiosis 289 ovulation 258, 283, 300 ejaculation 252, 254, 255 fertility problems 301 puberty 280 elastic cartilage 36, 43 elbow 44, 73 electrical signals: heartbeat 13, 155, 159 nerve impulses 20, 84-85 electrocardiography (ECG) 13 electron microscopy 12 ellipsoidal joints 45 embolism 124, 158 embryo 256, **260-263** cells 35 ectopic pregnancy 302 see also fetus embryonic disk 262 emotions 110-111 emphysema 175 enamel, teeth 216 endocrine system 15, 130-143 glands 132-133 hormonal action 138-139 hormonal disorders 140-143 endometrium 256, 261, 265 endometriosis 296, 300 menstrual cycle 296 endoplasmic reticulum, cells 26, 29 endoscopy 13 energy 233 enzymes 32 digestive system 24, 193, 213, 228-230 gut flora 224 heart attack 156 pancreatic 223 in saliva 215 in stomach 218 eosinophils 194 epidermis 183 aging 284 defensive function 186-187 skin structure 178, 179 epididymis 252, 253, 301 epiglottis 212, 214 in coughing 171 in swallowing 162, 217 epithelium 27, 35, 36, 184-185 digestion 219, 231 inflammatory response 198 lining of mouth 214 equilibrium 23 erythropoietin 133 esophagus 212, 213 hiatus hernia 235 esophageal varices 237 swallowing 217 estrogen 133, 137, 256, 258 fertility problems 300 menopause 285 menstrual cycle 282, 283 puberty 282 Eustachian tube 116, 128 exhalation, breathing 169, 170 expressions, facial 68, 102 extracellular fluid 21, 200 eyebrows 69, 186 eyelashes 186 eyes 120-123 aging 285 color 33, 292 color blindness 293 development of 278-279

disorders **129** epithelium 184-185 eyelids 69, 123 muscles 121, 123 optic nerve 103 tears 123, 193

face: bones 48 expressions 68, 102 hair 280 muscles 68-69 facet joints, spine 50 fallopian tubes 28, 256 conception in 260 ectopic pregnancy 302 fertility problems 300 lining 257 pelvic inflammatory disease 298, 300 false ribs 52 fascicles: muscles 70 nerves 82 fat see body fat fats, digestion 223, 229, 232, 233 fatty acids 233 feces 212, 224, 226, 227 diverticular disease 239 fiber in 233 in newborn baby 272 feedback systems: homeostasis 23 hormones 138, 139, 281, 282 feet: athlete's foot 207 bones 41, 55 muscles 65, 67 in newborn baby 272 skin 186 tendons 72 toenails 180, 186 walking 55 X-rays 12 female reproductive system 256-259 disorders 296-297 infertility 300 puberty 282 femur 41, 47, 272 fertility disorders 300-301 fertilization 260, 289 fetus 256 blood circulation 274 development of 264-265 miscarriage 303 multiple pregnancy 266 position in uterus 266, 303 fiber 232 fibrinogen 148, 180, 201 fibrocartilage 43 fibroids, uterus 297 fibula 41 fingers 54, 180, 182 flatworms 207 flu 173 fluids 21 flukes 207 fluoroscopy 12 focusing problems, eyes 129 folic acid 127 follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) 134. 258, 281, 282-283 follicles: hair 178, 179, 181, 182 ovaries 258, 282, 283

fontanelles, skull 272, 277 food: digestive system **210–239** nutrients **232–233** foot see feet

fractures 56–57, 58 fungi 207

G

galactose 230 gallbladder 213, 221, 223 gallstones 238 gametes 256 gamma rays, scanning the body 13 gammaglobulins 196 ganglia, nerves 104, 106 gas exchange 164, 166-167 gastric juices 193, 218 gastric pits, stomach 228 gastritis 235 gender, inheritance of 291 genes **33–35** bacteria 204 control of cells 35 disorders 304 dominant genes 292-293 genome 34-35 inheritance 286-293 mitochondrial genes 35 mutations 288 patterns of inheritance 290-291 recessive genes 292-293 sex cells 289 viruses 202 genitals: female 258 male 252–253 in newborn baby 272 in puberty 280, 282 sexually transmitted infections 298-299 genome 34-35, 286-287 germs see bacteria; microorganisms; viruses girls: gender 291 puberty 282-283 glands 130-143 hormones 134-137 lymph nodes 192, 194 male reproductive system 254 see also individual glands glandular cells 185 glaucoma 129 glial cells 36, 80, 83 gliding joints 44-45 alobulins 148 glomerulonephritis 248 glomerulus, kidneys 244, 246, 247 glottis, vocal cords 171 glucagon 133, 136, 142 glucose: in blood 148 cellular respiration 166 diabetes mellitus 142-143 digestive system 231, 233 hormone control 136 liver functions 220 glycerol 233 glycogen 220, 233 goblet cells 184, 260 goiter 141 Golgi complex, cells 26, 29 gonorrhea 298 aoose pimples 181

Graves' disease 141 gray matter: brain 36, 92–93 spinal cord 98, 99 greenstick fracture 56 growth, babies **276–279** growth hormone (GH) 20, 134, 140 growth plates, bones 42, 276 guanine 30, 31, 287 gullet 212 gums 216 gutt flora 193, 204, 224

Η

hair 16 defensive functions 186 growth 181 in puberty 280, 282 temperature regulation 181 hair cells, ears 118, 119 hair follicles 178, 179, 181, 182, 189 hamstring muscles 67, 74 hands: bones 41, **54,** 276 carpal tunnel syndrome 75 dexterity 278-279 fingernails 180 joints 44, 45 muscles 65 rheumatoid arthritis 61 tendons 72 touch sensors 182 head: growth 277 hair 186 muscles 68-69 nervous system 78 skull 48-49 headaches, migraine 125 healing, fractures 57 health 11 hearing 116-118, 128, 285 heart 163 anatomy 150-151 cardiovascular system 146 disorders 156-159 electrocardiography 13 heart attack 156 heartbeat 154-155 hormones 132 muscle 67, 153 in newborn baby 272, 275 valves 150-152 height, children's growth 277 Helicobacter pylori 234, 235 hemoglobin 148, 167 hemorrhage, brain 124 hepatic portal system 220, 222 hepatocytes 25, 220 hernia, hiatus 235 Herpes simplex 188 hiatus hernia 235 hinge joints 44-45 hippocampus 94, 111 hips 40, 45, 53, 60 histamine 199, 201, 208 histoplasmosis 207 HIV 209 homeostasis 23, 106 hookworms 207 hormones 132 action of 138-139 disorders 140-143

fertility problems 300 glands 134-137 homeostasis 23 information processing 20 menopause 285 menstrual cycle 258, 283 and osteoporosis 58 in puberty 280-283 sex hormones 134, 137, 252, 256 Human Genome Project 34, 287 humerus 40, 44, 45 hyaline cartilage 36, 43, 46 hydrocele 295 hydrochloric acid 193, 218, 228 hyoid bone 48, 50, 171, 214 hypertension 159 hyperthyroidism 141 hypothalamus 86, 87, 95 autonomic nervous system 106, 108 feedback system 138 hormones 132, 134, 135, 138, 139, 282 in puberty 281 hypothyroidism 141

ileum 213, 219 ilium (hip bone) 40, 53 imaging the body 12-13 immune system 16, 190-209 allergies 208 autoimmune disorders 61, 141, 142 auxiliary immune system 193 HIV and AIDS 209 hormones 132 infections 202-207 inflammatory response 195, 198-201 local infections 195 lymphatic system 192-193 specific responses 196 immunization 208 impetigo 188 incisors 216 incontinence, urinary 249 infections 202-207 bacteria 204-205 brain 126 local 195 sexually transmitted (STIs) 298-299 superbugs 205 urinary tract 248 infertility 300-301 inflammatory response 195, 198-201 influenza 173, 202 information processing 20 inhalation, breathing 168, 170 inheritance 286-293 inherited disorders 304 injuries, inflammatory response 198 insulin 133, 136, 142-143 interstitial fluid 21, 192, 193 intervertebral disks 46, 50 intestines: digestion 230-231 hormones 133 immune system 193 large intestine 212, 213, 224-227 in newborn baby 272 parasitic worms 207 small intestine 212, 213, 219 see also colon: rectum

315

intracellular fluid 21 involuntary muscles 67 involuntary responses 108 iris, eye 121 iron, hemoglobin 148 islets of Langerhans 136, 142

J

jaw: bones 48 fibrocartilage 46 in newborn baby 272 teeth 216 jejunum 213, 219 joints 19, 44-47 arthritis 60-61 cartilage 59 disorders 59-61 jaws 42 ligaments 55 movement 72 muscles 64, 66 in newborn baby 272 pelvis 53 spine 50 wrist 54

Κ

Kaposi's sarcoma 209 karyotypes, chromosomes 34 keratin: in hair 181 in nails 180 in skin 178, 186 keratinocytes 187 ketones 142 kidneys 242, 244-247 homeostasis 23 hormones 133, 135 stones 249 killer T cells 196 kinins 201 knee: joint 46-47 patella 41 . patellar spinal reflex 105 torn cartilage 59 Kupffer cells 25

L

labia 258 labor 266, 268-269 birth 270-271 disorders 303 lacrimal glands 102, 123 language see speech large intestine see intestines laryngopharynx 162 larynx 162, 171, 217 legs: blood vessels 147 bones 41 arowth 276 joint disorders 59 knee joint 46-47 lymphatic system 193 muscles 65, 67 nervous system 79 lens, eye 120, 121, 285 leukocytes see white blood cells levers, body parts as 72 ligaments 55

injuries 59 joints 44, 46, 47 spine 50 light: pineal gland and 138 vision 120-121 light microscopy (LM) 12 limbic system 86, 94-95, 108 lipids 229 lips, muscles 69 liver 212, 213, 220-223 disorders 236-237 in newborn baby 272 nutrient processing 232 tissues 24-25 liver spots, skin 284 lobes, brain 90 loop of Henle 244, 246, 247 lumbar vertebrae 51 lungs: blood vessels 153 breathing 168-170 cancer 174 chronic obstructive pulmonary disease 175 coughing 171 cystic fibrosis 304 disorders 173-175 gas exchange 164, 166-167 inflammatory response 198–201 in newborn baby 272 pulmonary embolism 158 respiratory system 162 structure 164-165 luteinizing hormone (LH) 134, 258, 281, 282-283 lymphatic system 16 anatomy **192–193** lymph fluid 21, 192–193, 194 lymph nodes 192–193, 194 lymph vessels 194 lymphocytes 194, 196 lymphokines 196 lysosome 26, 200

\mathbb{N}

macrophages 194, 196-197, 199 macula, balance 119 macular degeneration, eyes 285 magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) 13, 111 malaria 206 male reproductive organs 252-253 disorders 294-295 infertility 301 malignant tumors 305 mammary glands 135, 259 see also breasts mammogram 12 manual dexterity, development of 278-279 marrow, bone, 42, 43 mast cells 208 Meissner's corpuscles 115, 182, 183 melanin: moles 189 skin pigmentation 134, 187, 188 melanocytes 134, 187, 188, 189 melanoma 12 melanosomes 187 melatonin 132, 138 membranes: cells 26, 27, 28 epithelial tissues 184

lining of mouth 214 peritoneum 213 memory 110-111, 125 memory cells, immune system 196, 197, 208 meninges 87, 88, 98 meningitis 126 meniscus, knee joint 47, 59 menopause 58, 285, 297 menstrual cycle 282, 283 endometriosis 296 ovulation 256, 258 menstruation 282, 283, 285 Merkel's disk 115, 183 metabolism 132, 141, 233 metacarpal bones 41, 54 metatarsal bones 41, 44, 55 meticillin 205 microfilaments, cells 26 microorganisms 194-195, 202-207 see also bacteria; viruses microreceptors 20 microscopy 12 microtubules, cells 26 microvilli, cells 26, 28 migraine 125 milk, breastfeeding 135, 259, 273 milk teeth 272, 278 minerals 220, 232 miscarriage 303, 304 mitochondria 26, 29, 35 mitral valve, heart 151, 152 molars 216, 278 molecules, crossing cell membrane 29 moles 189 monocytes 194, 199 morula 260 mosquitoes, malaria 206 motor nerves 82 autonomic nervous system 106 positional sense 73 spinal reflexes 105 motor skills 19, 278-279 mouth 214-217 anatomy 214 digestive system 212 muscles 69 sense of taste 113 teeth 216 movement 19, 70, 72-73 mucus, coughing and sneezing 171 multiple-gene inheritance 293 multiple pregnancy 266 multiple sclerosis (MS) 127 multipolar neurons 82 muscles 14, 19, 64-74 autonomic nervous system 106, 108-109 breathing 168, 170 cells 27, 35, 36 contraction 70, 71 development of 278-279 digestive system 212, 226, 227 disorders 74 eye 121, 123 face, head, and neck 68-69 hands 54 heart 150, 153 ioints 46 movement 70, 72-73 proprioceptive sense 73, 102 puberty 280

stomach 218 structure 70–71 tendons 72 tissues 37, 67 tongue 214 mutations 288 myelin, nerves 81, 85, 127 myofibers 70–71 myofilaments 70–71

Ņ

nails 16, 180, 186 nasal bones 49 nasopharynx 162, 171, 214 neck muscles 68-69 nematodes 207 nephrons, kidneys 244, 246-247 nerve cells see neurons nerves 82 carpal tunnel syndrome 75 dermatomes 105 hormones and 132 multiple sclerosis (MS) 127 regeneration 83 touch sensors 179 nervous system 15, 76-128 aging 285 autonomic nervous system 106-109 brain 86-97 ears, hearing, and balance 116-119 eyes and vision 120-123 homeostasis 23 information processing 20 nerves and neurons 80-81 peripheral nerves 102-105 positional sense 73 senses 112-123 sensory feedback 19 spinal cord 98-99 tissues 36 touch sensors 115, 182-183 neuromuscular spindles 73 neurons 27, 35, 80-81 aging 285 brain 92 nerve impulses 84-85 neurotransmitters 84 neutrophils 180, 194, 199, 200, 201 newborn baby 272, 274-275 nipples 259 nongonococcal urethritis (NGU) 299 nose: auxiliary immune system 193 respiratory system 162 sense of smell 112, 113 sneezing 171 nostrils 69, 162 nuclear medicine imaging 13 nuclear membrane, cells 26 nucleolus, cells 26 nucleoplasm, cells 26 nucleus 26, 30 cell division 289 neurons 80 nutrients 232-233

olfactory epithelium 102, 112, 162 oligodendrocytes 83 omentum 213

organelles 26, 27, 28, 29 organs 24 see also individual organs oropharynx 162, 214 ossicles, ear 49, 117, 118 ossification, bones 42, 276 osteoarthritis 60 osteoblasts 42, 57 osteoclasts 42 osteocytes 42 osteons 43 osteoporosis 56, 58 otitis media with effusion 128 ova see egg cells ovaries 256, 257, 258 hormones 133, 136, 137 menstrual cycle 282, 283 pelvic inflammatory disease 298 puberty 282 ovulation 256, 258, 282, 300 ovum see egg cells oxygen: and aging 284 in blood 148 in brain 86 breathing 168, 170 cardiovascular system 146 cellular respiration 166 fetal development 265 gas exchange 164, **166–167** newborn baby 275 pulmonary circulation 153 oxytocin 135

P

pacemaker, heart 155, 159 Pacinian corpuscles 115, 182, 183 pain 19 inflammatory response 198, 201 palate 214, 217 pancreas 133, 212, 213, 223 diabetes mellitus 142-143 hormones 136 pancreatitis 142, 238 papillae, tongue 114 parasites 206, 207 parasympathetic autonomic nervous system 106, 107 parathyroid glands 137 parotid glands 212, 215 patella 41, 47 patellar spinal reflex 105 pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) 298, 300 pelvis 40, 53 childbirth 268, 271 in newborn baby 272 penis 252, 253 erection 255 sexual intercourse 260 urinary system 243 pepsin 228, 230 peptic ulcers 234 peptidase enzymes 231 peptides 233 pericardial cavity 163 periods 282, 283, 285 periosteum 42, 276 peripheral nervous system (PNS) 78, 102-105 peristalsis 212, 218

peritoneum 213 peroxisome, cells 26 Peyer's patches 192, 193 phagocytes 172 phagocytosis 197, 200 phalanges 41, 54, 55 phalanxes 41 pharynx 214 anatomy 162 coughing 171 swallowing food 212, 217 phospholipids 28 photoreceptor cells 27 physiology 11 pia mater 88, 98, 100 pigmentation: aging 284 hormones and 134 melanin 187, 188 pineal gland 132, 138 pituitary gland 87, 132, 134–135 hormones 138, 139 menstrual cycle 283 puberty 281, 282 tumors 140 pivot joints 44-45 placenta 260 delivery 270, 271 development of 263 functions 265 problems 302 plasma 21, 148, 197, 201 plasmids, bacteria 205 platelets 37, 148-149, 180 pleural cavity 163 pleural membranes 163, 165 plexus, spinal nerves 104 portal hypertension 237 positron emission tomography (PET) scans 13 posture 19 potassium 232 pregnancy: conception to embryo 260-263 delivery 270-271 disorders 302-303 fetal development 264-265 labor 268-269 preparing for birth 266-267 ultrasound scans 13 premolars 216 preterm labor 303 primitive brain 94-95 progesterone 133, 137, 282, 283 prolactin 135 prolactinomas 140 prolapsed uterus 297 proprioceptive sense 19, 73, 102 prostate gland 243, 253 disorders 294 semen 254, 255 proteins: complement system 196-197 diaestion 229 in food 232 protein-based hormones 139 synthesis 32, 220, 233 protists (protozoa) 206 psoriasis 188 puberty 256, 258, 280-283 pubic hair 280, 282 public health, immunization 208

pulmonary artery 151, 163, 165

217

INDEX

pulmonary circulation 153 pulmonary embolism 158 pulmonary valve, heart 151, 152 pulmonary vein 151, 153, 163, 165 pupil, eye 103, 121, 123 pus 195

R

pyelonephritis 248

radius 40, 44, 45 rashes 126, 188 recessive genes 292-293 rectum 213, 226 colorectal cancer 239 defecation 227 red blood cells 27, 37, 148-149 reflexes 108 aging 285 in babies 278 respiratory 171 spinal 105 swallowing 217 reflux, urine 248 renal artery 245 renal vein 245 replication, DNA 288 reproductive system 17, 250-275 baby 272-275 conception to embryo 260-263 female 256-259 female disorders 296-297 fetal development 264-265 infertility disorders 300-301 male 252-255 male disorders 294-295 menopause 285 pregnancy and labor disorders 302-303 sexually transmitted infections 298-299 respiratory system 16, 160-175 anatomy 162-163 breathing 168-170 disorders 172-175 gas exchange 166-167 homeostasis 23 immune system 193 inflammatory response 198-201 lungs 164-165 pulmonary circulation 153 reflexes 171 vocalization 170 reticular activating system (RAS) 96 reticular formation 96 retina: epithelium 185 macular degeneration 285 optic nerve 103 vision 120, 122 rheumatoid arthritis 61 ribosomes, cells 26, 32 ribs 40, 52 breathing 163, 168-170 ringworm 207 RNA 35, 209 viruses 202, 203, 209 rod cells, retina 120 roundworms 207 Ruffini corpuscles 115, 183

sacrum 40, 50, 51, 53 saddle joints 45 saliva 21, 114 salivary glands 193, 212, 214, 215 scabs, skin repair 180 scalp, hair 186 scanning electron microscopy (SEM) 12 scans, imaging the body 12-13 scapula 40, 41, 45, 68 scars 180 Schwann cells 80, 81, 85 scrotum 252, 253, 295 sebaceous glands 179, 186, 189 sebum 179, 186, 189 secretory vesicles, cells 26 semen (seminal fluid) 255 semicircular canals, ear 117, 119 semilunar valves, heart 152 semimovable joints 44 seminal vesicles 253, 254 seminiferous tubules 252, 254 senses 112-123 hearing 116-118 and memory 110 proprioceptive sense 19, 102 smell 112-113 taste 113, 114 touch 115, 182-183 vision 120-123 sensors, skin 182-183 sensory nerves 82 autonomic nervous system 106 positional sense 73 spinal reflexes 105 touch 115 sex cells: cell division 289 chromosome disorders 304 egg 258 meiosis 289 mitosis 289 sperm 252 sex chromosomes 291, 293 sex glands 137 sex hormones 134 and osteoporosis 58 ovaries 133, 136, 137, 256 testes 136, 137, 252 sex-linked inheritance 293 sexual intercourse 260 sexually transmitted infections (STIs) 298-299 shoulder 41, 45 sigmoid colon 213, 227, 239 sinoatrial node, heart 155 sinus tachycardia 159 sinuses 48 skeletal muscle 37, 67, 70 skeleton see bones skin 16, 178-189 aging 284 cancer 12, 187 connective tissue 36, 37 defensive functions 186-187 dermatomes 105 disorders 188-189 immune system 193 pigmentation 134, 187, 188, 284 puberty 280 renewal 178

repair 180 sweat 22 temperature regulation 181 touch sensors 182-183 see also rashes skull: bones 40, 41, **48–49** fontanelles 272, 277 growth 277 joints 44, 48, 277 sleep cycles 97, 138 "slipped disk" 57 small intestine see intestines smell, sense of 102, 112-113, 162 smoking, lung diseases 174, 175 smooth muscle 27, 37, 67 sneezing 171, 172 social skills, development of 278-279 sodium 232 sounds: hearing 116, 118, 285 vocalization 171 speech and language 110 development of 278-279 vocal cords 162 vocalization 171 sperm 252, 254-255 cells 27, 35 fertility problems 300, 301 fertilization of egg 260, 289 and inheritance of gender 291 movement 28 puberty 280, 281 sexual intercourse 260 sphincters 227, 249 spina bifida 127 spinal cord 51, 78, 98-99 nerve damage 83 spina bifida 127 spinal nerves 104 spinal reflexes 105 spine 18 disk prolapse 57 intervertebral disks 46, 50 spinal canal 100 vertebrae 50-51 spirilla 204 spleen 192, 193 sprains 59 squamous cells 185 stem cells 27 sternum 40, 52, 169, 170 steroid hormones 133, 134, 136, 139 stomach 213 anatomy 218 disorders 234-235 hormones 133 immune system 193 stones 238, 249 strain, muscles 74 striated muscle 67, 70 stroke 124, 157 subconscious behavior 94 subcutaneous fat 179 superbugs 205 suture joints, skull 44, 48, 277 swallowing 103, 217 sweat 22, 179, 181 sweat glands 178, 179 sympathetic autonomic nervous system 106 synapses 80, 84 synovial fluid 44, 46

synovial joints 44, 46 synovial membrane 44, 46, 47, 61 syphilis 299 systems **14–17**, 24–25 homeostasis 23 see also individual systems

T lymphocytes 192, 196 tanning, skin pigmentation 187 tapeworms 207 tarsal bones 41, 44, 55 taste 103, 113, 114 tear glands 193 tears 123 teeth 212, 216 abscesses 195 chewing food 214, 216 development 278 milk teeth 272, 278 in newborn baby 272 temperature regulation 23, 181 tendinitis 74 tendons 72, 74-75 tenosynovitis 74 testes 133, 252, 253 cancer 295 hormones 136, 137, 281 hydrocele 295 puberty 280, 281 testosterone 133, 137, 252, 280, 281 thalamus 86, 87, 90, 93, 113 thermoregulation 23 thinking 111 thoracic vertebrae 51 thoughts 111 throat 172, 214-215, 217 thrombocytes 148 thrombosis 124, 156, 158 thumb 45, 54 thymine 30, 31, 287 thymus gland 132, 192, 272 thyroid cartilage 171 thyroid gland 132, 137 disorders 141 hormones 134, 139 thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) 134, 135 thyrotropin-releasing hormone 134, 139 thyroxine 141 tibia 41, 47 tinea infections 207 tissues, types of 36-37 toes 55, 180, 186 tongue 214 hyoid bone 50 sense of taste 114 sneezing 171 tonsils 192 tooth see teeth toothache 195 touch, sense of 115, 179, 182-183 toxins 205, 222 trachea 165 anatomy 162, 163 breathing 164, 169 bronchoscopy 13 coughing 171, 217 epithelial cells 184 inflammatory response 198-201

transcellular fluid 21 transcription, DNA 32 translation, DNA 32 tricuspid valve, heart 151, 152 triplets 266 tumors 12, 140, 305 see also cancer twins 266

ulcers, peptic 234 ulna 40, 44 ultrasound scans 13 ultraviolet (UV) light 187 umbilical cord 264, 270, 271, 275 unipolar neurons 82 upper airway infections 172-173 ureter 242, 243, 253 urethra 242, 243, 255, 257 urethritis, nongonococcal 299 urinary system 17, 240-249 anatomy 242-243 disorders 248-249 epithelium 184 homeostasis 23 kidneys 244-247 urinary tract infections 248 urine 242, 247 uterus 256, 257 after birth 273 birth 270-271 blood circulation 274 contractions 267-270 endometriosis 296, 300 fetal development 264-265 fetal position 266 fibroids 297 hormones 135 implantation of blastocyst 261 menstrual cycle 283 pregnancy disorders 302-303 problems in labor 303 prolapse 297 uvula 214

V

vaccines 208 vacuoles, cells 26 vagina 257, 264 birth 270-271 menopause 285 prolapsed uterus 297 sexual intercourse 260 vulva 258 valves: heart 150-152, 157 veins 149 vas deferens 252, 253, 255, 301 vasodilation 201 vasopressin 135 veins 146, 149 coronary veins 150 esophageal varices 237 in newborn baby 275 respiratory system 163 thrombosis 158 vena cava 151, 153, 221 ventricles: brain 89, 91 heart 150, 151, 152, 154

ventricular tachycardia 159 vertebrae 18, 41, 50-51 disk prolapse 57 intervertebral disks 46 ioints 44 spinal cord 99, 100 vertebral column 40 vibrations, hearing 118 villi: chorionic 263, 265 digestion 219, 230, 231 viruses 202-203 HIV 209 respiratory infections 172-173 vision 120-123 aging 285 color blindness 293 development of 278-279 disorders 129 optic nerve 103 visual cortex 110, 122 vitamins: digestive system 232 storage in liver 220 vitamin B group 224, 232 vitamin K 224, 232 vitiligo 188 vitreous humor, eye 120 vocal cords 162, 217 puberty 280 vocalization 171 voluntary muscles 67 voluntary responses 109 vulva 258

W

walking 55 waste products 21 aging 284, 285 in blood 148 digestive system 213 urinary system 242, 247 water: body fluids 21 in colon 232 drinking 23 wax, in ears 116, 128 white blood cells 148-149 functions 172, 195 inflammatory response 198-201 lymphatic system 192 skin repair 180 types 194 white matter 36, 92–93, 98 windpipe see trachea wisdom teeth 216, 278 womb see uterus worms, parasitic 207 wounds 83, 180, 198 wrinkles, skin 284 wrist: bones 40, 54 carpal tunnel syndrome 75 fibrocartilage 46 joints 44, 45

X-rays 12–13 yeasts 207, 209 zygote 260

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

DK Publishing would like to thank several people for their help in the preparation of this book. Anna Barlow contributed valuable comments on the cardiovascular system. Peter Laws assisted with visualization, and additional design work was done by Mark Lloyd and Louise Waller. Three-dimensional illustrations were created from a model supplied by Zygote Media Group, Inc. Ben Hoare, Peter Frances, and Ed Wilson all provided editorial assistance, Katie John did the proofreading, and Hilary Bird provided the index. Marianne Markham and Andrea Bagg contributed to the initial development work.

The Concise Human Body Book Picture Credits

The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:

(Key: a-above; b-below/bottom; c-center; f-far; l-left; r-right; t-top)

5 Science Photo Library: Sovereign, ISM. 6 Science Photo Library. 10-11 Science Photo Library: Francois Paquet-Durand. 12 Alamy Images: Dr. P. Marazzi (br). Science Photo Library: CNRI (bl). Wellcome Library, London: K. Hodivala-Dilke & M. Stone (cra). 13 Alamy Images: Chad Ehlers (bl). Getty Images: Science Faction / L. Steinmark - CMSP (br). Science Photo Library: CNRI (bc); Wellcome Dept. of Cognitive Neurology (cr); K H Fung (tr); Alfred Pasieka (tc). **18 Science Photo** Library. 20 Still Pictures: PHONE Labat J.M. / F. Rouguette (bl); Volker Steger (tr). 21 Science Photo Library: CNRI (tl). 22 Science Photo Library: Richard Wehr / Custom Medical Stock Photo: Adam Hart-Smith (crb). 23 Science Photo Library: Adam Hart-Davis (cr). 25 Dreamstime. com: Kateryna Kon (tl). 27 Science Photo Library: Volker Steger (cla). 28 Alamy Images: Phototake Inc. (tc). Science Photo Library: Jean-Claude Revy, ISM (cb). 29 Science Photo Library: Professors P. Motta & T. Naguro (tl) (tc) (tr). **30 Science Photo Library:** Lawrence Livermore Laboratory (clb). **33 Alamy** Images: Bjanka Kadic (tr). **34 Science** Photo Library: CNRI (tl). **35 Science** Photo Library: Alain Pol, ISM (tl). 36 Alamy Images: Phototake Inc. (tr). Science Photo Library: Nancy Kedersha / UCLA (tc). Still Pictures: Ed Reschke (br). 37 Corbis: Visuals Unlimited (br). Science Photo Library: Innerspace Imaging (tl); Claude Nuridsany & Marie Perennou (bc). Still Pictures: Ed Reschke (bl) (tc). Wellcome Library, London: David Gregory & Debbie Marshall (tr). 38-61 Wellcome Library, London: Professor Alan Boyde (sidebars), 43 Science Photo Library: Biophoto Associates (bl). Wellcome Library, London: M.I. Walker (cra). 44 DK Images: Philip Dowell / Courtesy of The Natural History Museum, London (clb). Wellcome Library, London: (bl). 46 Science Photo Library: GJLP (bl). 47 Science Photo Library: Eye of Science (tc). 48 Science Photo Library: Simon Brown (tl). 50 Science Photo Library: Anatomical Travelogue (tr). 59 Science Photo Library: CNRI (cla). 60 Science Photo Library: Princess Margaret Rose Orthopaedic Hospital (cl). 61 Science

Photo Library: CNRI (cl). 62-75 Science Photo Library: Eye of Science (sidebars). 67 Science Photo Library: (crb/Smooth) (br/Cardiac). Wellcome Library, London: M.I. Walker (bc/Striated). 68 Still Pictures: Ed Reschke (tl). 70 Science Photo Library: Steve Gschmeissner (cla). 76-129 Science Photo Library: Nancy Kedersha (sidebars). 80 Wellcome Library, London: Dr. Jonathan Clarke (clb). 81 Science Photo Library: Steve Gschmeissner (br). 83 Science Photo Library: Nancy Kedersha (br); Dr. John Zajicek (bc). 86 Alamy Images: allOver Photography (bl). Science Photo Library: Zephyr (br). Still Pictures: Alfred Pasieka (tr). 91 Science Photo Library: Zephyr (clb). 92 Science Photo Library: Bo Veisland, MI&I (br). 99 Alamy Images: Phototake Inc, (t). 104 Science Photo Library: CNRI (tr). 111 Corbis: Visuals Unlimited (b). 112 Science Photo Library: Eye of Science (tr). 113 Science Photo Library: Pascal Goetgheluck (t). 114 Alamy Images: Phototake Inc. (br). 118 Science Photo Library: Susumu Nishinaga (tr). 121 Louise Thomas: (fcra) (fcr). 123 Wellcome Library, London: (cla) (cra). 125 Science Photo Library: Alfred Pasieka (c). 126 Alamy Images: Medicalon-Line (br); Phototake Inc. (bc). 1 28 Science Photo Library: Bo Veisland (clb). 130-143 Wellcome Library, London: University of Edinburgh (sidebars). 137 Science Photo Library: Manfred Kage (bl); Dreamstime.com: Steve Gschmeissner (br). 141 Wellcome Library, London: (br). 144-159 Wellcome Library, London: EM Unit / Royal Free Med. School (sidebars). 151 Science Photo Library: Manfred Kage (tr). 152 Science Photo Library: (cr); Professors P.M. Motta & G. Macchiarelli (bl). 153 Wellcome Library, London: M.I. Walker (tr). 156 Science Photo Library: CNRI (crb). 157 Science Photo Library: BSIP VEM (cra), 160–175 Science Photo Library: GJLP (sidebars). 167 Alamy Images: Phototake Inc. (tc). 169 Science Photo Library: Zephyr (t). 171 Science Photo Library: CNRI (cl) (c); Alamy Stock Photo: Custom Medical Stock Photo (cr). 172 Science Photo Library: Dr. Gary Settles (cra). 176–189 Science Photo Library: Steve Gschmeissner (sidebars). 178 Science Photo Library: Sheila Terry (tl). 182 Alamy Images: Phototake Inc. (bl). Science Photo Library: J.C. Revy (cl). 184 Science Photo Library: Steve Gschmeissner (bl); Prof. P. Motta / Dept. of Anatomy / University, "La Sapienza," Rome (cr). 185 Science Photo Library: Prof. P. Motta / Dept. of Anatomy / University "La Sapienza," Rome (tr). 186 DK Images: Steve Gorton (tr): Jules Selmes and Debi Treloar (cl). Science Photo Library: Alfred Pasieka (bc). 187 DK Images: Susanna Price (cr); Jules Selmes and Debi Treloar (cl) (c). 188 Alamy Images: Medical-on-Line (bl). Mediscan: (cl). Wellcome Library, London: (cr) (br). 190-209 Science Photo Library: Francis Leroy, Biocosmos (sidebars). 196 Science Photo Library: CNRI (bl). 199 Alamy Images: Phototake Inc. (tr) (tl). 205 Alamy Images: Scott Camazine (br). 206 Science Photo Library: Eye of Science (tr). 207 Science Photo Library: David Scharf (cl) (bl). 210-239 Science Photo Library: Eye of Science (sidebars). 215 Science Photo Library: Steve Gschmeissner (crb). 216 Science Photo Library: Eye of Science (tr). 217 Science Photo Library: CNRI (tr). 218 Dreamstime.com: Guniita (c) 221 Science Photo Library: Prof. P. Motta / Dept. of Anatomy / University "La Sapienza," Rome (bl). 224 Science Photo Library: Professors P. Motta & F. Carpino / University "La Sapienza," Rome (br). 230 Science Photo Library: Dr. T. Blundell, Dept. of Crystallography, Birkbeck College (bl). 232 Corbis: Frank Lane Picture Agency (tr). 235 Science Photo Library: P. Hawtin, University of Southampton (tr). 244 Wellcome Library, London: David Gregory & Debbie Marshall (br). 248 Science Photo Library: Professor P.M. Motta et Al (br). 249 Science Photo Library: Steve Gschmeissner (bl). 250-305 Science Photo Library: Susumu Nishinaga (sidebars). 254 Science Photo Library: Steve Gschmeissner (clb). 255 Science Photo Library: Parviz M. Pour (b). 256 Wellcome Library, London: Yorgos Nikas (bl). 257 Alamy Images: Phototake Inc. (tl). 258 Science Photo Library: Professors P.M. Motta & J. Van Blerkom (tr). 270 Science Photo Library: Keith / Custom Medical Stock Photo (cra). 276 Science Photo Library: (I). 278 Science Photo Library: BSIP VEM (bl). 279 Corbis: Jose Luis Pelaez, Inc. (tr). 281 Science Photo Library: Susumu Nishinaga (t). 282 Science Photo Library: Professor P.M. Motta, G. Macchiarelli, S.A. Nottola (cla). 284 Alamy Images: Chad Ehlers (br). 285 Science Photo Library: Gunilla Elam (bc) (br). 287 Corbis: Andrew Brookes (tr). Science Photo Library: Philippe Plailly (br). 294 Science Photo Library: CNRI (br). 298 Mediscan: CDC (t). 299 Science Photo Library: (br). 301 Science Photo Library: James King-Holmes (fcl) (cl). 303 Alamy Images: Janine Wiedel Photolibrary (tr). 304 Wellcome Library, London: Wessex Reg. Genetics Centre (clb) (bl)

All other images © Dorling Kindersley For further information see: www.dkimages.com